TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1

SECTION 2

SECTION 3

SECTION 4

SECTION 5

SECTION 7

SECTION 8

SECTION 9

SECTION 10

SECTION 11

SECTION 1

DESCRIPTION

1.1 GENERAL

The Wang Model 2200 Advanced Programmable Calculator combines simple keyboard operation with the versatility of BASIC language programming, a compiler language used by many larger scale computer systems. The Model 2200 is essentially a single-user, noninterrupt, microprogrammed system. The Wang BASIC compiler is interpretive, operating directly on user text and saving in RAM where required.

A fundamental 2200 system incorporates the following:

a) Central Processor Unit

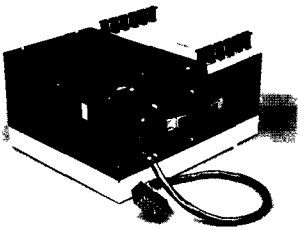


FIGURE 1-1

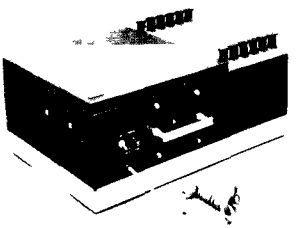


FIGURE 1-2

b) System Power Supply

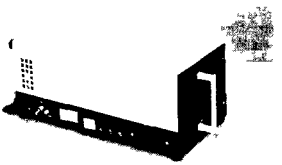


FIGURE 1-3

c) User Terminals

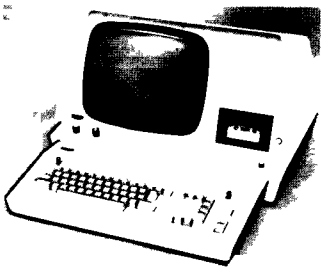


FIGURE 1-4;
2216/2217/2223

FIGURE 1-5; 2220

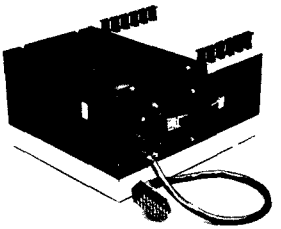
FIGURE 1-6; 2226

The CPU a) is comprised of ROM (with or without software options), Arithmetic/Logic circuitry, system control logic, I/O interface (expanded in 2219 chassis), and approximately 3.4K bytes (expandable) of *user-available* RAM (4K actual RAM space for smallest memory option). The CPU constitutes the 'heart' of a 2200 system.

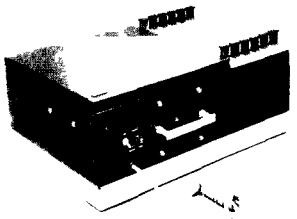
The system power supply is either packaged *within* the CPU chassis (2200 S,T)*, or is packaged separately (2200 PS for A, B, and C CPU chassis; see figure 2).

The user terminal is comprised of a user input keyboard (2215, 2222, 2223), a 16 line/1024-character video display which is available in a 12 inch (diagonal measure) screen (2216/2226) or a 9 inch screen (2220 console), and a Model TD-24 digital tape cassette drive (2217) for storage and retrieval of user programs and data. The physical

packaging of the user terminal takes one of three console configurations. The first console combines a video display and a TD-24 cassette drive (2216/17 console) shown in figure 4; the keyboard is packaged separately (2215, 2222, 2223; figure 4). The second console combines the smaller 9 inch, (diagonal) video display, a TD-24 cassette drive, and an upper/lower case Keyword Keyboard identical to the 2223 keyboard (2220 console; figure 5). The third console combines a 12 inch (diagonal) video display and an upper/lower case Keyword Keyboard identical to the 2223 Keyboard; console storage/retrieval of bulk user data and programs is accomplished via disk or via separate 2217 or 2218. (2226 console; Figure 6).



2200 A/B/C CPU - 6 I/O
FIGURE 1-7



2200 S/T CPU - 3/6 I/O
FIGURE 1-8

FIGURE 1-9
2219 A/B/C CPU - 11 I/O

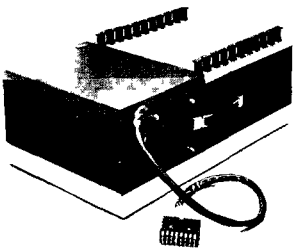
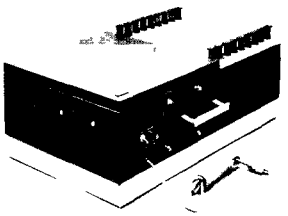


FIGURE 1-10
2200 S/T CPU - 9 I/O



A number of special-purpose options are available:

2200 OPTION #	OPTION DESCRIPTION	ACCOMMODATING CPU - USAGE				
		2200A	2200B	2200C	2200S	2200T
OP-1	Matrix ROM Mutually exclusive with OP-5	-	X	X	-	-
OP-2	General I/O ROM	-	X	X	-	-
OP-3	Edit ROM	X	X	Standard	Standard	Standard
OP-4	Audio Alarm for 2216 Display	X	X	X	X	X
OP-5	Commercial Matrix/ Sort ROM(Mutually exclusive with OP-1)	-	X	X	-	-
OP-20	3 Extra I/O Slots	-	-	-	X	X
OP-20	9 I/O Slot Chassis	-	-	-	X	X
OP-21	Matrix ROM	-	-	-	X	Standard
OP-22	Advanced Programmable ROM plus OP-21	-	-	-	X	Standard
OP-23	General I/O ROM plus OP-22	-	-	-	X	Standard
OP-24	Disk Capability plus OP-23	-	-	-	X	Standard
OP-30	Upper/Lower case Display (for 2220, 2216A, or 2226)	X	X	X	X	X
OP-31	Audio Alarm for 2220 and 2226 consoles	X	X	X	X	X
OP-32	Keyboard Clicker	X	X	X	X	X

X = Option available
- = Option not available

Options 1 or 21 (*OP-1, OP-21*) provide matrix statements designed to reduce execution time and use less RAM than would be required using standard 2200 statements to program matrix operations.

Options 2 or 23 (*OP-2, OP-23*) allows the user to custom-tailor input/output operations to suit special peripheral devices. This option also facilitates high-speed character code translation and data packing/unpacking.

Option 3 (*OP-3*) allows individual alphanumeric characters in a line of program text, data values, or program text currently being entered from a Keyboard, to be altered, deleted, or inserted without inputting the entire program line again.

Options 4 or 31 (*OP-4, OP31*) cause an audible signal to alert the system user when (for example) an error occurs under program control. The alarm may be sounded by programming a predesignated HEX code wherever desired.

Option 5 (*OP-5*) provides six matrix statements for flexible and rapid searching, moving, and ordering data in System 2200B or C CPU's. Option 5 is mutually exclusive with Option 1.

Options 20 and 20A (*OP-20, OP-20A*) provide 6-slot and 9-slot I/O capabilities (respectively) with any 2200S or 2200T CPU.

Option 22 (*OP-22*) provides eleven bit and byte manipulation statements and functions which greatly increase processing capability by reducing programming requirements for such applications. Option 22 includes Option 21.

Option 24 (*OP-24*) provides all disk I/O capabilities, and includes Options 22 and 21.

Option 32 (*OP-32*) causes an audible "click" whenever a key is depressed; thus an experienced programmer or typist (for example) need

not "bottom out" a key to ensure entry, thereby increasing input speed. The "click" sound also lessens the need to verify entry by checking the video display.

A full compliment of peripheral devices interface with the 2200 CPU:

PERIPHERAL/DESCRIPTION		ACCOMMODATING CPU				
		2200A	2200B	2200C	2200S	2200T
2201	Output Writer	X	X	X	X	X
2202	Plotting Output Writer	-	X	X	OP-22 Min. Req'd	X
2203	Punched Tape Reader	-	X	X	OP-22 Min. Req'd	X
2207	RS-232-C Input/ Output Interface with Fixed BAUD Rate	limited use	X	X	X	X
2207A	RS-232-C Input/ Output Interface with Selectable BAUD rate	limited use	X	X	X	X
2209	Nine Track Mag. Tape Drive	-	OP-2 and 12K RAM Min. Req'd	OP-2 and 12K RAM Min. Req'd	OP-23 and 12K RAM Min. Req'd	12K RAM Min. Req'd
2212	Analog Flatbed Plotter	-	X	X	OP-23 Min. Req'd	X
2214	Mark Sense Card Reader	limited use	X	X	OP-22 Min. Req'd	X

PERIPHERAL/DESCRIPTION		ACCOMMODATING CPU				
		2200A	2200B	2200C	2200S	2200T
2215	BASIC Keyword Keyboard	Requires OP-3 for Keyboard Edit	Requires OP-3 for Keyboard Edit	X	X	X
2216	Executive Video Display	X	X	X	X	X
2216A	Upper/Lower Case Executive Video Display	X	X	X	X	X
2216/17	Combined 2216/2217 Console	X	X	X	X	X
2216A/17	Combined 2216A/2217 Console	X	X	X	X	X
2217	Single Cassette Drive	X	X	X	X	X
2218	Dual Cassette Drive	X	X	X	X	X
2220	Integrated Console	Requires OP-3 for Keyboard Edit and OP-30 for U/L case	Requires OP-3 for Keyboard Edit and OP-30 for U/L case	Requires OP-30 for U/L case	Requires OP-30 for U/L case	Requires OP-30 for U/L case
2221	Line Printer; (132 Column)	X	X	X	X	X

PERIPHERAL/DESCRIPTION		ACCOMMODATING CPU				
		2200A	2200B	2200C	2200S	2200T
2221W	Line Printer (132 column)	X	X	X	X	X
2222	Alphanumeric Typewriter Keyboard	Requires OP-3 for Keyboard Edit	Requires OP-3 for Keyboard Edit	X	X	X
2223	Alphanumeric/ BASIC Keyword Keyboard	Requires OP-3 for Keyboard Edit	Requires OP-3 for Keyboard Edit	X	X	X
2224-2, 3,4	Disk Multiplexer	-	X	X	OP-24 Required	X
2226	Combination Video Display/U/L Case Keyword Keyboard for WCS.	-	-	-	X	X
2227	Telecommunications Controller	Limited Use	OP-2 Recomm.	OP-2 Recomm.	OP-23 Recomm.	X
2227N	Null Modem	X	X	X	X	X
2230-1, 2,3	Fixed/Removable Disk Drive	-	X	X	OP-24 Required	X
2230MXA, MXB	Daisy Chain Disk Multiplexers	-	X	X	OP-24 Required	X
2231	Line Printer	X	X	X	X	X

PERIPHERAL/DESCRIPTION		ACCOMMODATING CPU				
		2200A	2200B	2200C	2200S	2200T
2232A	Digital Flatbed Plotter	-	X	X	OP-22 Min. Req'd	X
2234/34A	Hopper Feed Punched Card Reader	Limited Use	X	X	OP-22 Min. Req'd	X
2240-2	Dual Removable Flexible Disk Drive	-	X	X	OP-24 Required	X
2241	Thermal Printer (80 Column)	X	X	X	X	X
2242	Single Removable Flexible Disk Drive	-	X	X	OP-24 Required	X
2243	Triple Removable Flexible Disk Drive	-	X	X	OP-24 Required	X
2244/44A	Hopper Feed, Mark-Sense/Punch Card Reader	Limited Use	X	X	OP-22 Min. Req'd	X
2250A	8 Bit Parallel I/O Interface	Limited Use	OP-2 Recomm.	OP-2 Recomm.	OP-23 Recomm.	X
2252	Scanning Input Interface (BCD 10 digit parallel)	X	X	X	X	X
2252A	Scanning Input Interface (Selectable 0-10 digit parallel input)	X	X	X	X	X

PERIPHERAL/DESCRIPTION		ACCOMMODATING CPU				
		2200A	2200B	2200C	2200S	2200T
2260	Fixed/Removable 10 Meg Disk Drive	-	X	X	OP-24 Required	X
2261	High Speed 132 Column Printer	X	X	X	X	X
2262-1, 2,3	Digitizer	Limited Use	X	X	OP-22 Recomm.	X
2270	Removable Diskette Disk Drive	-	X	X	OP-24 Required	X
2290	CPU/Peripheral Stand	X	X	X	X	X
2291	Digital Flatbed Plotter Stand	-	X	X	X	X
2292	Auxiliary Video Display	X	X	X	X	X
2293	WCS Equipment Stand	-	-	-	X	X

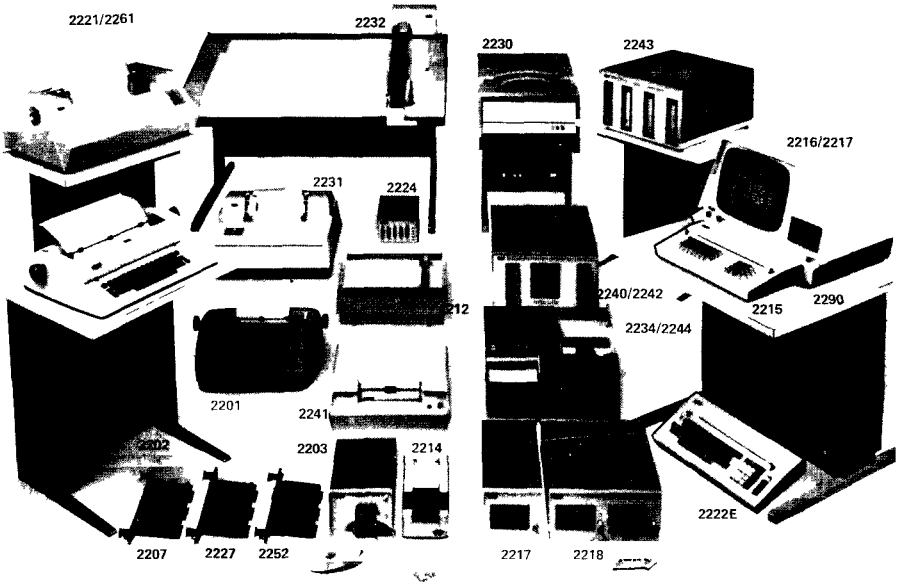


FIGURE 1-11

NOTE:
Not shown in Figure 11 are the following units:

2207A	2252A
2209	2260
2220	2262
2221W	2270
2222	2291
2223	2292
2226	2293
2250	

The *Model 2201 Output Writer* types numeric and upper and lower case alphabetic output from the System 2200 with full format control.

In the *Model 2202 Plotting Output Writer*, complete digital plotting is combined with the alphanumeric capability of the Model 2201. Thus, plots are easily titled and labeled. (Both the Model 2201 and the Model 2202 can be used as standard electric typewriters when not being used with the System 2200.)

With the *Model 2203 Punched Tape Reader*, paper tape data in any code format is automatically read to the system, providing an efficient "data reduction" system. The reader supports, 5, 6, 7 or 8 track paper tape.

The *Model 2207 RS-232-C I/O Interface Controller* is an earlier version of the 2207A, and operates at a *fixed* baud rate.

The *Model 2207A RS-232-C I/O Interface Controller* allows attachment of a Model 33 Teletype® as a terminal for the system, generating hardcopy and inputting programs and data stored on Teletype-punched paper tape or issued from the keyboard. It also supports interfacing of other Teletype-compatible instrumentation or terminals at 110, 150, 300, 600 or 1,200 baud.

The *Model 2209 Nine-Track Magnetic Tape Drive* provides the capability to store programs and data on half-inch IBM compatible tapes. A ten inch diameter reel can accommodate up to 20 megabytes of information.

The *Model 2212 Analog Flatbed Plotter (10" x 15")* provides continuous line or point plotting of curves and data, as well as full alphanumeric labeling of plots with the System 2200.

With the *Model 2214 Mark Sense Card Reader*, data and programs can be entered directly into the system via optical mark sense cards. With this low cost reader cards can be prepared "off-line" without tying up the keyboard (making the system more efficient) and are manually fed into the Model 2214.

The *Model 2215 BASIC Keyword Keyboard* contains single keys for most BASIC language verbs and commands. The keyboard also contains all alphabetic characters as well as all program execution keys needed to run the System 2200.

The *Model 2216 Executive Video Display* provides sixteen lines of 64 characters each, displayed on a 12" (diag. meas.) CRT screen.

The *Model 2216A Upper and Lower Case Video Display* provides 16 lines of 64 characters each, in either upper or lower case alphanumeric characters.

The *Model 2217 Single Tape Cassette Drive* provides a bulk storage system for both programs and data. A 150-foot tape has a capacity of 78,000 (8-bit) bytes, with an input/output transfer rate of 326 bytes per second.

The *Model 2216/2217 Combined CRT Executive Display/Single Tape Cassette Drive Console* is a video display and tape drive contained in the same chassis.

The *Model 2216A/2217 combined Upper and Lower Case CRT/Single Tape Drive* contains a video display and a tape drive in one chassis. The display I/O controller provides upper/lower case character output to the display (2216A).

The *Model 2218 Dual Tape Cassette Drive* consists of two tape drives contained in a single unit. The tape drives are identical in operation and performance to the Model 2217. One CPU I/O Controller operates both tape drives, but each tape drive operates independently, with separate device addresses.

The *Model 2219 Extended I/O Chassis* is a 2200 A, B, or C CPU option which provides an additional five I/O slots (for a total capacity of 11 peripheral devices).

The *Model 2220 Console* contains a 9 inch video display, a cassette drive, and an upper/lowercase Keyword Keyboard. The 2220 is a self contained user terminal and can be used in conjunction with a 2200A, B, C, S, or T CPU.

On the *Model 2221 Line Printer (132 column)*, hardcopy output is printed at 150 characters per second or 60 to 200 lines per minute, depending upon line length.

The *2221W Dot Matrix Impact Printer (132-column)*, hardcopy output is 200 characters per second and 65-300 lines per minute, depending on line length.

The *Model 2222 Alpha-Numeric Typewriter Keyboard* enables the user to input upper and lower case alphanumeric characters and program control and execution keys from a keyboard similar to a standard typewriter Keyboard.

The *2223 Alphanumeric BASIC Keyword Keyboard* enables the user to input either upper/lowercase characters or most BASIC Programming words with a single keystroke; an edit feature (std. with C, S and T CPU's) allows efficient program editting.

The *Model 2224 Disk Multiplexer* allows the use of four System 2200 Central Processing Units with a single disk unit remotely located up to 500' (152 m.) from each CPU, to maximize use of the disk unit.

The *2226* combines a 12" video display and an upper/lowercase Keyword Keyboard into one console chassis.

The *Model 2227 Telecommunications Controller* allows local or remote asynchronous communication between System 2200's or remote telecommunications with "foreign" CPUs (IBM, Univac, Honeywell, et cetera). Model 2200 software enables the system to become an "intelligent terminal" with the Model 2227.

The *Model 2228 Binary Synchronous Telecommunications Controller*, when accompanied by a suitable modem (modulator/demodulator), and the terminal emulator program, a System 2200 or a Wang Computer System can transmit and receive data over dial-up communications lines linking the

system to another comparably equipped Wang system or to any mainframe computer which can communicate with a IBM 2780 terminal.

The *Model 2230-1,2,3 Fixed/Removable Disk Drives* provides bulk storage for 1 25, 2.5 or 5 megabytes of information.

The *Model 2230MXA Daisy Chain Multiplexer* (1st CPU) and the *2230MXB* (2nd, 3rd, or 4th CPU) allows up to 4 CPU's to access any disk system at a maximum distance of 212' between each CPU.

The *Model 2231 Line Printer (80 column)* provides permanent hard-copy output at 100 characters per second or 60 to 150 lines per minute, depending upon line length.

The *Model 2232A Digital Flatbed Plotter* provides continuous line or point plotting of curves and data with an accuracy of up to $\pm$ .005 in. over the entire plotting surface. The plotting surface is 31 inches by 48 inches The plotter uses any type of paper including vellum, linen and Mylar. Fiber tip, ballpoint, or drafting pens can be used.

The *Model 2234 Hopper-Feed Punched Card Reader* reads up to 250 cards per minute (max.) and can stack 550 cards (max.) in the input and output hoppers. An 80-column card can be punched with Hollerith or binary code.

The *2234A Hopper-Feed Punched Card Reader* is mechanically identical to the 2234; however, an expanded I/O controller facilitates *program* entry in Hollerith, as well as data entry in Binary or Hollerith from punched cards.

The *Model 2240-1 and 2240-2 Dual Removable Flexible Disk Drives* provide bulk storage of 262,144 bytes (2240-1) or 524,288 bytes (2240-2) of data or programs. Both disk drives accept the removable, compact flexible disks, which can be easily stored when not in use.

The *Model 2241 Thermal Printer* provides 80 columns of hardcopy (30 characters per second) on continuous form heat-sensitive paper.

The *Model 2242 Single Removable Flexible Disk Drive* is similar to the Model 2240, but contains one flexible disk drive and provides storage for 262,144 bytes of information.

The *Model 2243 Triple Removable Flexible Disk Drive* contains three flexible disk drives, and provides storage for a total of 786,432 bytes. The removable, compact platters (used in the Model 2240, 2242, and 2243) are interchangeable between the three disk drives of the unit and any other 2240 series disk system.

The *Model 2244 Hopper-Feed Mark Sense/Punched Card Reader* reads up to 250 cards per minute and can stack 550 cards in the input or output hoppers. The Model 2244 reads standard 80-column punch cards (the same card used with the Model 2234); 80-column optical mark sense cards *without clock marks* (either punched or marked in pencil); and optical mark sense cards *with timing marks* and 80 columns or less of data (punched or marked). Data entry can be in Hollerith or binary code.

The *2244A Hopper-Feed Mark Sense/Punched-Card Reader* is mechanically identical to the 2244; however, an expanded I/O controller facilitates *program entry* in Hollerith, Standard Educational Format and Wang Format, as well as *data entry* in Binary or Hollerith.

The *Model 2250A I/O Interface Controller (8-Bit-Parallel)* enables interfacing of 8-bit parallel I/O devices. Parallel 8-bit data can be transmitted or received by a 2250A/2200 system.

The *Model 2252 Input Interface Controller (BCD 10-Digit-Parallel)*, an input-only interface, is directly compatible to most digital meters for on-line applications. It automatically converts each BCD digit to an ASCII equivalent code. Optionally, it also can be used to receive up to 40 discrete bits of parallel binary data.

The *Model 2252A* is a later version of the 2252, and allows manual *selection* of 1 to 10 parallel BCD digits to be input to the 2200 CPU. Groups of 4 discrete binary bits each may be entered by the same select feature. Generally speaking, selection of less than 10 digits input allows faster input processing cycles.

The *Model 2260 Fixed/Removable Disk Drive* provides ten megabytes (10,027,008 total bytes) of on-line storage. The unit's total storage capacity is divided equally between two separate hard-disk platters, one of which is removable and can be conveniently stored.

The *Model 2261 High-Speed Printer* utilizes two bidirectional printing heads to print up to 330 characters per second, or 125 lines per minute (132 characters per line, maximum).

The *Model 2262 XY Digitizer* provides the capability to digitize single points or curves on a Cartesian plane at a resolution of + .005 inches over the entire digitizing surface.

The *Model 2270 Shugart Floppy Disk Chassis* is available in three models (-1, -2, and -3) containing one to three flexible disk drives. This unit is an integral part of each WCS (Wang Computer System; models -20 and -30).

The *Model 2290 CPU/Peripheral Stand* stores the System 2200 CPU (either the standard CPU, S/T CPU's, 9-slot S/T CPU's or the Model 2219 Extended I/O Chassis) and the Power Supply. The stand includes four electrical outlets and a master ON/OFF switch located on the front. The table top can accommodate a user terminal, or other peripheral device.

The *Model 2291 Flatbed Plotter/Peripheral Stand* provides a sturdy surface for the Model 2232A Flatbed Plotter.

The *2292 Auxilliary Video Display* is a 12" CRT display unit used in conjunction with standard display capabilities of the 2200 system. The 2292 can display the same information as is presented on a 2216 or 2220 console display. Up to twelve 2292's may be cascaded.

The *2293 WCS Equipment Stand* accommodates a 2200 S or T CPU, a 2270 Shugart disk drive (up to 3 drives), and a user Input/Output console. It is standard with Wang Computer Systems (WCS) -20 and -30.

1.2 MODEL INFORMATION

A Wang serial tag attached to the rear panel of each product identifies model number, memory size (if applicable), number of I/O slots (if applicable), and line frequency/voltage/wattage ratings.

TYPICAL SERIAL TAG

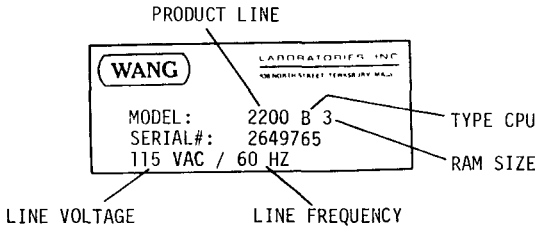


FIGURE 1-12

Some peripheral devices may be furthur identified by an O.E.M serial tag (i.e., Diablo, Shugart, Documation, Wangco, etc.).

EXAMPLE: (MEMORY SIZES)

CPU MODEL	DESCRIPTION	MEMORY SIZE
2200 B-1	2200 Advanced Programmable Calculator	4K Byte Memory
2200 B-2		8K
2200 B-3		12K
2200 B-4		16K
2200 B-5		20K
2200 B-6		24K
2200 B-7		28K
2200 B-8		32K

1.3 SPECIFICATIONS

1.3.1 *2200 SYSTEM; GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS*

Power:	115 VAC or 230 VAC ± 10%; 50 or 60 Hz; 550 VA
Operating Temperature:	50°F to 90°F (65°F to 75°F recommended)
Operating Humidity:	20% R.H.* to 80% R.H., non-condensing (40% R.H. to 60% R.H. recommended)

*R.H. = Relative Humidity

1.3.2 *2200 CPU; MODELS A, B, C, S, T*

*Average Execution Times

Add/Subtract	0.8 ms.
Multiply	3.8 ms.
Divide	7.4 ms.
Square Root	46.4 ms.
e^x	25.3 ms.
$\log_e x$	23.2 ms.
x^y	45.4 ms.
Integer	0.24 ms.
Absolute Value	0.02 ms.
Sign	0.25 ms.
Sin	38.3 ms.
Cos	38.9 ms.
Tan	78.5 ms.
Arctan	72.5 ms.
Read/Write Cycle	1.6μsec.

*Average execution times determined using Random Number Arguments with 13 digits of precision. Speeds are faster in calculations with arguments of less precision.

Average Execution Times within Expressions

Add	.80 ms	Subtract	.80 ms
Multiply	3.80 ms	Divide	7.40 ms
Square Root	46.40 ms	e^x	25.30 ms
Log (x)	23.20 ms	X↑Y	45.40 ms
Integer	.24 ms	Change Sign	.25 ms
Absolute value	.02 ms	Sine	38.30 ms
Cosine	38.90 ms	Tangent	78.50 ms
Arctangent	72.50 ms		

2200 A/B INSTRUCTIONS

INSTRUCTION	OPTIMUM TIME	CONDITIONS/REMARKS
REM	0.384 ms	
DEFFN'1:RETURN	3.360 ms	
SELECT PRINT 005	0.984 ms	
SELECT PRINT 005(64)	1.200 ms	
GOTO	2.640 ms	
IF THEN (NUMERIC)	4.320 ms	CONDITION NOT MET
IF THEN (NUMERIC)	4.840 ms	CONDITION MET
IF R1$=HEX THEN NNNN	2.640 ms	
IF R1$=A1$ THEN NNNN	3.120 ms	
PRINTUSING, 1, A	8.892 ms	DISPLAY 12 CHARACTERS
NEXT	4.380 ms	ON CRT
LET A=B	3.240 ms	
LET B=A(1)	5.280 ms	
LET B=A(255)	5.400 ms	
LET B=123456	2.880 ms	
LET X=1	2.880 ms	
LET X=Y	3.190 ms	
LET X=Y(3)	5.610 ms	Y IS DIMENSIONED TO 12
LET X=Y(J)	6.810 ms	J=3

LET X=Y(3,4)	7.010 ms	DIM Y(6,8)
LET X=Y(J,K)	9.210 ms	J=3, K=4
LET X=Y(J+K)	9.310 ms	DIM Y12 J=3 K=4
LET X=Y(J*K)	10.810 ms	DIM Y12 J=3 K=4
LET B$='0123456789ABCDEF'	2.460 ms	
LET A$=B$	2.700 ms	
LET A$=STR(B$,1,16)	5.376 ms	
LET A$=STR(B$,8,1)	5.400 ms	
LET A$='1'	2.635 ms	
LET A$=B$	3.010 ms	DIM A$1,B$1
LET A$=B$	3.900 ms	DIM A$1,B$64
LET A$=B$	4.760 ms	DIM A$64,B$1
LET A$=B$	5.700 ms	DIM A$64,B$64
LET A$=STR(B$,1,1)	7.385 ms	
LET STR(A$,1,1)=STR(B$,1,1)	8.310 ms	
LET STR(A$,1,64)=STR(B$,1,64)	9.735 ms	
LET STR(A$,1,30)=STR(B$,32)	8.160 ms	
LET STR(A$,32,1)=STR(B$,32,1)	8.560 ms	
LET STR(A$,64,1)=STR(B$,64,1)	8.535 ms	
LET STR(A$,64)=STR(B$,64)	6.560 ms	
LET STR(A$,1,64)=STR(B$,1,1)	8.435 ms	

2200 B INSTRUCTIONS

B=LEN(A$)	4.140 ms
B=BAL(A$)	3.960 ms
ADD(A$,01)	2.970 ms
ADDC(A$,01)	3.000 ms
ADD(A$,B$)	3.696 ms
AND(A$,FF)	6.240 ms
BIN(A$)=64	2.760 ms
BIN(STR(A$,16,1))=64	5.232 ms
BOOL E(A$,55)	5.040 ms
BOOL &(A$,B$)	6.960 ms
CONVERT A TO A$, (#####)	4.896 ms
CONVERT X*2 TO A$, (+##.##)	8.360 ms

CONVERT X TO STR(A$,3,8),(-#.#↑↑↑↑)	7.710 ms	
CONVERT A$ TO Z	3.710 ms	
CONVERT STR(A$,3,8) TO Z	6.235 ms	
CONVERT X TO A$, (####.#####)	5.560 ms	
INIT (80)A$	2.400 ms	
B=NUM(A$)	4.800 ms	A$=10 DIGITS
B=NUM(A$)	4.560 ms	A$=1 DIGIT
ON B GOTO NNNN	4.800 ms	B=1 GOTO CONDITION
ON B GOTO NNNN	2.520 ms	B=5 FALL THROUGH CONDITION
PACK(####)A$ FROM A	4.320 ms	
PACK(####.####)A$ FROM A	4.704 ms	
ROTATE(A$,1)	2.970 ms	
ROTATE(A$,7)	3.816 ms	
UNPACK(####) A$ TO B	3.960 ms	

1.3.3 *MEMORY SIZES*

2200 A, B, C Memory Sizes - 4,096 bytes (expandable to 32K in 4K or 8K increments).

2200 S, T Memory Sizes - 4,096 bytes (expandable to 8K, 12K, 16K, 24K and 32K; 20K and 28K configurations are not possible).

1.3.4 *PERIPHERAL CAPABILITIES*

2200 A, B, C - 6 I/O slots (expandable to a maximum of 11 with a Model 2219 I/O Extended CPU Chassis).

2200 S - 3 I/O slots (6 with OP-20; 9 with OP-20A chassis).

2200 T - 3 I/O slots (6 with OP-20; 9 with OP-20A chassis.

1.3.5 *DYNAMIC RANGE*

2200 (all models) = 10^{-99} to 10^{+99}

1.3.6 *SUBROUTINE STACKING*

2200 (all models) approximately 40 levels

1.3.7 *PHYSICAL PARAMETERS*

2200 A, B, C Dimensions:

CPU Chassis

Height	9 3/4 in. (24.8 cm)
Depth	16 in. (40.6 cm)
Width	17 in. (43.2 cm)
Weight	24 lb. (10.9 kg)

2200 PS (Power Supply for A, B, C CPU):

Chassis

Height	7 3/4 in. (19.7 cm)
Depth	8 3/4 in. (22.2 cm)
Width	19 in. (48.3 cm)
Weight	34 lb. (15.4 kg)

2200 S, T Dimensions:

CPU Chassis

Height	9.8 in. (24.8 cm)
Depth	21 in. (53.3 cm)
Width	14.5 in. (36.8 cm)
Weight	40 lb. (18 kg)

2200 SYSTEM KEYBOARDS:

Model 2215

Height	3 in. (7.62 cm)
Depth	10 in. (25.4 cm)
Width	17 1/2 in. (44.5 cm)
Weight	7 lbs. (3.2 kg)

Model 2222

Height	3 in. (7.62 cm)
Depth	10 in. (25.4 cm)
Width	19 1/2 in. (49.5 cm)
Weight	7 1/2 lbs. (3.4 kg)

Model 2223

Height . . . . . 3 in. (7.6 cm)
Depth . . . . . 10 in. (25.4 cm)
Width . . . . . 17 1/2 in. (44.5 cm)
Weight . . . . . 7 lb. (3.2 kg)

2200 SYSTEM DISPLAY (2216):

Screen Size

Height . . . . . 8 in. (20.3 cm)
Width . . . . . 10.5 in. (26.7 cm)

Screen Capacity

16 lines, 64 characters/line (1024 Characters, total)

Character Size

Height . . . . . 0.20 in. (0.51 cm)
Width . . . . . 0.12 in. (0.30 cm)

CRT Housing Size

Height . . . . . 14 in. (35.6 cm)
Width . . . . . 21.5 in. (54.6 cm)
Depth . . . . . 16 in. (40.6 cm)

CRT Housing Weight

36 lbs. (14.4 kg)

Cabling

Eight foot (2.44 m) coaxial cable with BNC connector to CPU controller card.

2200 SYSTEM CASSETTE DRIVE:

Stop/Start Time

0.09/0.05 sec

Capacity

522 bytes/ft (1712 bytes/m)

Recording Speed

7.5 IPS (19.05 cm/sec)

Search Speed

7.5 IPS (19.05 cm/sec)

Transfer Rate

326 characters/sec (approx)

Inter-record Gap

0.6 in. (1.52 cm)

(Capacity and transfer rate include gaps and redundant recording.)

1.4 PERIPHERAL CABLE LENGTHS

MODEL (#)	STANDARD LENGTH (Feet/Meters)	MAXIMUM TESTED LENGTHS (Feet/Meters)
01	12'/3.66 m.	-
02	12'/3.66 m.	-
03	9'/2.74 m.	-
07A	50'/15.24 m.	-
09	8'/2.44 m.	-
12	12'/3.66 m.	-
14	8'/2.44 m.	-
15	12'/3.66 m.	200'/60.96 m.
16	8'/2.44 m.	1000'/304.80 m.
17	12'/3.66 m.	-
18	12'/3.66 m.	-
20	8'/2.44 m.	200'/60.96 m.
21	12'/3.66 m.	-
21W	12'/3.66 m.	-
22	12'/3.66 m.	200'/60.96 m.
23	12'/3.66 m.	200'/60.96 m.
24	12'/3.66 m.	*500'/152.40 m.
26	8'/2.44 m.	200'/60.96 m.
27	50'/15.24 m.	-
30	12'/3.66 m.	**500'/152.40 m.
31	12'/3.66 m.	-
32,32A	12'/3.66 m.	-
34,34A	8'/2.44 m.	-
40	12'/3.66 m.	**500'/152.40 m.
41	12'/3.66 m.	-
42	12'/3.66 m.	**500'/152.40 m.
43	12'/3.66 m.	**500'/152.40 m.
44,44A	8'/2.44 m.	-
50	100'/30.48 m.	-
52,52A	12'/3.66 m.	-
60	10'/3.05 m.	**500'/152.40 m.
61	12'/3.66 m.	-
62	9'/2.74 m.	-
70	12'/3.66 m.	**500'/152.40 m.
92	25'/7.63 m.	1000'/304.80 m.

*From any 2200; at least *one* of the 2200 to 2224 cables must be 12 feet.

**Using 2224 or 2230 MXA/MXB

NOTES:

SECTION 2

INSTALLATION

2.1 INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR WANG SYSTEMS

When a Wang System is delivered, it is not sufficient to merely find floor space for the System and insert the plugs into an AC outlet. Some preparation is necessary to select a suitable location for the system and to determine if the AC power lines the system will use are adequate. The following topics describe the ideal environment in which a System should operate and the preparations necessary to meet these criteria.

2.1.1 *SELECTING A LOCATION*

The environment in which a system operates can greatly effect its performance. An ideal location would be one in which temperature and humidity are controlled, airborne dirt and contaminants are reduced to a minimum, AC power outlets are adequate, regulated, and noise free, and, sufficient room exists for future expansion. Such locations are difficult to find; the System must often be installed in a less than favorable environment.

The selected location should also be one that is easily accessible by operating personnel, yet sufficiently removed from the main flow of traffic so as not to interfere with the smooth operation of the 2200 System.

2.1.2 *CONTROLLING THE ENVIRONMENT*

Once a location is selected, three parameters to be considered are environmental temperature, humidity, and cleanliness.

Temperature is the most important factor to consider because it can vary greatly from day-to-day. The recommended operating temperature range is from 65°F to 75°F, but the allowable range is from 50°F to 90°F. Low outside temperatures are usually not a problem because nearly all

locations are heated. High temperatures can be a problem because many locations do not have air conditioning. If the system is used where temperatures exceed the maximum specified, component failure rates will drastically increase, resulting in costly downtime for the user. High temperatures can also cause warping and distortion of data storage material, resulting in lost data.

If an air conditioning unit is already installed or if one is to be installed, it is imperative that a separate power line be used. If a separate power line is not used, System errors can occur when the air conditioner is in use.

While air conditioning is not only good for maintaining the proper temperature, it also removes moisture and dust from the air, thereby lowering the humidity. If the system is installed in a carpeted room, the lower humidity plus the static generating capability of carpets and synthetic clothing impart a static electrical charge on operating personnel. When the operator comes in contact with the System, the resultant static discharge is not only uncomfortable, but can cause System malfunctions and the destruction of recorded data.

The recommended humidity range is from 40% to 60% R.H., but 20% (In cold weather the humidity in heated buildings can be 10% or lower) to 80% R.H. is allowable. Low humidity not only increases the certainty of static build-up, but also can cause oxide shed in data storage material. Humidifiers and dehumidifiers should be installed to increase or decrease the humidity as required.

If carpeting is to be installed, be sure it is a non-static variety. If carpeting already exists and is not a non-static carpet, it will either have to be treated with a non-static spray or an electrically conductive mat must be installed to prevent a static charge build-up. Carpets treated with non-static spray should be thoroughly cleaned before the first treatment, and retreated at least once every three months, thereafter. If an electrically conductive mat is used, it should be installed under the system operating area and must be properly connected to an earth ground.

Because there are no air filters in most Wang equipment, dirt can accumulate rapidly on circuit boards and components. Dirt and grease form a film that prevents proper heat dissipation from components and can also create a leakage path for signals. Dirt also causes excessive mechanical wear in tape and disc drives and causes scratches in the oxide coating of storage material and on read/write heads.

To prevent unnecessary failures due to dirt, all air conditioning, heating and ventilating units should have air filters installed; these filters should be cleaned or replaced regularly. In areas where filters do not remove airborne dirt sufficiently, an electrostatic filter should be installed.

2.1.3 *ELECTRICAL ENVIRONMENT*

For most Wang Systems, a 20 ampere, 115 VAC power line is adequate. Further System requirements dictate that this line must be regulated to within $\pm$ 10% and must be noise free. Wherever feasible, the system should have its own AC power line.

If the line is not sufficiently regulated to the limits indicated above, a constant voltage transformer should be installed. If the line is noisy, however, a detailed analysis of the problem must be performed to insure a correct solution.

Since computers and peripheral equipments are extremely susceptible to Electromagnetic Interference (EMI), the source of the EMI must be determined before a solution is proposed. EMI can enter the System by conduction along wiring and cabling or by direct radiation. If sources of EMI, which include office machines, air conditioning units, electric motors, machinery and arc welders, are in close proximity to the System, EMI will enter by direct radiation. The noise generating device should be relocated, repaired or filtered to prevent it from interfering with the System. If the source of the noise cannot be found, an EMI filter

with a cut-off frequency near 10 kHz should be installed on the System's AC power line. In all cases, be sure that the AC power line has been properly installed in steel conduit and that the conduit is properly connected to junction boxes. Also, insure that other devices including fluorescent lighting, are not connected to the AC power line. In extreme cases, such as where arc welders are used in the vicinity, it may also be necessary to shield the peripheral cables.

The ground pin of the AC line cord is connected to the chassis of the 2200, as recommended by the National Electrical Manufacturer's Association, and protects operating personnel from electrical shock. Always connect the 2200 to a grounded outlet to insure safety from electrical shock.

2.2 DEVICE ADDRESS ASSIGNMENTS

In order to interface each Wang peripheral device with the CPU, an I/O controller circuit board is inserted in the CPU chassis, linking CPU to peripheral via interconnecting cable.

Each peripheral device has a unique *device address* of the form HEX XY_1Y_2, where X is the device type (or class) and Y_1Y_2 is a specific address manually set on the I/O controller circuit board with switches. Device types (classes) are categorized as follows:

1st HEX Digit (X)	Category
0	Used with console input/output devices and with the 2209 Nine Track Magnetic Tape Unit.
1	Tape Cassette Drives.
2	Used with printers which automatically perform a line feed following a carriage return; also used with digitizers and certain telecommunications applications.

3	Disk Drives.
4	Used with plotters; also used with printers to suppress automatic carriage return/line feed, format spaces, or Null Characters; also used with the Teletype paper tape unit, to turn the paper tape reader *on*.
5	Model 2214 Card Reader.
6	Models 2234A and 2244A Stack Card Readers.

The 3-digit HEXADECIMAL device address is printed on the mounting bracket of the controller circuit board assigned to a particular peripheral. Hexadecimal device addresses are listed by I/O class below:

I/O Class	Device Addresses
Keyboards	001, 002, 003, 004
CRT Units	005, 006, 007, 008
Tape Cassette Units	10A, 10B, 10C, 10D, 10E, 10F
Printers	215, 216
Output Writer	211, 212
Plotters	413, 414
Disk Units	310, 320, 330*
Card Reader	517
Stack-Feed Card Readers	628
Paper Tape Readers	618
Teletype	019, 01A, 01B Input
	01D, 01E, 01F Output
Teletype Tape Units	41D, 41E, 41F
Telecommunications	219, 21A, 21B Input
	21D, 21E, 21F Output
Parallel I/O Interface	23A, 23C, 23E Input
	23B, 23D, 23F Output

BCD Input Interface	25A, 25B, 25C, 25D, 25E, 25F
Digitizer	25A, 25B, 25C, 25D, 25E, 25F
Nine-Track Tape Unit	07B, 07D, 07F
WCS-10 Triple Controller	001 (keyboard), 215 (printer), 10A (tape cassette)
WCS-20/30 Triple Controller	001 (keyboard), 215 (printer), 310 (diskette drive)

*For the Model 2243 (Triple Flexible Drive), the third device address is 350, 360 or 370; for the WCS/30, the Flexible Disk has device address 310, and the Fixed/Removable Disk has device address 320.

*For the Model 2224 and 2230 MX disk multiplexers, "hog" mode addresses are 390, 3A0 and 3B0.

A system with one device belonging to a particular class uses the *first* address for that class. Addition of devices belonging to the same class are assigned the next higher-order address, as listed above and in the more detailed listing in Appendix B.

2.2.1 *2200 PERIPHERAL DEFAULT ADDRESSES*

When 2200 system power is first turned on (initialized), the set of addresses list on page 2-7 will be valid (automatically preselected) in the system until changed by a SELECT command, and/or if no device addresses are supplied within the BASIC I/O statement.

SELECT PARAMETER	*2200 OPERATIONS/STATEMENTS*	*ADDRESS & CARRIAGE WIDTH (Specified Line Length)*
CI (Console Input)	Program Entry, Command & Immediate Mode Operations	001
CO (Console Output)	System Outputs such as echo of console inputs and error messages	005 (64)
DISK (where applicable)	All disk statements Default file designator	**310** **#0**
TAPE	All tape operations (DATASAVE, DATALOAD, LOAD, SAVE, etc)	**10A**
LIST	LIST, LIST DC	005 (64)
PRINT	PRINT, PRINTUSING, HEX PRINT	005 (64)
INPUT	INPUT, KEYIN	**001**
PLOT (where applicable)	**PLOT**	**413**

2.2.2 *ADDRESS SETTING ON 2200 I/O CONTROLLER CARDS*

There are two types of device address switches on controller boards:

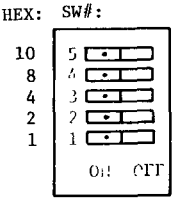


FIGURE 2-1
5-BANK ROCKER TYPE
ADDRESS SWITCH

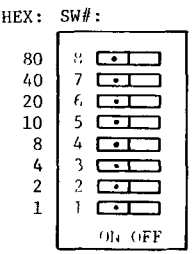


FIGURE 2-2
8-BANK ROCKER TYPE
ADDRESS SWITCH

The 8-bank rocker-type address switch located on the 6374 I/O board is set as shown in the example below.

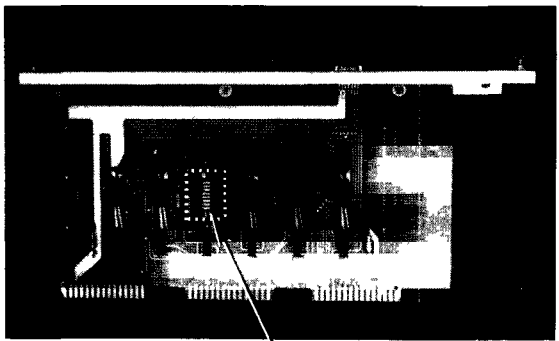
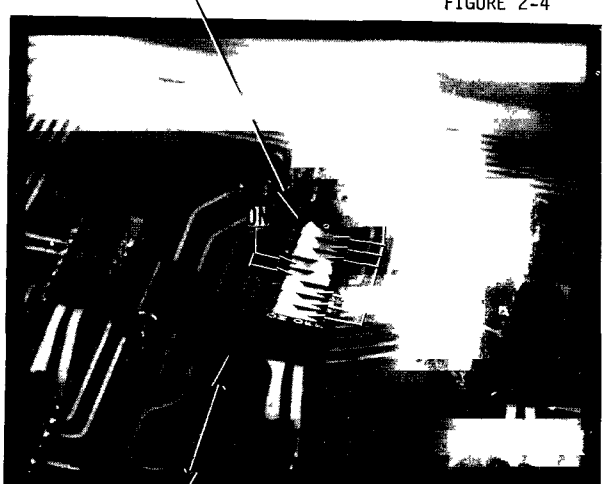


FIGURE 2-3
DEVICE ADDRESS
SWITCH

FIGURE 2-4

EXAMPLE:

HEX ADDRESS
FOR TAPE
READER
= 618_{16}
6 = MICRO-
PROGRAM HEX
DIGIT
1 = HIGH ORDER
SWITCH
8 = LOW ORDER
SWITCH



1, 2, 4, 8 = LOW ORDER SWITCHES

10, 20, 40, 80 = HIGH ORDER SWITCHES

The HEXADECIMAL address (of the form XY_1Y_2) must be broken down:

X - The most significant digit of the HEX address. Used by 2200 microprogram; NOT USED in device address switch settings. As explained previously, this is a digit from 0 to 6, identifying a particular class of device.

Y_1 - Next most significant digit of the HEX address. This HEX digit, broken down into four Binary bits, determines the settings of switches 8 through 5.

HEX VALUE	80	40	20	10
SWITCH #	SW8	SW7	SW6	SW5
HEX DIGIT				
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	1
2	0	0	1	0
3	0	0	1	1
4	0	1	0	0
5	0	1	0	1
6	0	1	1	0
7	0	1	1	1
8	1	0	0	0
9	1	0	0	1
A	1	0	1	0
B	1	0	1	1
C	1	1	0	0
D	1	1	0	1
E	1	1	1	0
F	1	1	1	1

Where: 1 = switch is ON,
0 = switch is off.

Y_2 - Least most significant digit of the HEX address. Broken down into four Binary bits, this HEX digit determines the settings of switches 4 through 1.

HEX VALUE	8	4	2	1
SWITCH #	SW4	SW3	SW2	SW1
HEX DIGIT				
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	1
2	0	0	1	0
3	0	0	1	1
4	0	1	0	0
5	0	1	0	1
6	0	1	1	0
7	0	1	1	1
8	1	0	0	0
9	1	0	0	1
A	1	0	1	0
B	1	0	1	1
C	1	1	0	0
D	1	1	0	1
E	1	1	1	0
F	1	1	1	1

Where 1 = switch ON
0 = switch OFF

2.3 RAM SIZE SELECTIONS

The 6309 pc (2200 A, B, C) and 6709 pc (2200 S, T) must be checked for proper RAM size setup. Two versions of 6309 exist: one with a 5-bank rocker switch, and an earlier version with strapping (jumper wires) in place of the switches. The 6709 pc has a 5-bank rocker switch for RAM address setup.

Verify the following, according to RAM size and 6309/6709 pc supplied with the system.

6309 (version without switches) connections for RAM Capacity

MEMORY SIZE	1 BIT L8 - pin 5	2 BIT L8 - pin 11	4 BIT L7 - pin 5	8BIT L7 - pin 11
	TO:	TO:	TO:	TO:
4K	±0V	+5V	+5V	+5V
8K	±0V	±0V	+5V	+5V
12K	±0V	+5V	±0V	+5V
16K	±0V	±0V	±0V	+5V
20K	±0V	+5V	+5V	±0V
24K	±0V	±0V	+5V	±0V
28K	±0V	+5V	±0V	±0V
32K	±0V	±0V	±0V	+0V

6309/6709 Switch Settings for RAM Capacity

SWITCH	4K	8K	12K	16K	20K	24K	28K	32K
1(ADD 16K)	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
2(ADD 8K)	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1
3(ADD 4K)	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
4(NOT USED)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
5(NOT USED)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

Where: 1 = Switch ON
0 = Switch OFF
X = Don't Care

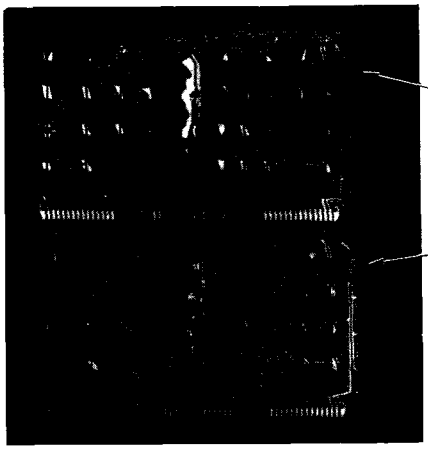


FIGURE 2-5

2.4 INCOMING INSPECTION

1) Unpack and inspect each unit for possible shipping damage. Exercise extreme caution when unpacking the 2216 Video Display unit. Report to the shipping carrier and Home Office immediately any physical damage.

2) Remove CPU top cover plate and ensure that all pc boards are firmly plugged into the correct socket.

3) If the CPU is a model A, B or C, a 2200 PS will be included in the system. Remove the top cover of the 2200 PS Power Supply and inspect for damage.

4) Remove top cover of the Video Display console and inspect for damage. USE EXTREME CAUTION.

5) Remove covers to other peripheral devices and inspect for damaged or loosened assemblies.

6) For 2200 A, B or C systems, leave 2200 PS cover *off*; for 2200 S or T systems, leave CPU cover off. Replace covers to all other units.

7) Perform voltage check procedure documented in Section 8. This eliminates the possibility of causing component failures due to improperly adjusted supply voltages.

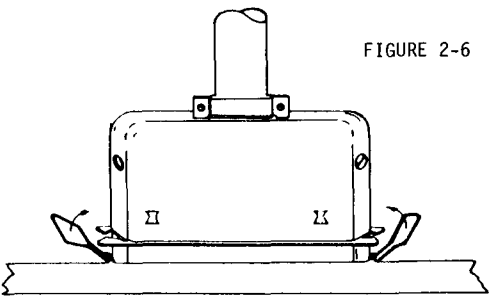
2.5 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. Ensure that all pc boards are properly seated in their connectors after verifying switch settings, voltages, etc.

2. Replace all chassis covers.

3. Connect peripherals to CPU I/O controllers. Ensure lock clips on peripheral cable connectors are snapped in.

FIGURE 2-6



PERIPHERAL CONTROLLER AMPHENOL I/O CONNECTORS

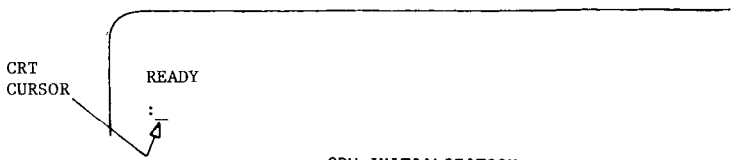
4. Be certain that each peripheral is connected to the proper CPU I/O controller.

5. Plug the main power cable from the CPU chassis into the 2200 PS (for A, B, C units).

6. With all AC power switches in the system *OFF*, plug in all AC line cords.

7. Once the system has been properly installed and initialized by switching the CPU (2200 S, T) or 2200 PS (2200 A, B, C) ON, the "READY" indication should appear in the upper left corner of the video display screen.

FIGURE 2-7



CPU INITIALIZATION
(POWER UP)

The system should now be ready for initial checkout.

8. For initial checkout, run appropriate diagnostic tests to verify operation of each unit in the system (i.e., CPU, options, peripherals) Manual Keyboard/Display operations must also be verified.

> NOTE
>
> All 2200 Options must be installed by a Wang Laboratories Customer Engineer or representative; no user-installed options/conversions/retrofits are offered. Consult Section 9 for Conversions.

NOTES:

SECTION 3

OPERATION

3.1 GENERAL

Refer to the *2200 BASIC Programming Manual* (WL #700-3231B), the *2200 Reference Manual* (WL #700-3038) and other pertinent peripheral reference manuals for user instructions in total system operation. For those already familiar with 2200 system BASIC language, the *System 2200 Pocket Guide* (WL #700-3030B) will provide quick reference to most general 2200 programming information.

3.2 PROGRAMMING OF OUTPUT DEVICES

3.2.1 *THE SELECT STATEMENT*

The SELECT statement must be used to select the input or output devices. A SELECT statement can be used either in the immediate mode or as a statement within a program. When used, the syntax of the SELECT statement requires that it contain a PRINT, LIST or CO command and a Device Type Code. Line length can also be specified. Each of these SELECT parameters is described below.

3.2.2 *DEVICE TYPE CODES*

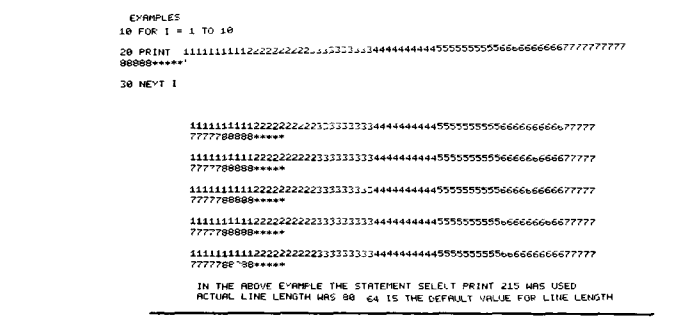
To restate, every peripheral attached to the WANG System 2200 is assigned a three-character Device Type Code. The Device Code is in the form (XYY), where X is the Device Type and YY is the Device Address. The Device Type (X) determines which internal System 2200 I/O routines are used to control the device. Some devices automatically execute a line feed (i.e., advances the paper to a new line) following the execution of a carriage return while others do not. In most cases, carriage return commands are initiated from the System 2200 CPU. However, there is one exception to this rule; certain printers initiate their own carriage return command whenever 80 characters (including spaces) are printed on a single line.

TYPE	OPERATION
0	This Device Type addresses devices that do not automatically execute a line feed after a carriage return; therefore the System 2200 supplies a line feed after each system-generated carriage return. When this Device Type is selected for the Printers with CR/LF, for instance, output which is normally single spaced is now double spaced.
2	This Device Type addresses devices that automatically execute a line feed after a carriage return; it is the Device Type normally used with the Printer. With this Device Type, the System 2200 does not supply a line feed command after each system-generated carriage return. When using this Device Type for single spaced output, only 79 or 131 characters can be output per line with printers (see paragraph 3.2.7).
4	This Device Type suppresses the automatic carriage return issued by the System 2200 at the end of PRINT, PRINTUSING and HEXPRINT statements that contain no trailing punctuation. Whenever a system-generated carriage return is initiated, the system automatically adds a line feed following it. The use of this Device Type is further discussed in the section on Special Techniques (see paragraph 3.2.7).

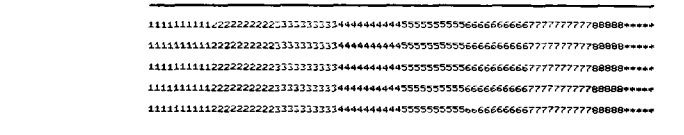
The results of using the various device types with an 80 column printer are shown in Figures 3-1 through 3-4.

The device address (YY) of the I/O Controllers are preset to the primary addresses by WANG Laboratories before the unit is shipped, and must be the address used in SELECT statements used with those devices. For example, a printer is set to 15. If a second printer is used on the same System 2200, it is assigned device address 16 by the WANG Service Representative who installs a system. The second Printer can be any of the following: Model 2261 High-Speed Printer, Model 2221 Line Printer (132 column), Model 2231 Line Printer (80 column) or Model 2241 Thermal Printer.

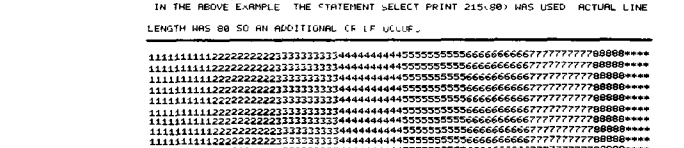
```
 THIS PROGRAM  WITH THE OBVIOUS CHANGES IN THE PRINT  TATEMENT WAS USED IN ALL

 EXAMPLES
10 FOR I = 1 TO 10

20 PRINT  1111111111222222222333333344444444445555555556666666667777777777
88888*****'

30 NEXT I
```



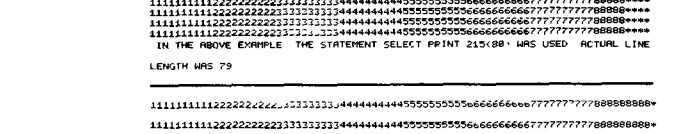
```
 IN THE ABOVE EXAMPLE THE STATEMENT SELECT PRINT 215 WAS USED
 ACTUAL LINE LENGTH WAS 80  64 IS THE DEFAULT VALUE FOR LINE LENGTH
```



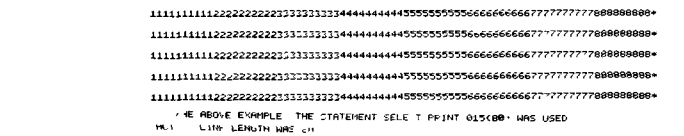
```
 IN THE ABOVE EXAMPLE  THE STATEMENT SELECT PRINT 215(80) WAS USED  ACTUAL LINE

LENGTH WAS 80 SO AN ADDITIONAL CR LF VALUE
```



```
 IN THE ABOVE EXAMPLE  THE STATEMENT SELECT PRINT 215(80) WAS USED  ACTUAL LINE

LENGTH WAS 79
```



```
    HE ABOVE EXAMPLE  THE STATEMENT SELE T PRINT 015(80) WAS USED
 ACT     LINE LENGTH WAS 64
```



```
  IN THE ABOVE EXAMPLE  THE STATEMENT SELECT PRINT 415 CR  WAS USED  RETURN
 LINE LENGTH WAS 80
```

FIGURE 3-1. Samples of Printout Using Different Device Type Codes, Line Lengths and PRINT.

```
SELECT LIST 015(80)
```

FIGURE 3-2

```
 LIST
10 FOR I = 1 TO 10

20 PRINT "1111111111222222222233333333344444444445555555555666666666777777777

88888*****"

30 NEXT I
```

IN THE ABOVE EXAMPLE THE STATEMENT SELECT LIST 015(80) WAS USED

```
SELECT LIST 215(64)
```

FIGURE 3-3

```
 LIST
10 FOR I = 1 TO 10
20 PRINT "1111111111222222222233333333344444444445555555555666
66666777777777788888*****"
30 NEXT I
```

IN THE ABOVE EXAMPLE, THE STATEMENT SELECT LIST 215(64) WAS USED

```
SELECT LIST 215(80)
 LIST
10 FOR I = 1 TO 10
20 PRINT "1111111111222222222233333333344444444445555555555666666666777777777

88888*****"
30 NEXT I
```

FIGURE 3-4

IN THE ABOVE EXAMPLE, THE STATEMENT SELECT LIST 215(80) WAS USED

Sample Printout using LIST with Different Device Type Codes and Line Lengths

3.2.3 *PRINT*

```
:SELECT PRINT 215
```

This statement selects the Printer with the Device Type Code and address 15 for all program output resulting from the execution of PRINT, PRINTUSING or HEXPRINT statements. Printout resulting from PRINT statements entered in the immediate mode appear on the CRT unless the Printer is selected for CO (see SELECT CO 215).

Example:

```
:10 SELECT PRINT 215          or        :SELECT PRINT 215
:20 PRINT "X","X↑2"                     :10 PRINT "X","X↑2"
:30 FOR X=1 TO 5                        :20 FOR X=1 TO 5
:40 PRINT X,X↑2                         :30 PRINT X,X↑2
:50 NEXT X                              :40 NEXT X
```

When either of these programs is executed, the printed output is:

X	X↑2
1	1
2	4
3	9
4	16
5	25

3.2.4 *LIST*

```
:SELECT LIST 215
```

This statement selects the Printer with the Device Type Code and address 15 for all program listings.

Example:

To list the program in the first example above on the Printer, key in as immediate mode statements:

```
:SELECT LIST 215
:LIST
```

The printed output is:

```
10 SELECT PRINT 215
20 PRINT "X","X↑2"
30 FOR X=1 TO 5
40 PRINT X,X↑2
50 NEXT X
```

3.2.5 *CONSOLE OUTPUT*

```
:SELECT CO 215
```

This statement selects the Printer with Device Type Code and address 15 for all console output. This includes all system displays, such as the READY message; output from STOP and END statements; and data keyed in on the keyboard and entered into the System 2200; and all output from immediate mode operations, TRACE statements, and error messages.

Example:

Key in as an immediate mode statement SELECT CO 215, touch the RETURN/EXECUTE Key and touch the RESET key. The output on the printer is:

```
:READY
```

All information entered in the System 2200 via the keyboard is now printed on the Printer.

3.2.6 *LINE LENGTH*

The maximum number of characters per line that can be printed is 255. To accommodate various paper widths and special forms whose width is less than 255 characters, the length of the output line can be specified by enclosing the desired line length in parentheses following the Device Type Code in the SELECT statement. This number is stored within the System 2200 and indicates the effective line length of the selected device to the System. For example:

```
SELECT PRINT 215 (80)   (Selects a printer for printing, sets
                         line length to 80)
SELECT LIST 215 (50)    (Selects a printer for listing, sets
                         line length to 50)
SELECT CO 215 (75)      (Selects a printer for console output,
                         sets line length to 75)
```

If a line length is not specified for PRINT, LIST or CO, the last line lengths selected for these operations are used. Master Initialization sets these line lengths to 64 characters. The maximum line length which can be specified in a SELECT statement is 255. However, the use of a line length greater than the physical carriage width of a specific peripheral device is not recommended.

The line length setting is used by the System 2200 to generate an automatic carriage return when a line exceeds the specified line length and when no carriage return is supplied by the program. This prevents printout from being lost. As a line of output is printed on a device, the System 2200 keeps a count of the number of characters sent. If this line count equals the current value of the line length before the output line is complete, a carriage return is executed, the line count is reset to zero, and the unfinished output is continued on the next line. If the output is completed and a carriage return is transmitted before the line count equals the line length, the system automatically resets the line count to zero for the start of a new line (a print statement with no trailing comma or semi-colon causes a carriage return to be executed at the end of the output). The line count is reset to zero under any one of the following conditions:

1. The line count equals the line length.
2. A carriage return is output when a PRINT, PRINTUSING or HEXPRINT statement is executed. (Printing a HEX(0D) does not reset the line count.)
3. The system is RESET.
4. A CLEAR command is executed.
5. The sytem is Master Initialized.

The following example illustrates the automatic carriage return generated by the selected line length. This program is entered in the CPU (note line length is set to 5):

```
10 SELECT PRINT 215 (5)
20 PRINT "THE QUICK BROWN FOX JUMPS OVER THE LAZY DOG"
```

When the program is executed, it produces the following output:

```
THE Q
UICK
BROWN
 FOX
JUMPS
 OVER
 THE
LAZY
DOG
```

Note that spaces in the line are included in the line count.

3.2.7 *SPECIAL TECHNIQUES*

The normal Device Type used with printers is type 2. When the Printer is selected with this device type for LIST, PRINT, or CO, normal single spaced output is produced. Device Type 0 can also be used with printers. In this case, output which appears single spaced under type 2 appears double spaced. This is because both the CPU and the Printer execute line feed commands following each system-generated carriage return.

Device Type 4 in intended for use with System 2200 plotter peripherals and has limited application with other types of peripherals. There are, however, two instances where it can be of use with the Model 2231 Printer.

```
10 FOR I = 1 TO 10

20 PRINT "1111111111222222222233333333334444444445555555556666666667777777777
888888888+"

30 NEXT I
```

IN THE ABOVE EXAMPLE, THE STATEMENT SELECT LIST 415,80, WAS USED

FIGURE 3-5

```
1111111111222222222233333333334444444445555555556666666667777777777888888++++1
1111111111222222222233333333334444444445555555556666666667777777777888888++++11
1111111111222222222233333333334444444445555555556666666667777777777888888++++111
1111111111222222222233333333334444444445555555556666666667777777777888888++++1111
1111111111222222222233333333334444444445555555556666666667777777777888888++++11111
1111112222222222333333333344444444445555555555666666666677777777778888888++++111111
```

IN THE ABOVE EXAMPLE THE STATEMENT SELECT PRINT 415,80, WAS USED. ACTUAL LINE LENGTH WAS 415

FIGURE 3-6

The first instance concerns the printing of lines which contain exactly 80 characters. Assume the Printer has been selected with Device Type 2 and Line Length 80 (i.e., SELECT PRINT 215 (80)). For output lines fewer than 80 characters in length and containing no trailing punctuation, the CPU issues a carriage return following the final character in the line. The Printer follows this carriage return with an automatic line feed. The next line of output is then printed directly beneath the first. When a line containing exactly 80 characters is printed, an additional event occurs. After the 80th character is printed, the Printer itself executes a carriage return followed by an automatic line feed. The CPU then issues the carriage return that normally occurs when the line count equals the selected line length, and the Printer follows this with another automatic line feed. The result is a skipped line before the next line of output. Note that if single spacing is required, only 79 characters can be output when using SELECT PRINT 215.

This skipped line can be avoided by using the following technique. Immediately before printing one or more consecutive PRINT, PRINTUSING or HEXPRINT statements, any of which produces an output line containing exactly 80 characters, place a SELECT PRINT 415 statement in the program. Before the next statement that prints a line of fewer than 80 characters; include a SELECT PRINT 215 statement.

Example:

```
100 SELECT PRINT 415
110 PRINT (output line of exactly 80 characters)
120 PRINTUSING 130, A,B,C
130 % (image containing exactly 80 characters)
140 SELECT PRINT 215
150 HEX PRINT A$ (output line of fewer than 80 characters)
```

This technique works because the Device Type 4 suppresses the normal carriage return supplied by the CPU at the end of the PRINT statements in lines 110 and 120. The only carriage returns (and subsequent line feeds) produced are those supplied by the Printer when the 80th character of lines 110 and 120 are printed. Care must be taken to ensure that

output lines containing fewer than 80 characters are not printed while the printer, for instance, is selected with Device Type 4. If this occurs, the output from consecutive print statements is printed all on one line until the end of the printer carriage is reached; at this time carriage return and line feed are automatically executed by the Printer. If output stops in mid-line, for example, the next PRINT statement encountered causes printing to begin at the next space in the line. To clear the Printer buffer, deselect the Printer by pressing the lit SELECT switch. Light the SELECT switch again to continue operations.

Device Type 4 is also useful in producing of double spaced program listings. Normally, when double spacing is desired, the Printer is selected with Device Type 0 (i.e., SELECT LIST 015). In this case, all LIST output is double spaced. Carriage returns followed by line feeds are initiated by the CPU at the end of each program text line as well as whenever the line count equals the selected line length. After a printer executes a carriage return, it generates another line feed, producing the double spacing after each printed line.

With Device Type 4, the CPU suppresses the carriage return (and therefore the accompanying line feed) normally supplied when the line count equals the selected line length. The carriage return that normally follows the end of a text line is not affected.

COMBINED PARAMETERS

It is possible to combine parameters in a SELECT statement

Example:

```
SELECT PRINT 215 (80), LIST 215 (80), CO 215 (75)
```

but it is not possible to select two output devices for the same parameter, i.e., the statement

```
SELECT LIST 215, LIST 005
```

will allow listing of programs only on the CRT.

3.2.8 *SUMMARY OF CONSOLE AND NON-CONSOLE DEVICE OUTPUT FROM CPU*

Figure 3-7 applies for output to non-console peripheral devices only.

Due to the complexity of the CPU instruction set and the differences in printing or display devices that can be selected for console output, a chart for console output variations is nearly impossible. However, there are several basic rules which apply to the CRT as a console output device which will be described here.

1. All ERROR, STOP and END PROGRAM messages are displayed on the Console Output Device regardless of the device selected for PRINT. Also, all immediate mode PRINT statements are displayed on the Console Output Device.

2. When a printable character is printed, the CRT Cursor is moved one position to the right and the line character counter is incremented. If a non-printable character is printed (HEX 00 thru 0F), the cursor does not move nor is the line character counter incremented.

3. When any BASIC statement is executed, a CR/LF is generated. The CR/LF will be printed at the completion of a program or at the completion of a statement in HALT/STEP.

4. When zoned format is specified (comma separating print elements) all characters in the print element are printed as an entity. Therefore, if a statement specifies seventeen characters to be printed in zone four, sixteen will not be printed in zone four and the remainder in zone one, but all seventeen will be printed in zone one of the next line.

5. When more than sixteen lines are printed on the CRT, a "roll" is performed, moving all printed lines up one line. Whenever a roll is performed, a CR/LF is automatically generated. It is therefore impossible to do a line feed or other cursor line movement without generating a CR/LF.

NO CONSOLE DEVICE OUTPUT FROM CPU

DEVICE TYPE	PRINT HEX PRINT PRINTUSING *With no print element specified*	PRINT HEX PRINT PRINTUSING *With no format (,,,) specified*	PRINT HEX PRINT OR PRINTUSING *With format (,,,) specified*	PRINT TAB & PRINT HEX 09 *With format/Without format*	DATASAVE RT
0	Automatically issues a HEX (0A) Line-feed character after every system-generated HEX (0D) carriage return character.	Print (transmit) specified element, then HEX 0D and HEX 0A.	Transmit HEX 0D, HEX 0A when: Condition (1) - last character in print field has been transmitted; or, Condition (2) - when Line character count equals the specified line length. NOTES: (A) Upon recognition of a comma, indicating *zoned* format, (16 - n_1) space characters (HEX 20) are inserted (transmitted) between the last character output in the present zone and the 1st character to be transmitted in the next available zone. If the next available zone occurs on the next *line*, HEX 0D and a HEX 0A are transmitted when condition (2) above is met. Furthermore, if successive commas are used (with a print element omitted) a zone is skipped; that is, 16 space characters are inserted. (B) A semicolon (indicating *packed* format) suppresses generation of space characters. Again, condition (2) applies. (C) When the number of characters in a print field exceeds the specified line length, a HEX 0D and HEX 0A (condition 2) are issued at the end of the current line; subsequently, the characters remaining in the print element are printed on the next line.	With format: Print specified number of space codes (HEX 20) to reach desired tab with PRINT TAB (for devices without presettable mechanical tab markers). -OR- Without format: Print specified number of space codes (HEX (20)); then HEX (0D) Carriage Return and HEX (0A) Line Feed.	Not Applicable.
2	← Same as *Device Type '0'*; EXCEPT, HEX (00) (NULL) is issued after every system-generated HEX (0D) (Carriage Return). This is useful inasmuch as some peripheral devices automatically generate a CR, LF, or both when maximum carriage width for that device is reached. →				
4	Same as Device type '0'.	Transmit Print element only (no HEX 0D, 0A or 00).	Transmit print element, suppress system generated HEX 0D, 0A caused by condition (1) above.	Transmits space codes (HEX 20) continuously with PRINT TAB command.	Print element only. (No HEX(00))

FIGURE 3-7

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.

SECTION 3

NOTES:

SECTION 4

THEORY OF OPERATION

4.1 CPU GENERAL DESCRIPTION

4.1.1 *INTRODUCTION*

The 2200 CPU is a single-user, noninterrupt, microprogrammed system which allows a user to execute programs written in 2200 BASIC language.

2200 BASIC is a conversational-interpreter language. It is easy to learn and use, and can be used not only for on-line conversational computing, but also for a wide range of scientific and business applications.

4.1.2 *HARDWARE VERSUS SOFTWARE*

The 2200 CPU can be thought of to be a computer within a computer. At the hardware level is the inner computer, consisting of the following subassemblies: an arithmetic logic unit, the data memory, several registers, and input/output buses. These subassemblies are composed of discrete logic devices interconnected to perform the various functions required.

The inner computer cannot function by itself. It requires some type of control to transfer data through the subassemblies and perform various operations. The necessary control was written in the form of a program in machine language by the designer. Machine language is simply the binary language of ones and zeroes which the CPU can understand. The machine language program which controls the CPU is known as the *microcode*. The microcode consists of many individual machine language instructions called microinstructions.

Around the inner computer is the outer computer, or *user level* computer. The user level computer is controlled by the operator, who directs the inner computer to perform various tasks and functions. The

user does not directly control the inner computer because the user's language is BASIC and the inner computer uses machine language. The user's BASIC language program is referred to as *software*. To convert the software to machine language instructions that can be executed by the CPU, a method of translation is required. Such a method of translation is used in the 2200 and is known as a BASIC *interpreter*. An interpreter translates one BASIC language statement at a time, executes the necessary machine language instructions at once, then translates the next BASIC statement, etc. Note that the interpreter method of translation differs from other translators (compilers and assemblers).

The translator program for the 2200 is permanently stored in the Instruction ROM for convenience. The Instruction ROM contains all the machine language instructions necessary to control the CPU, as described previously. The translator program is also sometimes referred to as the *firmware*.

The translator program is written in sets of routines which adapt the user level computer to the inner computer. Essentially, one routine is written to interpret each BASIC statement. Each routine consists of a series of machine language instructions called a microroutine. As

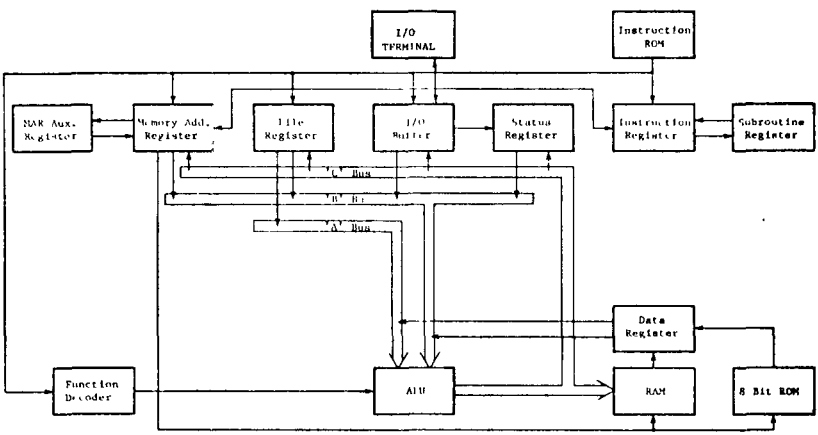


FIGURE 4-1 SIMPLIFIED 2200 CPU BLOCK DIAGRAM

with the user's program, the microinstructions are executed sequentially, but may also jump out of the sequence when certain conditions are met. This is known as *branching*. Since most of the routines utilize common subroutines, the size of the translator program is minimized by branching in and out of the subroutine.

To process the software, the BASIC word entered by the user is recognized by the CPU. The firmware is then directed to the routine that will translate the BASIC word and perform the necessary data manipulations.

Each microinstruction in the firmware controls the flow of data through the CPU. The most important data path in the CPU is through the ALU, as it is the 'workhorse' of the CPU, performing the necessary arithmetic and Boolean functions. Since all data must flow through the ALU, the microinstruction not only specifies the data flow path, but also specifies the type of function the ALU is to perform.

The ALU requires two data word inputs, or register sources, to perform the indicated operation on, and one resultant data word output, which is sent to the destination register. In the 2200 CPU, the data paths for input to the ALU are designated the A Bus and the B Bus, and the output from the ALU is designated the C Bus. The registers selected for the ALU source (A and B Buses) can also be designated for the ALU destination (C Bus) and/or the resultant data can be sent to the Data Memory. Again, the microinstruction specifies the register sources and the destination.

To further understand how the firmware ties the micro-level computer to the user-level computer, a generalized description of the CPU hardware and the microcode instructions is described in the following paragraphs. Also, simplified block diagrams of each of the PC Boards in the CPU are shown in Figures 4-7 through 4-11, to familiarize the reader with the physical location of the hardware components.

4.1.3 *GENERAL HARDWARE DESCRIPTION*

4.1.3.1 Register Structure

1.) Status Registers

There are four 4-bit Status Registers used to sense or set various 2200 conditions. Status Register 1 (6311-L19, L20) sets the RAM/ROM selection and Input Device inhibit and senses Special Function keys and arithmetic 'carry' operations (6310-L46). Status Register 2 (6311-L16) is set by the microprogram to indicate the phase and processing mode. Status Register 3 (6311-L18) sets the memory addressing mode and senses HALT/STEP, I/O device busy and other I/O operations. Status Register 4 (6311-L14) is set by the microcode during I/O operations.

2.) Program Counter Register

The PC Register (6309-L9, L19, L29, L40, L41) is a sixteen bit register used to indirectly hold the address of data words and the type

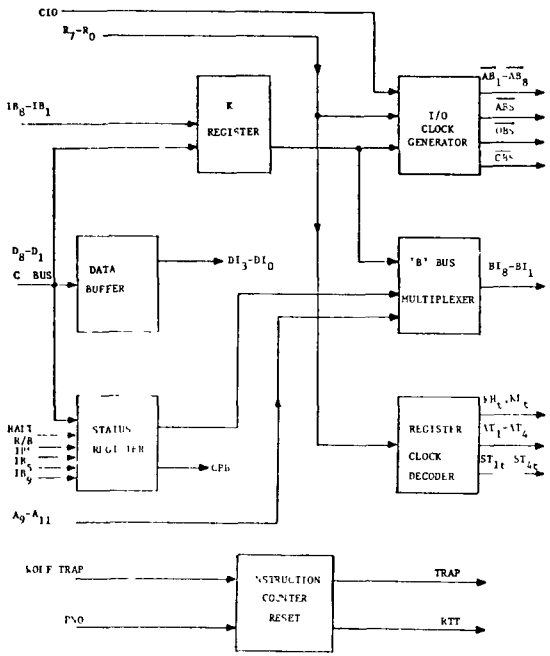


FIGURE 4-2

6311 I/O CONTROL

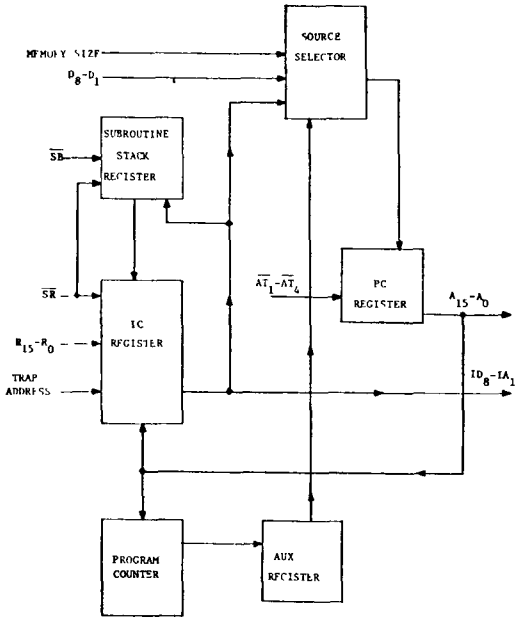


FIGURE 4-3 6309 REGISTERS

of read/write operation to be performed. The PC Register works with the PC Register Source Selector (6309-L7, L8, L17, L18, L27, L28, L38, L39). The Source Selector allows the PC Register data to be selected from the Auxiliary Registers, the 'C' Bus, the IC Register or the Memory Size Switches. The output of the PC Register is sent to the Data Memory Address Register to provide the actual address for the Data Memory.

3.) Auxiliary PC Registers

The sixteen Auxiliary PC Registers (6309-L6, L16, L26, L37) are used to temporarily save and restore the contents of the PC Register. Transfers or exchanges from the PC Register to an Auxiliary Register or from an Auxiliary Register to the PC Register may be performed. These transfers and exchanges are extremely useful when data is being moved, or when two sets of data are being operated on at the same time. The Auxiliary Registers also save time and memory by not having to save and recall the PC Registers in Memory when these type of operations are being performed. When the PC Register is transferred to an Auxiliary Register, incrementing or decrementing of the transferred data by 1 or

2 can also be specified. The Auxiliary Register works in conjunction with the Program Counter (6309-L5, L15, L25, L36). The Program Counter contains the data from the PC Register that is transferred to the Auxiliary Register. Also, the incrementing or decrementing mentioned above is done in the Program Counter.

4.) Data Memory Address Register

A Data Memory Address Register (6308-L13, L12, L38 and L39) receives the PC Register data. From the sixteen PC Register bits, eleven Data Memory Address bits, a Memory Select and a Write Enable are developed. This register also provides the data selection for the CL and CH Data Memory Read Registers. The Data Memory Address is

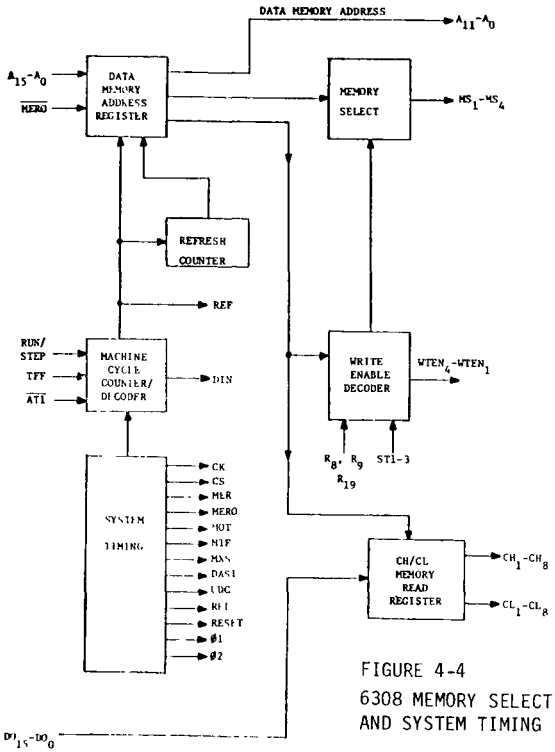


FIGURE 4-4
6308 MEMORY SELECT
AND SYSTEM TIMING

used to address data words in the 8 bit ROM or to address data words being read from or written into the RAM. During RAM Refresh cycles, the Data Memory Address Register receives the RAM column address from the Refresh Counter (6308-L26, 27).

5.) File Registers

The eight 4 bit File Registers (6310-L23 thru L26) are used as general purpose registers during arithmetic computations and related calculator processing. The File Registers can be either source or object registers for any of the register transfer microinstructions. The File Register write address is derived from the microcode instruction bits $R_2 - R_0$ while the two read addresses are derived from $R_6 - R_4$ and $R_{14} - R_{10}$.

6.) Instruction Counter Register

The IC Register (6309-L13, L23, L34, L45) is a sixteen bit register used to hold the address of the current microcode instruction. Although this register is not addressable by register instructions, its contents can be changed by Branch mini instructions.

7.) Subroutine Stack Registers

These sixteen 16 bit registers (6309-L10, L20, L31, L42) are used to hold the contents of the IC Register during Subroutine Branch instructions. These registers are circular and can hold up to sixteen branch addresses. The SSR is addressed by the SSR Address Counter (6309-L4) which is incremented or decremented by Subroutine Branch or Subroutine Return, respectively. The subroutine branches that occur are at the microprogram level, not the software level. Because certain microroutines, called recursive subroutines, can easily overflow the SSR, an area in Memory known as the Called Subroutine Stack (CSS) is set up and used in place of the SSR (see Section 4.3.1.4).

8.) K Input/Output Register

The K Input/Output Register (6311-L34, L35) is used to receive and send data to and from I/O devices. The KH Register contains the four high order bits and the KL Register contains the four low order bits.

9.) C Data Memory Read Register

The C Data Memory Read Register (6308 - L15, L16) is used to receive data from the MOS Memory or the 8-bit ROM. The CH Register receives the four high order data bits and the CL Register receives the four low order data bits. The two registers together contain an eight bit data word.

4.1.3.2 Memory Structure

1.) Data Memory

The Data Memory is composed of two basic parts: the MOS Memory (RAM) to store data and programs, and the 8-bit ROM, containing math constants, text atoms, timing constants and console device information. The MOS Memory can be read from and written into, but the 8 bit ROM is hardwired and can only be read from.

The RAM read or write address or the ROM read address is derived from the PC Register by the Data Memory Address Register. In addition, two modes of RAM data manipulation, set by Status Register 3-3, are available. The Horizontal Mode reads/writes two 4-bit data words, at the same RAM address, sequentially. The Vertical Mode reads/writes two 4-bit data words, at the same RAM address, by page. To further understand this operation, refer to Figure 4-7 and the following description.

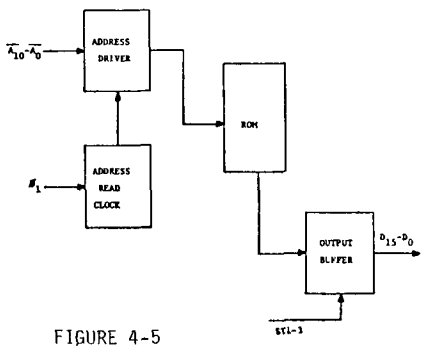


FIGURE 4-5

6361 8-BIT ROM

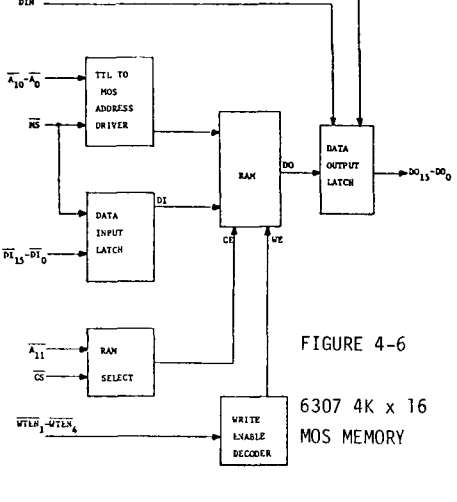
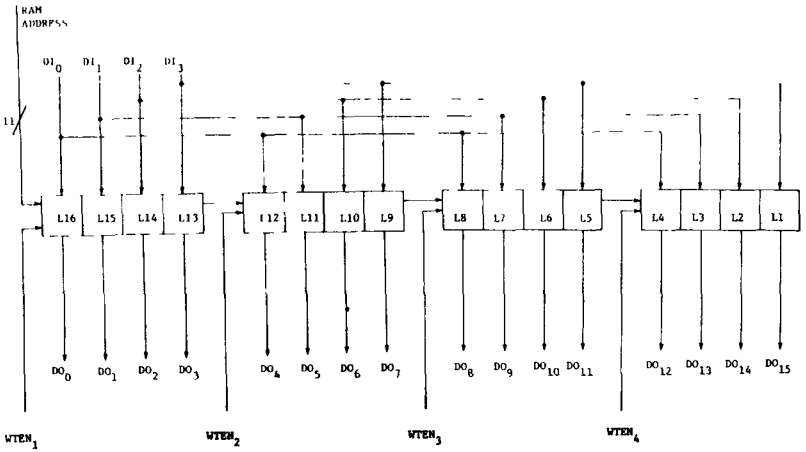


FIGURE 4-6

6307 4K x 16 MOS MEMORY

FIGURE 4-7 DATA MEMORY STRUCTURE



A basic 4K byte Memory contains sixteen 2048 x 1 bit RAMs. The Memory is divided into four blocks of four RAMs each. When data is written into Memory, only four bits from the data bus (C Bus) can be written at a time. To write a complete 8-bit word requires two machine cycles. The first four bits are written into one block of four RAMs and the second four bits are written into a different block of four RAMs by changing the $\overline{\text{WTEN}}$ signal. $\overline{\text{WTEN}}$ is derived from two bits of the PC Register (A_0 and A_4). The Data Memory address during the two write operations remains unchanged.

The same 8-bit word that was written in Memory in two machine cycles is read from Memory during one machine cycle. Consider each address of the Data Memory to be composed of register pairs consisting of two registers, with two 4-bit words in each register (refer to Figure 4-8). All sixteen Data Out (DO_{15}-DO_0) bits are applied to the CL/CH Data Memory Read Selector (6308-L28 thru L31) and Register (6308-L15, L16).

	A	B
REGISTER 0 (EVEN)	DO_3 - DO_0	DO_7 - DO_4
	B'	C
REGISTER 1 (ODD)	DO_{11} - DO_8	DO_{15} - DO_{12}

FIGURE 4-8

REGISTER PAIRS IN DATA MEMORY

The same two PC Register bits that $\overline{\text{WTEN}}$ was derived from are used to select the data from Memory. Suppose the data written into block A of Figure 4-8 is read into the CL Register. The CH register will receive the next 4-bit word (B) in the horizontal mode or the corresponding register 4-bit word (B') in the vertical mode. The two 4-bit words are received at the same time by the CH/CL Registers. Any sequential (horizontal) or (vertical) page read can be performed without changing the Data Memory Address. This 4-bit write/8-bit read scheme of addressing provides the convenience of 4-bit addressing and the speed of 8-bit reads.

2.) Control Memory

The Instruction ROM (6325 Memory) contains up to 64k of 20-bit words that make up the BASIC Interpreter, or control memory. Each instruction of the microprogram contained in the Instruction Memory is read from the ROM at the address specified by the IC Register. The IC Register

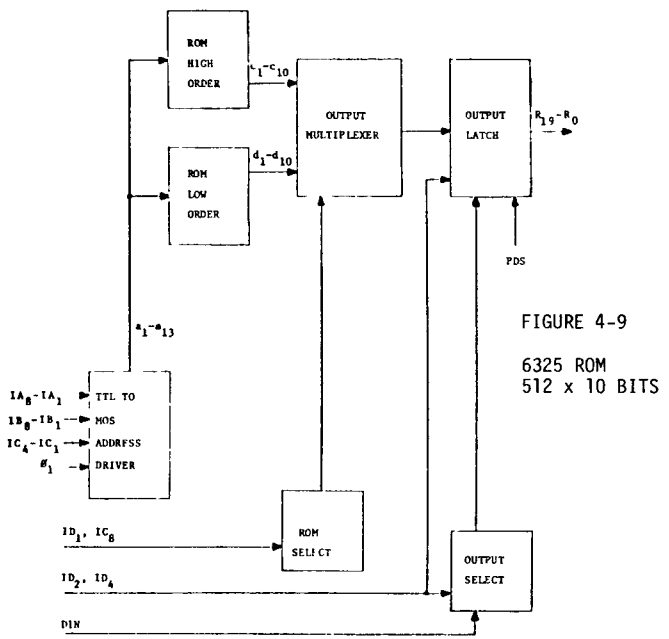


FIGURE 4-9

6325 ROM
512 x 10 BITS

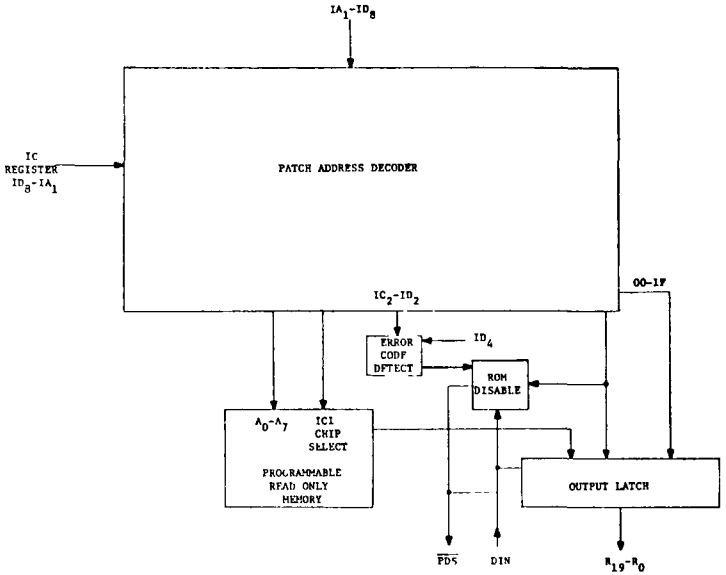


FIGURE 4-10 6547 SUPERPATCH BOARD

is incremented sequentially every machine cycle but can be changed by Branch and Return microinstructions. In some models, a 'superpatch' is used in conjunction with the Instruction ROM to correct microinstructions that were written incorrectly. The superpatch decodes the address of an incorrect instruction being accessed, disables the Instruction ROM and provides the correct microinstruction for the CPU.

4.1.3.3 Supporting Hardware

1.) Arithmetic Logic Unit

The ALU (6310-L20) performs arithmetic or logic functions as specified by the decoded microinstruction at the function select word input. The 4-bit A and B data word inputs are derived from the B and A Buses respectively and operated on by the ALU. The resultant 4-bit F output is applied to the C Bus (Data Bus) for use in the CPU. Arithmetic operations with carry may also be performed by the ALU by the use of additional circuitry (6310-L9, L46). When a carry is generated, it is sensed by Status Register 1.

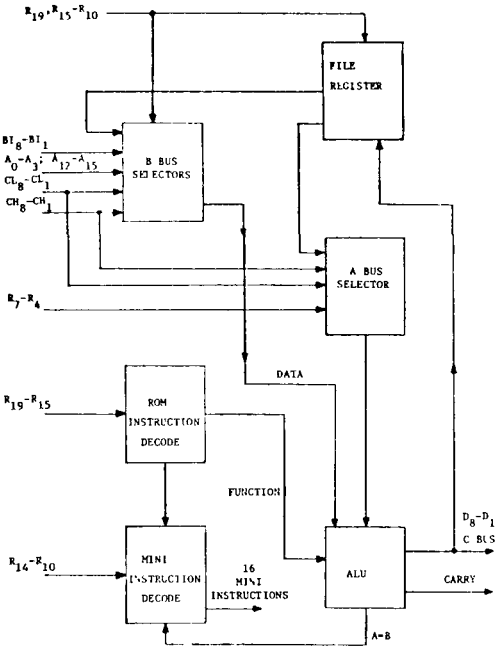


FIGURE 4-11 6310 ALU BOARD

2.) Micro Instruction Decoder

The Micro Instruction Decoder (6310-L33, L34) is used to decode the control memory instruction word and determine if it is a Register Instruction, a Mini Instruction or Branch Instruction. If a Mini Instruction is specified, an additional decoder, the Mini Instruction Decoder (6310-L1, L41) decodes register transfers and exchanges, subroutine returns and I/O control instructions. L33 decodes the Register Instructions and L34 decodes the Branch and Mini Instruction.

3.) System Timing

The CPU timing is derived from a 10 MHz Oscillator (6308-L9) and four shift registers (6308-L19, L20, L23, L32) phase shifted from each other. These shift register outputs are gated to develop the system clocks, resulting in sixteen clock times, each 100 nanoseconds apart.

A system clock is therefore generated once every sixteen clock times, or 1.6 microseconds. This is the machine cycle period. See Figures 4-12 and 4-13.

Another part of the system timing is the Machine Cycle Counter (6308-L6, L17) and Decoder (6308-L1) which interrupts the normal CPU machine cycle to allow the Data Memory to be refreshed. The clocks and their functions in the CPU are:

$\overline{\text{MERO}}$: Used to clock the SSR Address Counter, all output strobes and the RAM Select and Write Enable Decoders.

$\overline{\text{MER}}$: Provides clocks for the Program Counter, Status Registers, File Registers and IC Register.

$\overline{\text{MOT}}$: Provides a clock pulse to increment or decrement the Program Counter by one count.

$\overline{\text{MTF}}$: Provides two clock pulses to increment or decrement the Program Counter by two counts.

$\overline{\text{UDC}}$: Loads the PC Register.

$\overline{\text{MXS}}$: Allows clocks to be generated to enable the Auxiliary Registers and increment or decrement the PC Register.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$: Disables the Instruction ROM and clocks a new address to the Data Memory.

$\overline{\text{CS}}$: Used in conjunction with A_{11} to select the upper or lower half of an 8K byte Data Memory.

$\overline{\text{MHL}}$: Provides the clock for the CH and CL Data Registers.

$\overline{\text{MNT}}$: Clears the Write Enable and Memory Select circuits. Also provides the clock to generate DIN.

DIN: Provides a clock for the ROM Output Latch to generate a ROM Instruction and also disables the RAM output.

$\overline{\text{DAST}}$: Provides the Data Memory Data Output clock.

CK: Not used.

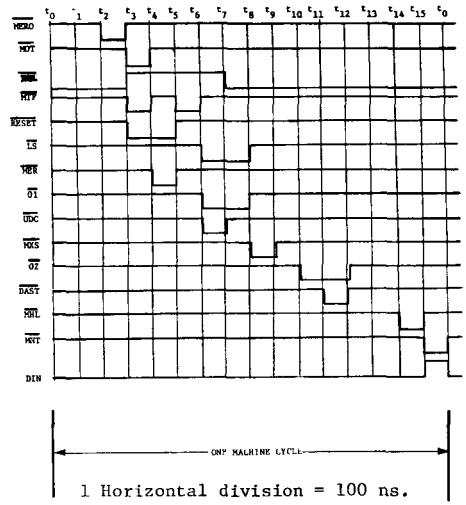
$\overline{\text{REF}}$: Enables the Memory clocks to generate a refresh cycle.

$\overline{\text{REL}}$: Clocks the Write Enable to the RAMs.

$\overline{\text{Ø1}}$: Generates RAM Read Clock and enables the ROM to read a new address from the Instruction Counter.

$\overline{\text{Ø2}}$: Generates RAM Write Clock.

FIGURE 4-12 MODEL 2200 A/B/C CPU TIMING



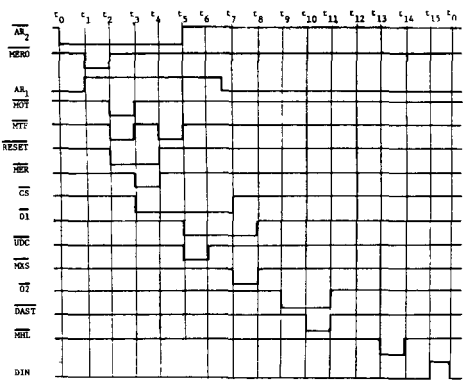


FIGURE 4-13 MODEL 2200 S/T CPU TIMING

4.) Register Clock Decoder

The Register Clock Decoder (6311-L21, L22) enables the clocks for the PC Register, Status Registers and the K Register to be generated as specified by the microinstruction.

5.) B Bus Multiplexer/Selectors

The microinstruction can select the B Bus data from any register in the CPU. The B Bus Multiplexer (6311-L26 thru L29) provides B Bus input from the four Status Registers, the K Register or the PC Register bits $A_{11} - A_4$.

In addition to the B Bus Multiplexer, there are three other levels of B Bus selection. B Bus Selector #1 (6310-L35 thru L38) provides inputs to B Bus Selector #2 (6310-L27, L39). Selector #1 output can be obtained from PC Register bits $A_{15} - A_{12}$ or $A_3 - A_0$, the CH or CL Registers, or a hardwired 'dummy' register. Selector #2 can output the data from Selector #1, the B Bus Multiplexer or the File Registers. The output of Selector #2 is applied to B Bus Selector #3 (6310-L17). Depending on the type of ALU operation to be performed, Selector #3 outputs either the data from Selector #2 or the nine's complement of that data to the ALU A Word input. The addresses for the B Bus Multiplexer and Selectors #1 and #2 are derived from ROM Instruction bits R_{19} and R_{15} thru R_{10}.

6.) A Bus Selector

The A Bus Selector (6310-L2, L3) provides the ALU with the B Word input. The output may be selected from the File Registers, the CH or CL Registers or ROM bits $R_7 - R_4$. The address for the A Bus Selector is derived from ROM Instruction bits R_7 thru R_4.

4.1.3.4 Input/Output Structure

The 2200 uses an eight bit parallel Input/Output data path to interface many type of devices. The K Register, discussed in paragraph 4.1.3.1, is used for this data I/O path.

In addition to data, each device requires a unique eight bit address. The address is also derived from the K Register and loaded into the AB Latch (6311-L15, L25) when specified by a CIO instruction and R_7.

To tell the I/O device when to input data to or receive data from the CPU, three strobes are used, generated by the I/O Strobe Generator (6311-L1, L10, L11).

The Address Bus Strobe ($\overline{ABS}$) strobes the eight bit device address to the I/O devices. Since each I/O device has a different address, only one device may be enabled at one time. The Output Bus Strobe ($\overline{OBS}$) is a 5 usec data output strobe that sends the data in the K Register to the device which is currently enabled. The Control Bus Strobe ($\overline{CBS}$) is a 5 usec output strobe that requests the currently enabled device to send an $\overline{IBS}$ to the CPU. The Input Bus Strobe is sensed by Status Register 1 (paragraph 4.1.3.1).

4.2 GENERAL INSTRUCTION SET DESCRIPTION

The 2200 Instruction set provides a general form for writing the microinstructions used in the CPU.

There are three instruction groups: Register Instructions, which allow the arithmetic and logical ALU operations to be performed on data contained in various registers; Branch Instructions, which test for certain register conditions and if met, branch the microprogram to the address specified; and Mini Instructions, which control I/O operations, subroutine returns, and register transfers and exchanges.

The Instruction Set is shown in Table 4-1. The Op Codes for the various instructions are always the same for each instruction, but the A and B Bus Sources, the C Bus destination, memory operation, branch addresses, etc. are the variables in the instruction. Although there are a limited number of instruction types, an almost unlimited number of different instructions can be written simply by changing the instruction variables. This feature makes the instruction set very versitile. By writing the instruction variables using the rules shown

in Tables 4-2 through 4-7, each instruction can be customized to perform a specific operation with data from the CPU hardware. For example, suppose an instruction is required to OR the contents of Status Register 4 with File Register 5 and put the results in the PC3 Register and also in Memory with a Write 1. First, the Op Code for an OR is 00000. Status Register 4 is selected on the B Bus with the X Bit ON and B Field as 1001. The Write 1 is 10. File Register 5 is selected on the A Bus by specifying the A Field as 0100 (Register 1 is 0000, Register 2 is 0001, etc.). The C Bus destination of the PC3 Register is 1011. By following the format in Table 4-1, the complete instruction is written as 00000110011001001011. Although the hardware requires a binary instruction to perform the operation, the instruction is normally written in hexadecimal as '0664B'. In a similar manner, the complete microprogram is written to produce the desired results and then is stored in a 'hardwired' Instruction Memory.

ROM INSTRUCTION BITS →	R_{19}	R_{18}	R_{17}	R_{16}	R_{15}	R_{14}	R_{13}	R_{12}	R_{11}	R_{10}	R_9	R_8	R_7	R_6	R_5	R_4	R_3	R_2	R_1	R_0
INSTRUCTION DESIGNATORS →	Op Code					X	B Bus Source				Memory		A Bus Source				C Bus Dest.			
REGISTER INSTRUCTIONS																				
OR(OR)	0	0	0	0	0	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	C	C	C	C
Exclusive OR(XOR)	0	0	0	0	1	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	C	C	C	C
AND(AND)	0	0	0	1	0	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	C	C	C	C
Decimal Subtract w/carry(DSC)	0	0	0	1	1	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	C	C	C	C
Binary Add(A)	0	0	1	0	0	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	C	C	C	C
Binary Add w/carry(AC)	0	0	1	0	1	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	C	C	C	C
Decimal Add(DA)	0	0	1	1	0	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	C	C	C	C
Decimal Add w/carry(DAC)	0	0	1	1	1	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	C	C	C	C
													Immed. Operand							
OR Immediate(ORI)	0	1	0	0	0	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	I	I	I	I	C	C	C	C
Exclusive OR Immediate(XORI)	0	1	0	0	1	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	I	I	I	I	C	C	C	C
And Immediate(ANDI)	0	1	0	1	0	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	I	I	I	I	C	C	C	C
Binary Add Immediate(AI)	0	1	1	0	0	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	I	I	I	I	C	C	C	C
Binary Add w/c Immed(ACI)	0	1	1	0	1	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	I	I	I	I	C	C	C	C
Decimal Add Immediate(DAI)	0	1	1	1	0	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	I	I	I	I	C	C	C	C
Decimal Add w/c Immed(DACI)	0	1	1	1	1	X	B	B	B	B	M_2	M_1	I	I	I	I	C	C	C	C

	Op Code				B Bus Source				IC2 Address				A Bus Source				IC1 Address			
BRANCH INSTRUCTIONS																				
Branch if = to Register(BER)	1	0	0	0	B	B	B	B	Y	Y	Y	Y	A	A	A	A	Y	Y	Y	Y
Branch if ≠ to Register(BNR)	1	0	0	1	B	B	B	B	Y	Y	Y	Y	A	A	A	A	Y	Y	Y	Y
					IC4 Address								IC3 Address							
Subroutine Branch(SB)	1	0	1	0	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Unconditional Branch(B)	1	0	1	1	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
					B Bus Source								Mask							
Branch if True(BT)	1	1	0	0	B	B	B	B	Y	Y	Y	Y	M	M	M	M	Y	Y	Y	Y
Branch if False(BF)	1	1	0	1	B	B	B	B	Y	Y	Y	Y	M	M	M	M	Y	Y	Y	Y
Branch if = to Mask(BEQ)	1	1	1	0	B	B	B	B	Y	Y	Y	Y	M	M	M	M	Y	Y	Y	Y
Branch if ≠ to Mask(BNE)	1	1	1	1	B	B	B	B	Y	Y	Y	Y	M	M	M	M	Y	Y	Y	Y

	Op Code 1				Op Code 2				Memory		S/L	Address/Data							
MINI INSTRUCTIONS																			
Control I/O(CIO)	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	M_2	M_1	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
													A Bus Source				-	-	-	-
Subroutine Return(SR)	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A				
Transfer PC to IC(TPI)	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A				
Transfer IC to PC(TIP)	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A				
Transfer Memory size to PC(TMP)	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A				
																	Aux Register			
Transfer PC to Aux(TP)	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Transfer Aux to PC(TA)	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Exchange PC and Aux(XP)	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Transfer PC to Aux[TP+1]	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Transfer PC to Aux[TP-1]			0	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Transfer PC to Aux[TP+2]			0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Transfer PC to Aux[TP-2]			0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Exchange PC and Aux[XP+1]					1	0	0	0	0	0	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Exchange PC and Aux[XP-1]	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Exchange PC and Aux[XP+2]	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R
Exchange PC and Aux[XP-2]	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	M_2	M_1	A	A	A	A	R	R	R	R

TABLE 4-1 2200 MICROCODE INSTRUCTION SET

A Field (R_7-R_4)	Register Source	
	Auxiliary Register and TIP Instructions	All Other Instructions
0000 through 0111	One of eight File Registers	One of Eight File Registers
1000	CH Data Register	CH Data Register
1001	Illegal	CH Data Register; PC decrement
1010	Illegal	CH Data Register; PC increment
1011	Illegal	Dummy Register; PC decrement
1100	CL Data Register	CL Data Register
1101	Illegal	CL Data Register; PC decrement
1110	Illegal	CL Data Register; PC increment
1111	Illegal	Dummy Register; PC increment

I Field (R_7-R_4)	Immediate Operand
0000 ↓ 1111	The immediate operand specified is used as the A Bus data

TABLE 4-2 A BUS SOURCE SELECTION

B Field (R_{13}-R_{10})	Register Source	
	X Bit (R14) = **0**	X Bit (R14) = **1**
0000 through 0111	One of eight File Registers	One of eight File Registers
1000	KH I/O Register	Status Register 3
1001	KL I/O Register	Status Register 4
1010	Status Register 1	PC2
1011	Status Register 2	PC3
1100	PC1	PC4
1101	CH Data Register	CH Data Register
1110	CL Data Register	CL Data Register
1111	Dummy	Dummy

TABLE 4-3 B BUS DESTINATION SELECTION

C Field (R_3-R_0)	Register Destination	
	X Bit (R14) = **0**	X Bit (R14) = **1**
0000 through 0111	One of eight File Registers	One of eight File Registers
1000	KH I/O Register	Status Register 3
1001	KL I/O Register	Status Register 4
1010	Status Register 1	PC2
1011	Status Register 2	PC3
1100	PC1	PC4
1101	Illegal	Illegal
1110	Illegal	Illegal
1111	Dummy	Dummy

TABLE 4-4 C BUS DESTINATION SELECTION

R Field (R_3-R_0)	Register Source/Destination
0000 ↓ 1111	One of sixteen Auxiliary Registers

TABLE 4-5 AUXILIARY REGISTER SELECTION

M Field (R_9,R_8)		Data Memory Operation
M_2	M_1	
0	0	No read or write
0	1	Read 8 bits from Data Memory
1	0	Write 1; write 4 bits into Data Memory
1	1	Write 2; write 4 bits into Data Memory

TABLE 4-6 DATA MEMORY OPERATIONS

D Field R_6 - R_0	S Bit (R_7) = 0	S Bit (R_7) = 1
0000000	No Operation	Load Address Bus Latches with data from K register
0010000	Generate $\overline{CBS}$	Illegal
0100000	Generate $\overline{OBS}$	Illegal
1000000	Generate $\overline{ABS}$	Illegal

TABLE 4-7 CONTROL I/O OPERATIONS

4.3 CPU FIRMWARE DESCRIPTION

As mentioned in section 4.1, the BASIC Interpreter contained in Instruction ROM is the important link between the user's BASIC program and the machine instructions. The firmware not only allows the user to perform calculations and data manipulation through the software, but also sets up and keeps track of the various pointers, flags, buffers, tables and stacks necessary for program execution.

The pointers, flags, buffers, tables and stacks are stored in a predetermined area of the Data Memory. The Data Memory is mainly used for storing the user's program and data, except for this small portion used for "housekeeping". Figure 4-14 depicts the Data Memory allocations of these areas used by the firmware.

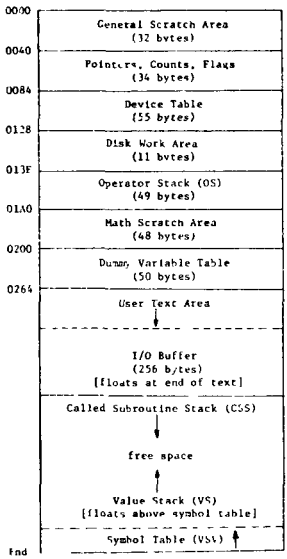


FIGURE 4-14

DATA MEMORY ALLOCATION

A brief description of some of these areas is as follows: the Symbol Table (VSV) contains the user defined variables and their values; the Value Stack (VS) is used to temporarily hold values during expression analysis and subroutine information; the Operator Stack (OS) holds the operators during expression evaluation and FOR/GOSUB information: the Dummy Variable Table contains information for user defined functions (DEFFN). The use of these tables is further explained in subsequent paragraphs.

4.3.1 *CPU PROCESSING*

When power is applied to the CPU, Master Initialization occurs. Master Initialization sets a 'trap' address in the control memory which is the start of the Master Initialization microprogram. During this microprogram much of the CPU hardware is initialized and the various tables and stacks in the RAM are initialized or set to specific conditions.

When Master Initialization is complete, the CPU enters the Text Entry Phase (during normal operation, the 2200 System is in one of three phases: text entry, variable and line number resolution, or program execution).

4.3.1.1 Text Entry Phase

Text entry phase is identified by a colon (or '?' for INPUT) being displayed. The system then waits for the user to input text. Input characters are placed into the RAM I/O buffer (at end of text area) until an execute (CR) is encountered. The text line is then syntactically analyzed, syntax errors causing an error message to be displayed. If there are no syntax errors and the text line is a system command, the command is executed; if it is a statement without a line number, it is executed as a one-line user program (immediate execution). Refer to paragraph 4.3.1.4 for a description of Execution Phase. If it is a statement with a line number, it is threaded into the users present text program. That is, two bytes are reserved before each text line in the program as a pointer (thread) to the next highest program text line. Hence, when a new text line is added, the next lowest text line is found and its thread is set to point to the new line. If the line number of the new text line is equal to the line number of a previously entered statement, the new statement is threaded into the program in place of the previous statement (if the over-riding text line consists solely of a line number and a carriage return, the over-ridden text line is removed and the new line is not threaded in - this is line deletion). Note that lines with syntax errors are also threaded into the users program.

4.3.1.2 Variable and Line Number Resolution Phase

The Resolution phase is entered just prior to the execution phase. The Resolution phase is triggered by a RUN command. Its function is

to assemble the variable symbol table, allocate value areas in RAM for user variables, and assure that referenced user line numbers exist. It consists of a complete scan of the users program. If the entire pass is error free, then the resolution phase transfers control to the execution phase directly. If an error is detected, an error message is displayed, execution is inhibited, and control returns to the text entry phase.

The resolution phase scan verifies the presence of valid line numbers and user defined functions that have been referenced, and constructs a variable symbol/value table. As each referenced line number or user defined function is encountered, the body of the user text is scanned for a match with the current element. As each referenced variable is encountered, the symbol table is scanned for a match with the current variable name. If a match is found, then the scan of the program continues. If no match is found, then the variable is entered into the value table and is set equal to zero (numerics) or is assigned a value of one blank character (alphanumerics). The symbol table is assembled from high order address to low order address, starting with the highest RAM address (see Figure 4-14).

When a variable is defined by a user, it is allocated space in the symbol table during resolution phase. Numeric variables are initially given a value of 0; alphanumeric variables are given a value of one blank character (for a 16-character default length, 16 blanks are assigned, but the trailing blanks are not normally considered to be part of the value). Alphanumeric variable values have a default maximum length of 16 characters which may be ridden over by the user with a DIM statement (the user may set the maximum variable length from 1 to 64 characters).

Each symbol table entry consists of two parts: the symbol prefix (name, atom, dimensions, thread to next symbol, etc.) and the symbol data (i.e., variable values).

Figure 4-15 shows the Symbol Table Entry Format. The Symbol Atom is used to specify numeric or alphanumeric variables and scalar, vector, or array information.

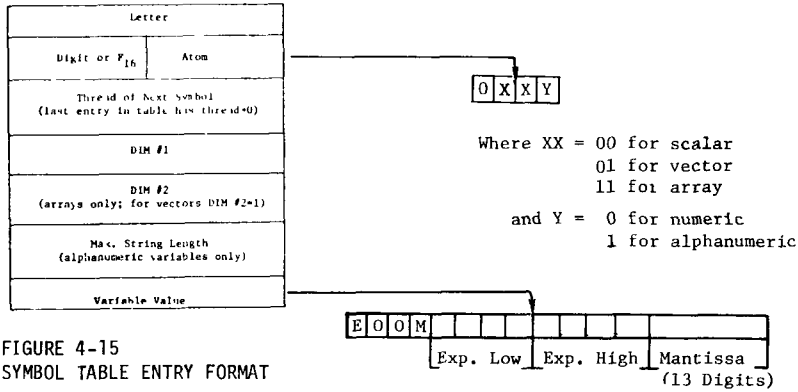


FIGURE 4-15
SYMBOL TABLE ENTRY FORMAT

Where E = 0 for positive exponent; = 1 for negative exp.
and M = 0 for positive mantissa; = 1 for neg. mantissa

The thread of next symbol is a pointer to the next symbol in the symbol table used to speed up searching for a particular variable. The values of arrays are stored row by row from left to right.

Numeric values are normalized (leading zeroes removed) and stored in floating point format. The decimal point is assumed to be after the first digit (Scientific notation).

Alphanumeric values are character strings which are left justified and filled in with blanks on the right up to the maximum length of the value. The end of the value is assumed to be the last nonblank character (except when the value is all blanks, in which case, the value is assumed to be one blank). Hence, trailing blanks are not part of alphanumeric values.

4.3.1.3 Text Atomizing

Text Words (Verbs, Commands, Function Names, etc.)

The BASIC verbs, commands, and function names in text are replaced by text atoms. A text atom is an 8-bit code with the 8-bit on; the lower 7 bits specify the position of the basic word entry in the text atom table in the CPU's 8-bit ROM. Striking a verb, command, or function key on the keyboard will cause the direct entry of the text atom into text. Entering a verb, command, or function by individual characters will result in the word being atomized at a later time.

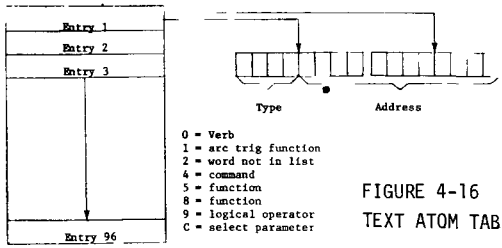


FIGURE 4-16
TEXT ATOM TABLE

The Text Atom table occupies 96 entries in the 8-bit ROM (see Figure 4-16). Each entry consists of a 16-bit pointer for every possible text atom. When an atom is requested, two bytes of 8-bit ROM are read from the Text Atom table at the address of the entry number specified by the atom.

The sixteen bits read from the Text Atom table are used to specify the type of BASIC word the atom represents and the address of the word in the appropriate Atom List. The 2200 microprogram provides for up to eight such word lists which can be referenced by the Text Atom Table. The 2200 currently uses seven word lists.

Text Word List:

The Atom List specified by the Text Atom Table is scanned until a match of the Text Atom and the Atom List entry is found. The word is then read from the 8-bit ROM. The number of byte locations occupied in the 8-bit ROM depends on the length of the BASIC word. The Text Word List structure is shown in Figure 4-17.

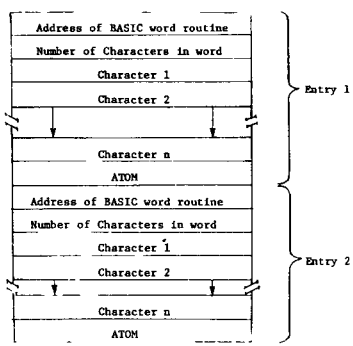
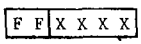


FIGURE 4-17
TEXT WORD LIST
STRUCTURE

Statement Numbers:

Statement numbers and references to statement numbers are stored in packed decimal format after a statement number atom. The statement number atom occupies 1 byte and the decimal number two bytes. With this structure, the maximum statement number length is 4 digits.



Statement number: (0001 through 9999)

4.3.1.4 Execution Phase

Execution phase is entered only after a successful resolution phase. During execution phase, each statement is executed as it is scanned. To execute a BASIC statement, the text is scanned and compared with the BASIC atoms stored in the 8 Bit ROM. When a match is found, the specific microroutine to process the BASIC Statement is executed. The address of the correct microroutine for each BASIC statement is found in the Atom Table information that corresponds to the BASIC text word. After execution of the statement, scanning continues.

Three pushdown stacks are now active: the called subroutine stack (CSS), the value stack (VS), and the operator stack (OS). The CSS is used principally to store subroutine return addresses for recursive subroutines. The value stack is used for operand storage during expression evaluation and for such purposes as storing loop and subroutine information. The OS stores operator atoms for expression analysis as well as atoms for looping and subroutines, etc.

4.3.1.5 Recursion

The 2200 CPU has a 16-level, circular subroutine return stack. Therefore, for recursive subroutines, which could easily overflow this stack, a special Called Subroutine Stack (CSS) is set up in RAM (by recursion we mean, for example, that an expression may contain within

itself smaller elements which are themselves expressions). Thus, when the syntax scan encounters an overall expression, it will call the Expression Processor, and if a smaller independent expression is found within this overall expression, the Expression Processor is again called in to evaluate the smaller expression. When evaluation of the smaller expression is complete, the Expression Processor is again called to complete evaluation of the *overall* expression.

The Called Subroutine Stack is a "pushdown" stack, operating on a last-in/first-out (LIFO) basis. Before entry into a recursive routine, the return address is stored in the CSS. Exit from the recursive routine is made by a branch which removes the return address from the CSS and branches to the point specified. Examples of 2200 microroutines which are recursive are:

VAR - process a numeric variable
EXPR - expression processor
TERM - *evaluate a term*
FUNC - process a function

These recursive subroutines are utilized by the 2200 and are not directly user accessible.

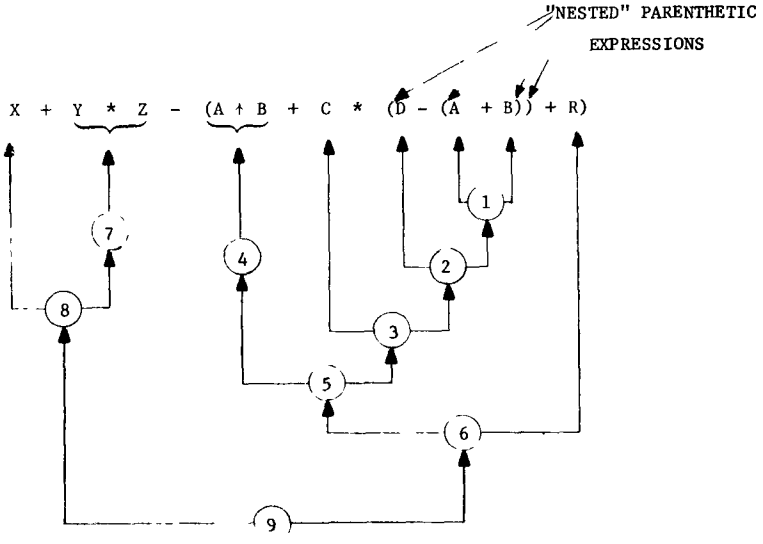
4.3.1.6 Expression Evaluation

Expressions are evaluated according to the following priorities:

Priority 4 (highest)...( ) (Any expression within parentheses[1])
Priority 3 . . . . . ↑ (Exponentiation)
Priority 2 . . . . . *, / (Multiplication, Division)
Priority 1 (lowest) .. +, - (Addition, Subtraction)

[1]Since expressions may contain nested parentheses, the innermost parenthetic expression is evaluated first, according to the priorities established above. In similar manner, remaining parenthetic expressions are sequentially evaluated, until the outermost parenthetic expression has been evaluated.

EXAMPLE:



NOTE:
Numbers in circles indicate sequence of execution.

An *operand* is any numeric value, specified by a number, variable, or function. Operators (+, -, *, /, ↑) indicate how the operands are to be processed in expressions. *Operands* are stored in the *Value Stack* (VS) of Data Memory; *operators* are stored in the Operation Stack (OS) of Data Memory (refer to Figure 4-14).

Expression evaluation is performed by certain microcode routines. When an expression is evaluated, the operand is stored in the Value Stack (VS); as each operator (+, -, *, /, ↑) is encountered, it is compared with the last operator already entered into the Operator Stack. If the *last* operator in OS is of higher execution priority than the *current* operator, the last OS operator is removed, and the indicated operation is performed on the last two VS entries. The result replaces the last two VS entries.

Operator Stack execution continues until an operator with a *lower* execution priority than the *current operator* is found. The current operation is carried out, and the evaluation scan of the expression for execution of lower priority operators is continued until the overall expression is evaluated. An example of this operation is shown in Figure 4-18.

Note that operands with leading minus signs cause the following:

a) Store zero (0) in VS, following operand (step 1 below).

b) Store "negative" operator (-) in OS (step 2 below).

c) Store scalar operand value in VS (step 3 below).

d) Perform a higher-priority operation (should one be present) on the two operands in VS preceeding the zero stored (steps 4-6 below).

e) Replace operands (used in step d) with *results* of step (d).

f) Perform next OS operation (-) on last two operand values in VS (step 7 below).

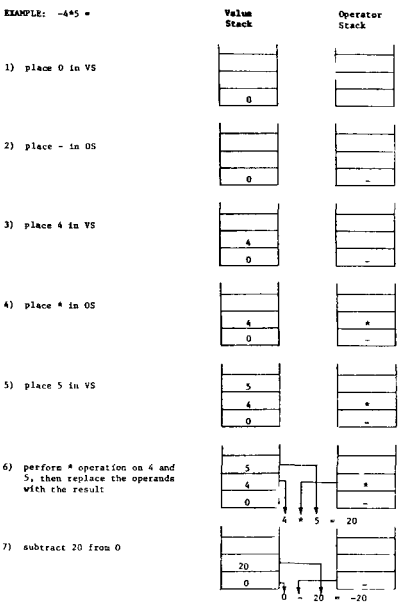


FIGURE 4-18 EXPRESSION EVALUATION OF AN OPERAND WITH A LEADING MINUS SIGN

4.3.1.7 Looping (FOR/NEXT)

A BASIC program loop is initiated by a FOR statement and terminated by a NEXT statement. When the FOR statement is encountered, the following steps occur:

1) The scalar variable (index variable) is set equal to the initial value of the expression.

```
EX:  10 FOR Y = 1 TO 10
     20 X = Y
```

2) The symbol table address of the index variable is placed in the value stack:

   Symbol table address of Y to VS.

3) The address of the statement following the FOR statement is placed into the VS:

   Address of line #20 to VS.

4) The values of the limit and step expressions are placed into the VS:

   LIMIT = 10 STEP = 1, unless otherwise specified by a STEP statement.

5) A 'FOR' atom is placed into the OS:

   FOR atom to OS

The 20 bytes of information in the VS are known as 'FOR group'. The FOR group is not touched until the companion NEXT statement is executed (or the FOR group is *flushed*; see SUBROUTINES (GOSUB/RETURN)).

When the NEXT statement is encountered, the system scans the VS (which now only contains FOR groups and GOSUB return addresses) to find the FOR group to which the current NEXT applies. When the correct FOR group is found, the index variable is retrieved and its value is incremented by the step value. If the new index value is greater than or equal to the limit value, the current FOR group is removed from the VS and processing procedes in line number order. If the index value is less than the limit, processing continues at the address stored in the FOR group.

Scanning for the FOR group in the VS proceeds only until the stack is empty, or a subroutine return address is found at which time an error message is output. Hence, a GOSUB or GOTO statement after a FOR statement and before a NEXT statement is illegal if there is no companion RETURN statement before the NEXT statement.

4.3.1.8 Subroutines (GOSUB/RETURN)

A subroutine call is made when a GOSUB statement is executed, and a return from the subroutine is made when a RETURN statement is executed. When a GOSUB statement is encountered, the following steps are taken:

1) The address of the statement immediately following the GOSUB statement is put into the VS.
2) A subroutine atom is placed into the OS.

When a RETURN statement is encountered, the value stack is scanned for a subroutine return address. Any incompleted FOR groups encountered are flushed (removed) from the VS. If there are no subroutine return addresses in the VS, an error message is issued. When a return address is found, processing proceeds at the specified statement.

4.3.1.9 Device Selection

Each 2200 device has a two-digit Hex address by which the device may be *referenced* or *selected*. A one hex-digit *device type* is also associated with each device. The device type, device address, and carriage length where applicable are stored in a Device Table (Data Memory area) which has entries for the I/O devices.

The SELECT verb is used to select devices for I/O operations. Whenever MASTER INITIALIZATION occurs, the primary 2200 console devices are automatically selected for all I/O operations. The primary console device information is stored in the 8-bit ROM. Primary console device addresses (default addresses) are as follows:

	Device Type	Device Address	Carriage Length
Primary Console *Input* Device : Keyboard	0	01	-
Primary Console *Output* Device : CRT	0	05	64
Primary *Tape* Device : Primary Cassette	1	0A	-
Primary *Disk* Device ; Primary Disk	3	10	-
Primary *Plot* Device : Primary Plotter	4	13	-

DEVICE TYPES:

0 = parallel ASCII with CR/LF
1 = serial 2200 cassette
2 = parallel ASCII with CR but no LF
3 = disk
4 = parallel ASCII with no carriage return generated at end of line

Program and command entry is always input from the console input device. The console devices may be changed from the primary devices by using the console selection overrides: CI (console input), CO (console output), TAPE (tape), DISK (disk), PLOT (plotter) selection parameters. The optional 'length' field specifies the carriage length of the selected device. Whenever a CLEAR command (with no parameters) is executed, the current console devices are selected for all I/O operations.

The program selection overrides are used to control I/O during the execution of a user program. The PRINT select parameter specifies the output device to be used during program execution; the INPUT select parameter selects the input device. ERROR, END PROGRAM, and STOP messages are always written on the console output device.

The command selection override SELECT LIST is used to specify the device to be listed on.

The console, program, and command selection overrides are maintained until:

1) They are changed by another SELECT verb.
2) They are reset to the primary console devices by a MASTER INITIALIZATION.
3) They are reset to the console devices by the execution of a CLEAR command (with no parameters).

Immediate Device Specification:

For I/O operations involving the reading or writing of program or data on cassette, disk, etc., the user may specify the device type and device address preceded by a slash (/) in the BASIC I/O statement.

Example: DATASAVE/10B, X, Y, Z

File Numbers:

For I/O operations involving reading or writing of program or data on cassette, disk, etc., six file numbers are defined (#1, #2, #3, #4, #5, #6). #0 is also legal for disk files, and is the default file number assigned to the disk.

These can be assigned device type and addresses just as BASIC I/O verbs are. Therefore, in addition to the normal device selection I/O operations can be done via file numbers.

Example: SELECT #3, 10B
DATASAVE #3, X, Y, Z

CLEAR and MASTER INITIALIZATION will clear all file number assignments. Reference to an unassigned file number will cause an error output.

The following BASIC statements can use file numbers and immediate device specification: LOAD, SAVE, DATALOAD, DATASAVE, REWIND, BACKSPACE, DATARESAVE, DISK statements, and $GIO, $IF ON.

4.3.1.10 Output Device Switching

When switching from one output device to another, the problem exists of keeping track of the count of characters in a line for the various devices, since only one line character count is maintained within the CPU. To handle this problem, a PRINT Line Character Count and PRINT Flag exist.

At the beginning of the PRINT and PRINTUSING routines the PRINT line count is restored (i.e., the *current line character count* is set equal to Print Line Character Count unless the 'cannot restore PRINT line character count' bit is set in the PRINT Flag); at the end of PRINT and PRINTUSING, the current line count is saved by the Print Line Character Count. If the PRINT line count cannot be restored, the current line character count is set to zero. The 'cannot restore the PRINT line character count' bit is set whenever:

1) LISTing is being done and the LIST device is the same device as the PRINT device.
2) A new PRINT device is selected (by a SELECT PRINT statement).
3) Output is being done which is not the result of the PRINT or PRINT USING verbs (console output) and the console output device address equals the PRINT device address.

The PRINT line count is not saved or restored when a PRINT statement is executed in the immediate execution mode since the resultant output goes to the Console Output device, not the PRINT device.

4.4 DETAILED THEORY OF CPU OPERATION (CENTRAL PROCESSOR & POWER SUPPLY)

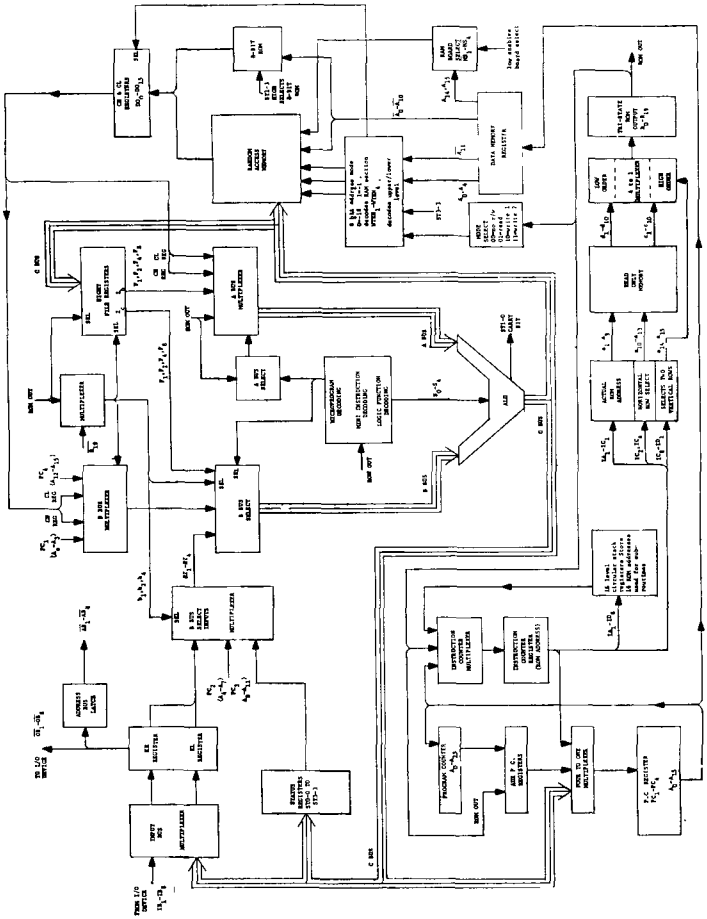
4.4.1 *CPU HARDWARE*

To show how the microinstructions are decoded and used by the CPU, a series of instructions in the Master Initialization Microroutine are described in this section. Each instruction is clocked through the CPU hardware by machine cycle, the machine cycle beginning at $\overline{\text{MERO}}$ and ending at DIN. All events that occur at the different clock times during the machine cycle are described. Due to the complexity of the Master Initialization Microroutine, only a small portion is described here.

Machine cycles described are as follows:

Machine Cycle #	Instruction
1	Start Master Initialization
2	Set IC Register to Trap Address
3	Branch to Disable Subroutine (SB)
4	Initialize Status Register 1 (ORI)
5	Clear Status Register 2 (ORI)
6	Initialize Status Register 3 (ORI)
7	Branch to Delay Subroutine (SB)
8	Delay
20	Return to Disable Subroutine (SR)
21	Increment IC Register (NOOP)
22	Set KH Register = 0 (ORI)
23	Set KL Register = 0 (ORI)
24	Disable All Devices (CIO)
25	Return to Master Initialization Program (SR)
26	Increment IC Register (NOOP)
27	Set Status Register 4 = 0 (ORI)
28	Branch to Zero F1-4 Subroutine (SB)
29	PC Register 4 = 0 (ORI)
30	PC Register 3 = 0 (ORI)
33	Return to Master Initialization Program (SR)
34	Increment IC Register (NOOP)
35	Clear Auxiliary Registers (TP)
36	PC Register 1 = 2 and Disable Timing (ORI)
37	Refresh Memory
38	Write 0 into Math Scratch Area of Memory (AI)
92	Transfer Memory Size to PC Register 4 (TMP)
93	Write PCA into File Register 4 (ORI)
94	Write F into File Register 3 (ORI)
95	Write F into File Register 2 (ORI)
96 thru 100	Routine Instructions
102	Write F4 into Memory (A)
103	Exchange PC and AX, Inc by 2, Write F3 into Memory (XP+2)
104	Exchange PC Register and Auxiliary Register (XP)
105 thru 107	Routine Instructions
108	Branch to MOVEFP (SB)
109	Routine Instruction (ORI)
110 thru 113	Routine Instructions
116	Write 0 into Symbol Table (AI)
117	Write 0 into Symbol Table (AI)
118	Binary Add F in File Register 1 (AI)
119	Exchange PC Reg and Aux Reg +2 (XP+2)
120	Exchange PC Reg and Aux Reg (XP)
121	Branch If Not Equal to Mask (BNE)
122	Write 0 into Symbol Table (AI)
123	Write 0 into Symbol Table (AI)
124	Binary Add F in File Register 1 (AI)
125	Exchange PC Reg and Aux Reg +2 (XP+2)
126	Exchange PC Reg and Aux Reg (XP
127	Branch If Not Equal (BNE)
139	Branch If Not Equal (BNE)
140	Subroutine Return (SR)

FIGURE 4-19 DETAILED 2200 CPU BLOCK DIAGRAM



Machine Cycle 1. (Start Master Initialization)

1. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

   6311:

   WOLF TRAP is active when the power is applied. At $\overline{\text{MER}}$ time, $\overline{\text{RTT}}$ and $\overline{\text{TRAP}}$ are clocked low.

   6310:

   All the outputs of L41 are high. L46 pin 12 is clocked low, enabling L32 pin 12.

   6309:

   $\overline{\text{RTT}}$ clears the IC Register (L13, L23, L34 and L45) and sets the ROM Address (ID_1 - ID_8, IC_1 - IC_8, IB_1 - IB_8 and IA_1 - IA_8) to address Hex 0000.

2. Ø2

   6325:

   The ROM address bits IA_1 - IA_8, IB_1 - IB_8 and IC_1 are applied to TTL to MOS drivers L9, L18, L19, L28 and L29. IC_2 and IC_4 decode a '0' at L52 pin 4, selecting the a10 address for ROM columns 4 and 8 (a10 enables ROMs L34 thru L37 and L30 thru L33). At $\overline{\text{Ø2}}$ time L38 is clocked and the ROM Address Read is applied to pin 8 of all ROMs. ID_1 and IC_8 low set L53 pins 8 and 11 high, which select the C3 inputs to the ROM Multiplexer L41 thru L51. The C3 inputs are from Row 4, therefore ROMs L34 and L30 are selected for output of the ROM instruction. The ROM instruction contained at the selected address is Hex B0418 and is applied to the ROM Output Latch L55, L56, L58, L60 and L62.
   ID_2 and ID_4 are low and decoded by L52 pin 12. L38 pin 9 (X) will be connected to L52 pin 12 for the first ROM board.

3. DIN

6325:

At DIN time, L38 pin 11 is clocked low, enabling the ROM Output Latch, and the ROM Instruction is clocked into the Latch.

Machine Cycle 2. (Set IC Register to Trap Address)

6310:

The ROM Instruction clocked from the ROM has an Op Code B (1011), indicating an unconditional branch. $\overline{R_{19}}$ is low, and L32 pin 11 enables L34 pin 12 (L32 pin 12 was set low at $\overline{MER}$ above). R_{18} is low and R_{17}, R_{16} are high. L34 decodes a '3' at pin 4, generated $\overline{LB}$. $\overline{LB}$ sets $\overline{BRH}$ and $\overline{BRL}$ low.

1. $\overline{MER}$

6311:

L6 pin 4 returned high prior to $\overline{MER}$. $\overline{MER}$ clocks $\overline{RTT}$ inactive.

6309:

$\overline{TRAP}$ selects the C3 inputs to the IC Register Source Selector L11, L12, L21, L22, L32, L33, L43 and L44.

$\overline{BRH}$ and $\overline{BRL}$ were decoded previously, enabling the load input to the IC Register. $\overline{MER}$ loads the IC Register with the hardwired Trap address (Hex 0001).

2. DIN

6325:

The ROMs are selected as described in Cycle 1 from address Hex 0001 and the ROM Instruction is clocked into the ROM Output Latch at DIN time. The ROM Instruction contained at the selected address is Hex A163B. (1010 0001 0110 0011 1011).

Machine Cycle 3 (Branch to Disable Subroutine)

6310:

The ROM Instruction has an Op Code A (1010), indicating a Subroutine Branch. $\overline{R_{19}}$ is low and L34 remains enabled. L34 now decodes a '2' at pin 3, generating $\overline{SB}$. $\overline{SB}$ keeps $\overline{BRH}$ and $\overline{BRL}$ active. The ROM bits R_0 - R_{15} are applied to the input of the IC Register Selector.

1. $\overline{MERO}$

6309:

The IC Register still contains the previous ROM address, Hex 0001. The address bits are inverted by L14, L34, L35 and L46 and applied to the input of the Subroutine Stack Register (SSR) L10, L20, L31 and L42. At $\overline{MERO}$ time, L3 pin 6 goes low, writing the IC Register $\overline{ID_8}$ thru $\overline{IA_1}$ into the SSR. When $\overline{MERO}$ returns high, the SSR Address Counter L4 is decremented. Note that first the IC Register is written into the SSR at the present SSR Counter Address and then the SSR Counter is decremented.

2. $\overline{MER}$

6311:

WOLF TRAP is now inactive and $\overline{MER}$ clocks $\overline{TRAP}$ high.

6309:

With $\overline{TRAP}$ high, L2 pins 8 and 11 go low, selecting the C0 inputs to the IC Register Selector. The C0 inputs are the ROM bits R_{15} - R_0 applied earlier. As $\overline{BRH}$ and $\overline{BRL}$ are still active, the ROM Instruction bits R_{15} - R_0 are loaded into the IC Register by $\overline{MER}$ for the new ROM Address. Note that the ROM Address bits IA_8 - IA_1 are from ROM bits R_3 - R_0, IB_8 - IB_1 from R_{11} - R_8, IC_8 - IC_1 from

R_7 - R_4, and ID_8 - ID_1 from R_{15} - R_{12}. Therefore the ROM Address IA_8 - ID_1 (Hex 136B) is not the same as the ROM address bits R_{15} - R_0 from the ROM Instruction (Hex 163B).

3. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction contained at address Hex 136B is clocked into the ROM Output Latch at DIN time. The ROM Instruction is Hex 43C2A. (0100 0011 1100 0010 1010.)

Machine Cycle 4. (Initialize Status Register 1)

6310:

The ROM Instruction has an Op Code 01000 indicating an OR Immediate. $\overline{R_{19}}$ high disables L34 outputs. With L34 outputs high and $\overline{\overline{R_{19}}}$ high, $\overline{CG}$ is set low. R_{19} and R_{17} are low, enabling L33 pin 2 (1G) and pins 14 and 15 (2G, 2C). R_{15} and R_{16} are low, setting the Y0 outputs low. 2Y0 low sets S3, S2 and S1 of the ALU high and $\overline{R_{17}}$ high sets the M bit of the ALU high indicating an F = A+B logic operation (+indicates a logical OR operation, not an arithmetic addition).

The 'B' Bus is selected as follows:

At L40, $\overline{R_{19}}$ is high, selecting the B inputs. R_{13} - R_{10} are high, setting the Y outputs of L40 high. B Bus Selector #1, L35 thru L38, selects the D_3 inputs, which are wired low, and presents them to 'B' Bus Selector #2, L29/L39. L40 pins 9 and 12 select the C3 inputs and the Y outputs are applied to B Bus Selector #3, L17. L33 pin 12 is high, selecting the B inputs of L17. The B Bus is then applied as data to the ALU A_3 - A_0 inputs as 0000. This method of selecting the B Bus from hardwired 0000 data is known as a 'dummy register'. The dummy register is always selected when the B Field of the ROM Instruction is 1111.

The A Bus is selected in a similar manner as follows:

$\overline{R_{18}}$ is low and selects the CO inputs to the A Bus Selector L2/L3 via L4 pins 3 and 11. R7 is low and enables L2/L3 pins 1 and 15. The CO inputs are ROM bits R_7 - R_4, the immediate operand. R_7 - R_4 is applied to the ALU B_3 - B_0 inputs as 0010.

The ALU performs the OR operation and outputs F_3 - F_0 as 0010. This is applied to the A inputs of C Bus Selector L8. L44 pin 13 is low, selecting the A inputs for C Bus data. L19 inverts the selected data and outputs the C Bus $\overline{D8}$ thru $\overline{D1}$ as 1101.

1. MER

6311:

C Bus Data $\overline{D8}$ thru $\overline{D1}$ is 1101 and is appled to inverter L17. D1, D2 and D8 are low while D4 is high which sets L20 pin 4 high. $\overline{CG}$ enables L21 pin 1. R3 and R2 are 1 0 and L21 pin 6 decodes a '2'. R_0, R_1 and R_{14} are 0 1 0, and at $\overline{MER}$ time, L22 pin 7 decodes a '6', generating $\overline{ST1_t}$. $\overline{ST1_t}$ clocks L20 pin 1 and ST1- 2 is set high, inhibiting all input devices. ST1-1 and ST1-3 are set low.

6310:

$\overline{ST1_t}$ clocks L46 pin 8 high to set ST1-0 low.

6309:

The ROM Address (ID_8 thru IA_1) that had been loaded into the IC Register at $\overline{MER}$ time of machine cycle 3 is now incremented. Note that although $\overline{MER}$ is applied to all counters in the IC Register, only L45 will be incremented by $\overline{MER}$ until the carry output, pin 15, goes high to enable the following counter.

The IC Register now contains ROM Address Hex 136C as seen on the ID, IC, IB and IA Bus.

2. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 136C is clocked into the ROM Output Latch at DIN time. The ROM Instruction is Hex 43C0B. (0100 0011 1100 0000 1011).

Machine Cycle 5. (Clear Status Register 2)

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code again specifies an OR Immediate. All operations are the same as described in machine cycle 4 except the A Bus data is now 0000 and the resultant C Bus data $\overline{D8}$ thru $\overline{D1}$ is 1 1 1 1.

6311:

The C Bus data $\overline{D8}$ thru $\overline{D1}$ is applied to inverter L17 and is seen as 0000 by the Status Registers.

$\overline{CG}$ is low and enables L21 pin 1. R_3 and R_2 are 1 0 and L21 decodes a '2' at pin 6. R_1, R_0 and R_{14} are 1 1 0. At $\overline{MER}$ time, L22 decodes '7' at pin 9 generating $\overline{ST2}_t$. $\overline{ST2}_t$ clocks Status Register 2 (L16) clearing all four bits of SR2 to 0 0 0 0.

6309:

$\overline{MER}$ increments the IC Register to Hex 136D in the same manner as described in machine cycle 4.

2. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 136D is clocked into the ROM Output Latch at DIN time. The ROM Instruction is Hex 47C88 (0100 0111 1011 1000 1000).

Machine Cycle 6. (Initialize Status Register 3)

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code again specifies an OR Immediate. All operations are the same as described in machine cycle 4 except the A Bus data is now 1 0 0 0 and the resultant C Bus data $\overline{D8}$ thru $\overline{D1}$ is 0 1 1 1.

1. $\overline{MER}$

6311:

The C Bus data $\overline{D8}$ thru $\overline{D1}$ is applied to inverter L17 and is seen as 1 0 0 0 by the Status Registers.

$\overline{CG}$ is low and enables L21 pin 1. R_3 and R_2 are 1 0 and L21 decodes a '2' at pin 6. R_1, R_0 and R_{14} are 0 0 1. At $\overline{MER}$ time, L22 decodes a '0' at pin 1 generating $\overline{ST3}_t$. $\overline{ST3}_t$ clocks Status Register 3 (L19 pin 1 and L18 pins 1 and 6). L18 pin 4 (D8) is high at this time and ST3-3 is set high. ST3-3 indicates the addressing mode for reading/writing data into RAM. When ST3-3 is high, the Horizontal Mode is selected. When it is low, the Vertical Mode is used. The Horizontal Mode addresses the RAM Sequentially ($\pm$ 1) while the Vertical Mode addresses the RAM by page ($\pm$ 16).

6309:

$\overline{MER}$ increments the IC Register to Hex 136E in the same manner as described in machine cycle 4.

2. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 136E is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex A1733 (1010 0001 0111 0011 0011).

Machine Cycle 7. (Branch to Delay Subroutine)

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code is A(1010) indicating a Subroutine Branch to the address specified by $R_{15} - R_0$.

L46 pin 12 is still low at this time. $\overline{R19}$ is low, enabling L34. R_{16}, R_{17} and R_{18} are 0 1 0. L34 decodes a '2' at pin 3 and $\overline{SB}$ is active. $\overline{SB}$ enables $\overline{BRH}$ and $\overline{BRL}$.

1. $\overline{MERO}$

   6309:

   $\overline{SB}$ enables L3 pin 4. At $\overline{MERO}$ time, L3 pin 6 goes low, writing the IC Register into the SSR. Since the IC Register still contains the address of the last ROM instruction (NOT $R_{15} - R_0$ of the present ROM Instruction), this address is written into the SSR. When L3 pin 6 returns high, the SSR Address Counter is decremented.

2. $\overline{MER}$

   6309:

   With $\overline{BRH}$ and $\overline{BRL}$ active, $\overline{MER}$ clocks the IC Register to load the ROM bits $R_{15} - R_0$. The IC Register now contains the address of the subroutine branch, Hex 1373.

3. DIN

   6325:

   The ROM Instruction at Address Hex 1373 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM instruction is Hex A1734 (1010 0001 0111 0011 0100).

Machine Cycle 8. (Delay)

The Delay Subroutine generates a 10 usec delay by performing many AND Immediate ROM Instructions with a dummy B field. The 10 usec delay

is obtained by doing the 5 usec delay subroutine twice. This is done in machine cycles 8 thru 19. The twentieth machine cycle is a Subroutine Return to the Disable Subroutine at Address 136F. Machine cycles 8 thru 19 are omitted.

Machine Cycle 20. (Return to Disable Subroutine)

6325:

At DIN of machine cycle 19, the ROM instruction at address Hex 1379 was clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction at that address is Hex 58400 (0101 1000 0100 0000 0000). Op Code 1 (01011) indicates a Mini Instruction and Op Code 2 (00001) a Subroutine Return.

6310:

R_{17} and R_{19} low enable L33. R_{15} and R_{16} high select the Y3 outputs. R_{18} high sets the 1Y3 and 2Y3 outputs low. 1Y3 enables L1 pin 15 to decode a Mini Instruction. R_{13} and $\overline{R_{14}}$ are 01 and L1 decodes a '2', enabling L41. R_{10}, R_{11} and R_{12} are 1 0 0. L41 decodes a '1' at pin 2, setting $\overline{SR}$ active. $\overline{SR}$ set $\overline{BRH}$ and $\overline{BRL}$ active.

1. $\overline{MERO}$

6309:

With $\overline{SR}$ active, L2 pin 11 is high selecting the C2 inputs to the IC Register Selector. The C2 inputs are from the Subroutine Stack Register. Since the address of the last Subroutine Branch was written into the SSR and then the SSR Address Counter was decremented, the SSR Counter must now be incremented to that SSR address. To accomplish this, $\overline{SR}$ also enables L3 pin 1. At the end of $\overline{MERO}$, L4 is incremented. The IC Register Source Selector now sees the address of the Subroutine Branch.

2. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

6309:

$\overline{\text{BRH}}$ and $\overline{\text{BRL}}$ are active, enabling a load into the IC Register. At $\overline{\text{MER}}$, the IC Register is loaded with the address of the ROM Instruction that specified the Subroutine Branch. The address is Hex 136E.

6310:

$\overline{\text{SR}}$ sets L46 pin 14 high. At $\overline{\text{MER}}$, pin 12 goes high disabling L34.

3. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 136E is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM instruction is Hex A1733. (1010 0001 0111 0011 0011).

Machine Cycle 21. (Increment IC Register)

6310:

The ROM Instruction clocked from the ROM in cycle 20 has an OP Code A, indicating a Subroutine Branch. However, L34, which decodes branch instructions, was disabled by $\overline{\text{SR}}$ during the last cycle. Therefore, L34 will not decode the Subroutine Branch. Also, R_{19} high disables L33. By disabling both L33 and L34, no CPU instruction will be performed.

1. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

6309:

$\overline{\text{MER}}$ increments the IC Register by one count. The IC Register now contains the ROM Address of the instruction immediately following the Subroutine Branch.

6310:

L46 pin 14 returned high when the new ROM Instruction was clocked during cycle 20. $\overline{MER}$ clocks L46 pin 12 low, enabling L32 pin 12. Note that although L34 now decodes an $\overline{SB}$, no IC Register or Subroutine Stack Register operations are performed because the clocks necessary for these operations have passed. This entire machine cycle only increments the IC Register to the last Subroutine Branch Instruction Address +1.

2. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 136F is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 43C08 (0100 0011 1100 0000 1000).

Machine Cycle 22. (Set KH Register = 0).

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code specifies an OR Immediate All operations are the same as described in machine cycle 4 except the 'A' Bus data is now 0 0 0 0 ad the resultant 'C' Bus data $\overline{D8}$ - $\overline{D1}$ is 1 1 1 1.

1. $\overline{MER}$

6311:

The 'C' Bus data $\overline{D8}$ - $\overline{D1}$ is applied to the I/O Buffer Selector L32. $\overline{CG}$ is low and enables L21 pin 1. R_3 and R_2 are 1 0 and L21 decodes '2' at pin 6. R_1, R_0 and R_{14} are 0 0 0. At $\overline{MER}$, L22 decodes a '4' at pin 5 generating $\overline{KH}_t$. $\overline{KH}_t$ clocks the KH Register, clearing all four bits to 1111.

6309:

$\overline{MER}$ increments the IC Register to Hex 1370 in a similar manner as described in machine cycle 4. In this case however, the Carry

Output from L45 pin 15 was high because a count of 15(Hex F) was stored in the counter. CO enables L34 pin 7 for count. At $\overline{MER}$, L45 is incremented to 0 and L34 is incremented to 7. CO returns low.

2. DIN

   6325:

   The ROM Instruction at address Hex 1370 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 43C09 (0100 0011 1100 0000 1001).

Machine Cycle 23. (Set KL Register = 0).

1. $\overline{MER}$

   This operation is exactly the same as the KH = 0 done in machine cycle 22, except at this instruction, the KL Register is cleared.

2. DIN

   6325:

   The ROM Instruction at address Hex 1371 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 580C0 (0101 1000 0000 1100 0000).

Machine Cycle 24. (Disable all devices)

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code 1 is 01011 indicating a Mini Instruction. Op Code 2 is 00000, indicating Control I/O (CIO).

R_{19} and R_{17} are low, enabling L33. R_{16} and R_{15} are 1 1, selecting the Y3 outputs. 1Y3 enables L1 pin 15 for the Mini Instruction. R_{13} and R_{14} are 0 1 and L1 decodes a '2' to enable L41 pin 12. R_{10}, R_{11} and R_{12} are 0 0 0. L41 decodes a '0' generating $\overline{CIO}$.

1. $\overline{\text{MERO}}$

   6311:

   $\overline{\text{CIO}}$ active enables L36 pin 1. R_4, R_5, R_6 and R_7 are 0, 0, 1, 1, enabling L36 pin 5 and L24 pin 6. The KH and KL Registers were cleared in the last two machine cycles, setting $\overline{OB}_8$ thru $\overline{OB}_1$ high. At $\overline{\text{MERO}}$, the Address Bus Latch, L15/L25, and L10 pin 10 are clocked. The Address Bus $\overline{AB}_8$ thru $\overline{AB}_1$ are now high. When MMV L10 pin 12 times out, MMV L11 pin 2 will be triggered, generating $\overline{\text{ABS}}$, strobing a device address of 'X00'.

2. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

   6309:

   The IC Register is incremented to ROM address Hex 1372 as described in machine cycle 4.

3. DIN

   6325:

   The ROM Instruction at address Hex 1372 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 58400 (0101 1000 0100 0000 0000).

Machine Cycle 25 (Return to Master Initialization Program)

1. $\overline{\text{MERO}}$

   6310:

   The ROM Instruction Op Code 1 indicates a Mini Instruction. Op Code 2 indicates a Subroutine Return.

   The Subroutine Return is decoded in the same manner as described in machine cycle 20.

2. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

6309:

The IC Register is loaded with the ROM address in the same manner as described in machine cycle 20.

3. DIN

6325:

The IC Register contains the ROM Address Hex 0001. The ROM Instruction is clocked into the ROM Output Latch at DIN.

Machine Cycle 26 (Increment IC Register)

1. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

6309:

No operation can be performed on the ROM Instruction because the ROM Instruction Decoders were disabled in the previous cycle. At $\overline{\text{MER}}$, the IC Register is incremented by one to the ROM address Hex 0002.

2. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at Hex 0002 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 47C09 (0100 0111 1100 0000 1001).

Machine Cycle 27. (Set Status Register 4 = 0)

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code specifies an OR Immediate. All operations are the same as described in $\overline{\text{DIN}}$ of machine cycle 4 except the 'A' Bus data is now 0 0 0 0 and the resultant 'C' Bus data $\overline{\text{D8}}$ - $\overline{\text{D1}}$ is 1 1 1 1.

1. $\overline{MER}$

6311:

The 'C' Bus data $\overline{D8}$ - $\overline{D1}$ is applied to inverter L17 and is seen as 0 0 0 0 by Status Register 4, L14. $\overline{CG}$ is active and enables L21 pin 1. R_3 and R_2 are 1 0 and L21 decodes a '2' at pin 6. R_1, R_0 and R_{14} are 0 1 1. At $\overline{MER}$, L22 decodes a '1' at pin 2 generating $\overline{ST4}_t$, which clocks Status Register 4 to zero.

6309:

$\overline{MER}$ increments the IC Register to Hex 0003 in a similar manner as described in machine cycle 4.

2. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 0003 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex A1E15 (1010 0001 1110 0001 0101).

Machine Cycle 28. (Branch to Zero P1-4 Subroutine).

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code indicates a Subroutine Branch to the address specified by R_{15} - R_0. $\overline{SB}$, $\overline{BRH}$ and $\overline{BRL}$ are set active as described in machine cycle 6.

1. $\overline{MERO}$

6309:

The IC Register is written into the Subroutine Stack as described in machine cycle 3.

2. $\overline{MER}$

6309:

ROM bits R_{15} - R_0 are loaded into the IC Register. The IC Register now contains the branch address, Hex 11E5.

3. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 11E5 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 47C0C (0100 0111 1100 0000 1100).

Machine Cycle 29. (PC Register 4=0)

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code specifies an OR Immediate. All operations are the same as described in machine cycle 4 except the 'A' Bus data is now 0 0 0 0 and the resultant 'C' Bus data $\overline{D8}$ - $\overline{D1}$ is 1 1 1 1.

1. $\overline{MER}$

6311:

$\overline{CG}$ is active and enables L21 to decode a '3' at pin 7 from R_3 and R_2. R_0 and R_1 are 0 0 causing L8 pin 11 to be low. With L21 pin 7 low, L7 pins 1 and 4 are enabled. R_{14} is 1, however, enabling only L7 pin 12. At $\overline{MER}$, L30 pin 13 goes low via L2 pin 6, generating $\overline{AT}_4$.

6309:

The 'C' Bus data $\overline{D8}$ - $\overline{D1}$ is applied to the PC Register Source Selector L7, L8, L17, L18, L27, L28, L38 and L39 as 1 1 1 1. $\overline{CG}$ low sets L2 pins 3 and 6 high, selecting the C3 inputs to the PC Register Source Selector. The C3 inputs are from the 'C' Bus and are applied to the PC Register L9, L19, L29 and L40. When $\overline{AT}_4$ is generated, L9 is clocked and PC Register 4 (L9) bits A_{15} - A_{12} are cleared. $\overline{MER}$ also increments the IC Register to Hex 11E6 in a similar manner as described in machine cycle 4.

2. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 11E5 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 47C0B (0100 0111 1100 0000 1011).

Machine Cycle 30. (PC Register 3=0)

Machine cycles 30, 31 and 32 clear the remaining PC registers in the same manner PC Register 4 was cleared in machine cycle 29. Machine cycle 30 (PC Register 3=0) clears PC Register 3 (L19) bits A_{11} - A_8 with $\overline{AT}_3$ generated by L22 decoding a '3'. Machine cycle 31 (PC Register 2=0) clears PC Register 2 (L29) bits A_7 - A_4 with $\overline{AT}_2$ generated by L22 decoding a '2'. Machine cycle 32 (PC Register 1=0) clears PC Register 1 (L40) with $\overline{AT}_1$ generated by L7 pin 8. At $\overline{UDC}$, L41 is loaded with the output of L40 and PC Register 1 bits A_3 - A_0 are cleared.

Machine Cycle 33 (Return to Master Initialization Program)

A Subroutine Return is decoded in the same manner as described in machine cycle 20 and the IC Register is loaded with the address of the Subroutine Branch. The ROM Instruction Decoders are also disabled at this time.

Machine Cycle 34 (Increment IC Register)

1. $\overline{MERO}$

6310:

L46 pin 12 is clocked low to enable L32 pin 12.

2. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

6309:

The IC Register is incremented to Hex 0004 as described in machine cycle 21.

3. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 0004 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 58800 (0101 1000 1000 0000 0000).

Machine Cycle 35. (Clear Auxiliary Registers)

The ROM Instruction Op Code 1 indicates a Mini Instruction. Op Code 2 indicates a Transfer PC Register to Auxiliary Register (TP). Recall that the PC Register was cleared in machine cycles 29 through 32. The Auxiliary Register will now be cleared by transferring the cleared PC Register into the Aux. Register.

6310:

$\overline{R_{19}}$ high disables L34. R_{19} and R_{17} low enable L33. R_{15}, R_{16} and R_{18} high set the Y3 outputs active. 1Y3 enables L1 pin 15 to decode a Mini Instruction. R_{13} and $\overline{R_{14}}$ are 0 1. L1 decodes a '2' at pin 10 enabling L41. R_{10}, R_{11} and R_{12} are 0 1 0. L41 decodes a '2' at pin 3 enabling $\overline{WW}$ to be generated.

1. $\overline{\text{MERO}}$

6309:

The Program Counter, L5, L15, L25 and L36, is loaded with the PC Register bits A_{15} - A_0.

2. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

6309:

The IC Register is incremented to Hex 0005 as described in machine cycle 4.

3. $\overline{\overline{MXS}}$

6310:

$\overline{\overline{MXS}}$ generates $\overline{WW}$.

6309:

$\overline{WW}$ writes the output of the PC into the Auxiliary Register at the address specified by $\overline{R_3}$ - $\overline{R_0}$ which is 1 1 1 1.

4. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 0005 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 43C2C (0100 0011 1100 0010 1100).

Machine Cycle 36. (PC Register 1 = 2 and Disable Timing)

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code specifies an OR Immediate. All operations are the same as described in machine cycle 3 except the 'A' Bus data is now 0010 and the resultant 'C' Bus data $\overline{D8}$ - $\overline{D1}$ is 1101.

1. MOT

The type of MOS Memory used in the CPU requires that the data be refreshed every 2 msec. To accomplish this, the normal machine cycle is interrupted and a refresh cycle is initiated. A refresh cycle occurs one every 36 machine cycles and refreshes all RAMs at a selected column address. The RAM chip is designed in such a way that only the column address (A_4 - A_0) need be changed to refresh the entire RAM column. As the refresh occurs once every 36 machine cycles (57.6μsec) and there are 32 columns to be addressed, an entire RAM refresh takes 1.85 msec.

6308:

L6, L17, L18 and L1 form a machine cycle counter/decoder. L6 is clocked by MHL once every machine cycle. During machine cycle 35, L1 pin 8 decoded a count of 35, setting L3 pin 4 high and enabling $\overline{RO}_2$ of L6 and L17.

MOT of this cycle clocks L3 pin 15 high and pin 14 low. L3 pin 14 clears L2, setting p. ns 11 and 15 low which sets L44 pin 1 high, disabling DIN.

2. $\overline{MER}$

6309:

$\overline{CG}$ active selects the C3 inputs to the PC Register Source Selector, applying the 'C' Bus, $\overline{D8}$ - $\overline{D1}$, to the inputs of the PC Register.

6311:

$\overline{AT}_1$ is generated at $\overline{MER}$ in the same manner as described in machine cycle 32.

6309:

$\overline{AT}_1$ loads PC Register 1 with 1101. The IC Register is incremented to Hex 0006 as described in machine cycle 4.

3. $\overline{UDC}$ time

6309

PC Register 1 is loaded into latch L41, setting the Data Memory Address A_{15} - A_0 to Hex 0001.

4. MHL

6308:

With L3 pin 15 high, MHL clocks L3 pin 10 low, setting $\overline{REF}$ active. MHL also resets the Machine Cycle Counter L6/L17 and L1 pin 8 returns

high. $\overline{REF}$ selects the A inputs to L25 and L40 for memory addressing. Memory column Address bits $\overline{A_4}$ - $\overline{A_0}$ are now selected from the Refresh Address Counter L26 and L27. $\overline{REF}$ also clears L4, setting pin 10 high. This disables CPU timing signals $\overline{MERO}$, $\overline{MOT}$, $\overline{MER}$, $\overline{MTF}$, $\overline{UDC}$, $\overline{MXS}$, $\overline{DAST}$ and $\overline{MHL}$.

6307:

$\overline{REF}$ sets L37 pin 1 low, enabling L59 pins 1, 4 and 10, and $\overline{REF}$ enables L33, L35 and L36 for memory column addressing. Note that $\overline{MS}$ does not have to be active to address or clock the RAMs.

5. $\overline{MNT}$

6308:

$\overline{MNT}$ clears the Memory Select and Write Enable Latches L24. If a $\overline{WTEN}$ signal had been the last ROM Instruction performed and it was not cleared, refresh for the RAMs controlled by the $\overline{WTEN}$ signal would not occur.

Machine Cycle 37 (Refresh Memory)

1. MOT

6308:

During cycle 36, L1 pin 8 returned high, setting L3 pin 4 low. MOT clocks L3 pin 14 high, removing the clear from L2 pins 3 and 8.

2. $\overline{RESET}$

6307:

The refresh cycle for the RAMs consists of applying three clocks, CLK_1, CLK_2 and CLK_3 to the RAM with the $\overline{Write\ Enable}$ low during CLK_3 time. $\overline{RESET}$ provides CLK_1 via L61 pin 9 and L49 pin 7.

3. MER

6308:

The clear was removed from L2 at MOT. If RUN/STEP and TFF are both inactive, L5 pin 3 is low, enabling L44 and DIN.

4. $\overline{\emptyset 1}$

6307:

$\overline{\emptyset 1}$ provides CLK_2 for refresh via L60 pin 9 and L48 pin 7.

5. $\overline{\emptyset 2}$

6307:

$\overline{\emptyset 2}$ provides the final refresh clock, CLK_3 for the RAMs via L60 pin 6 and L48 pin 5. At this time all Write Enable signals $\overline{WTEN}_1$ - $\overline{WTEN}_4$ are inactive. L54 and L57 pins 2 are enabled and Write Enable for all RAMs is low as required for refresh.

6. MHL

6308:

The inputs to L3 pins 9 and 12 were changed during MOT. MHL clocks L3 pin 10 high, setting $\overline{REF}$ inactive, removing the clear from L4 pin 8 and incrementing the Refresh Address Counter. MHL also clocks the first count into the Machine Cycle Counter.

7. MNT

6308:

MNT clocks L4 pin 10 low, removing the disable from the system timing. MNT also generates DIN via L44 pin 3.

8. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at Hex 0006 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 63F0F (0110 0011 1111 0000 1111).

Machine Cycle 38. (Write 0 into Math Scratch Area of Memory)

The ROM Instruction Op Code indicates a Binary Add Immediate. Further investigation shows M_2, M_1 are 1 1, indicating a Write 2. Therefore, the resultant 'C' Bus data of the Binary Add will be written into memory at the address set up in the PC Register in this machine cycle 36.

6310:

$\overline{R_{17}}$ and R19 are low causing L44 pin 8 to be low. This sets the 'M' bit of the ALU low and the Function Selection for F = A plus B. The 'B' Bus data is selected as dummy as described in machine cycle 4. The 'A' Bus data is also selected as described in machine cycle 4 and is 0000. The binary addition is performed in the ALU with a resultant $F_3 - F_0$ = 0 0 0 0. R_{16} low selects the A inputs of the 'C' Bus Selector L8, presenting 1 1 1 1 to the 'C' Bus $\overline{D8} - \overline{D1}$.

1. $\overline{MERO}$

6308:

During machine cycle 6, ST3-3 was set high for horizontal addressing of the RAM. During machine cycle 4, ST1-3 was set low for RAM selection and during machine cycle 36, $A_{15} - A_0$ were set low, except A_1, which was set high.

With ST3-3 high, L37 selects the B inputs. L23 decodes a '3' at pin 9 from R_9, R_9 and R_{19}. L23 pin 10 is high, selecting the B inputs to L36. The Y outputs of L36 are 1 0 at pin 4 and 7. With L23 pin 9 low and ST1-3 low, L24 pins 16 and 12 are low. At $\overline{MERO}$ L24 pins 14 and 10 are clocked low.

L24 pin 14 enables L23 to decode $\overline{WTEN_2}$ from $\overline{A_0}$ and A_4. L24 pin 10 enables L14 to decode $\overline{MS1}$ from A14 and A15.

6307:

Data from the 'C' Bus is applied to Input Gates L58, L56, L55 and L53. With $\overline{MS}$ active, the Input Gates are enabled and the 'C' Bus

data is applied to the RAMs. $\overline{DI_0}$ is applied to input gate L56 as $\overline{DI_4}$, to L55 as $\overline{DI_8}$ and to L53 as $\overline{DI_{12}}$. In a similar manner, $\overline{DI_1}$, $\overline{DI_2}$ and $\overline{DI_3}$ are applied to the remaining data inputs as $\overline{DI_4}$ thru $\overline{DI_{15}}$.

The Data Memory Address $\overline{A_0}$ thru $\overline{A_{11}}$ is applied to TTL to MOS Drivers L33, L35, L36, L38, L50, L52 and L34. These drivers are enabled by $\overline{MS}$ and a RAM address of Hex 001 is applied to all RAMs.

$\overline{WTEN_2}$ is applied to TTL to MOS Driver L57. With $\overline{REL}$ active, L57 is enabled and RAMs L9, L10, L11 and L12 are write enabled. $\overline{DI_4}$ thru $\overline{DI_7}$ is applied as data to RAMs L12 thru L9.

2. $\overline{MER}$

6311:

The Memory Data Register, L31, is clocked with the 'C' Bus data.

6309:

The IC Register is incremented to Hex 0007 as described in machine cycle 4.

3. $\overline{\emptyset 2}$

6307:

$\overline{\emptyset 2}$, applied to L60, generates CLK_2 from L48 to provide the write clock for the RAMs selected at $\overline{MERO}$ of this cycle.

4. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 0007 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex A0CFA. This instruction indicates a subroutine branch to a routine that initializes the Random Number Generator. An argument of 0 for the Random No. Generator was written into memory during the last cycle. This will be used to initialize the Generator in this subroutine.

The instructions in this subroutine are of the type discussed previously and will be omitted.

Machine Cycle 92. (Transfer Memory Size to PC Register 4)

The next ROM Instruction to be performed was clocked into the ROM Output Latch at DIN of the last cycle. The ROM Instruction is at address Hex 0009 and is Hex 59C00 (0101 1001 1100 0000 0000).

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code 1 specifies a Mini Instruction and Op Code 2 a Transfer RAM Size to PC Register 4.

The Mini Instruction is decoded in the same manner as described in machine cycle 20. C1 decodes a '2' from R_{13} and $\overline{R_{14}}$ and L41 decodes a '7' from R_{10}, R_{11} and R_{12}, setting $\overline{TMP}$ active. $\overline{TMP}$ sets PCG active via L12 and L22.

6309:

With $\overline{TMP}$ active, the PC Register Source Selector selects the C1 inputs. The C1 inputs for PC4 are from the memory size setting, all others (PC1 - PC3) are wired low. Suppose the memory size is set to 4K. L8 pin 5 will be low and L7 pin 5 and 11 and L8 pin 11 will be high. The input to PC4 is seen as 1110.

1. $\overline{MER}$

6311:

R_{14} low enables L30 pins 2 and 13. As L21 is not enabled, L22 pins 3 and 4 will be high, enabling L30 pin 5 and 10. With PCG active, $\overline{MER}$ is gated through L2 pin 3, generating $\overline{AT_1}$ - $\overline{AT_4}$.

6309:

$\overline{AT_1}$ - $\overline{AT_4}$ clocks PC Registers PC1 - PC4. $\overline{MER}$ increments the IC Register to Hex 000A as described in machine cycle 4.

2. $\overline{UDC}$

6309:

L41 is loaded with PC1 data. The PC Register bits $A_{15} - A_0$ are now Hex 1FFF.

3. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at address Hex 000A is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 47003 (0100 0111 0000 0000 0011).

Machine Cycle 93. (Write PC4 into File Register 4)

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code specifies an OR Immediate. All operations are the same as described in machine cycle 4 except the 'B' Bus is selected as follows:

$\overline{R_{19}}$ is high, selecting the B inputs to L40. $R_{13} - R_{10}$ are 1 1 0 0, this being transposed to the Y outputs. 'B' Bus Selector #1 selects the D_4 inputs, which are from PC Register 4 ($A_{12} - A_{15}$), and presents them to 'B' Bus Selector #2. L40 pins 9 and 12 select the C3 inputs, which are applied to the A inputs of the ALU via 'B' Bus Selector #3.

The B inputs to the ALU are selected from the 'A' Bus in the same manner as described in machine cycle 4. The 'A' Bus data is 0000, and the resultant ALU output is 0001. This is applied to the File Register L23 through L26 and inverted by L19 for 'C' Bus data.

1. $\overline{MER}$

   6310:

   With $\overline{CG}$ active and R_3 low, L30 pins 2 and 5 are enabled. $\overline{MER}$ clocks (writes into) the File Register at the address specified by R_0, R_1 and R_2 (011). File Register 4 now contains the RAM size established by PC Register 4.

   6309:

   The IC Register is incremented to Hex 000B as described in machine cycle 4.

2. DIN

   6325:

   The ROM Instruction at address Hex 000B is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 43CF2 (0100 0011 1100 1111 0010).

Machine Cycle 94. (Write F into File Register 3)

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code specifies an OR Immediate. All operations are the same as described in machine cycle 4 with the resultant ALU output 1111.

1. $\overline{MER}$

   6310:

   $\overline{MER}$ writes the data from the ALU (Hex F) into the File Register at address 010 (File Register 3) in the same manner as described in the previous machine cycle.

   6309:

   The IC Register is incremented to Hex 000D as described in machine cycle 4.

Machine Cycle 95. (Write F into File Register 2)

An F is written into File Register 2 in the same manner as described in Cycle 94.

Machine Cycles 96 - 100

The instructions performed in these cycles are routine but their result is of importance.

Cycle 96 writes an 8 into File Register 1, completing the RAM size storage into the File Registers F4 - F1 with Hex 1FF8.

Cycles 97 - 101 set the PC Registers with the Data Memory Address where the data in the File Registers will be written. The address is known as a system pointer. This particular system pointer is called VSVBEG, referring to the beginning of the Value Stack. A reference to the CPU Software Theory of Operation will show the Value Stack beginning is the end of RAM. When data is to be written into the Value Stack or any time the RAM size is required, the pointer being developed at this time will be recalled.

Cycle 97 writes a 4 into PC1 by generating $\overline{AT_1}$. Cycle 98 writes a 5 into PC2, cycle 99 branches to a subroutine to write the File Registers into memory. Cycles 100 and 101 write 0 into PC3 and PC4. This sets the Data Memory Address to Hex 0054.

Machine Cycle 102 (Write F4 into Memory)

The ROM Instruction clocked during the last cycle is Hex 23E3F (0010 0011 1110 0011 1111).

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code specifies a Binary Add. With $\overline{R_{17}}$ and R_{19} 0 0, L32 pin 8 goes low, setting the M bit of the ALU low and decoding an F = A plus B function. The A inputs to the ALU are selected from a dummy 'B' Bus in the same manner as described in machine cycle 4.

The 'A' Bus is selected as follows:

R_7 is low enabling the 'A' Bus selector L2/L3 and setting pin 2 low. $\overline{R_{18}}$ is high, enabling L4 pins 1 and 12. R_6 and R_7 are low, setting L4 pin 3 high, selecting the C1 inputs to the 'A' Bus Selector. The C1 inputs are from the File Register. The File Register B Read address is selected from R_4, R_5 and R_6, which are 110, selecting File Register 4. PC4 was previously written into File Register 4.

The Binary Add is performed in the ALU with the resultant output to the 'C' Bus ($\overline{D8}$ - $\overline{D1}$) 1110.

1. $\overline{MERO}$

6308:

R_8, R_9 and R_{19} are 010, decoding a '2' at L23 pin 10 setting L24 pin 16 low. ST1-3 is low (RAM status) setting L24 pin 12 low. $\overline{MERO}$ clocks both portions of L24 enabling L14 to decode $\overline{MS_1}$ - $\overline{MS_4}$ and L23 to decode $\overline{WTEN_1}$ - $\overline{WTEN_4}$. $\overline{MERO}$ also clocks the Data Memory Address Register L12, L13, L38 and L39 with the PC Register (Hex 0054). With A_0 and A_4 0 0, L23 decodes $\overline{WTEN_1}$. A_{14} and A_{15} are 0 0, and L14 decodes $\overline{MS_1}$.

2. $\overline{MER}$

6311:

The Memory Data Register, L31, is clocked with the 'C' Bus data.

6309:

The IC Register is incremented to Hex 03D2.

3. $\overline{REL}$

The data on the 'C' Bus is written into RAMs L13 - L16 as described in machine cycle 38.

4. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at Hex 03D2 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 5BB21 (0101 1011 1011 0010 0001).

Machine Cycle 103 (Exchange PC and AX, Inc. by 2;Write F3 into Memory)

The ROM Instruction Op Code 1 indicates a Mini Instruction. Op Code 2 indicates an Exchange PC Register and Auxiliary Register and Increment Auxiliary Register by 2.

6310:

The Mini Instruction is decoded by L33 as described in cycle 20. L1 decodes a '3' at pin 9 from R_{13} and $\overline{R_{14}}$, enabling CTA and $\overline{WW}$ to be generated. $\overline{R_{12}}$ is low, setting PCG active via L30 pin 8. With $\overline{R_{17}}$ high, the M bit of the ALU is enabled for a logic operation of F = B. The 'B' Bus is not used and can be disregarded. The 'A' Bus is selected from File Register 3 in a similar manner as described in the previous cycle. An 'F' was written into File Register 3 previously, and the resultant 'C' Bus $\overline{D8}$ - $\overline{D1}$ is 0000.

1. $\overline{\text{MERO}}$

6309:

The Program Counter L5, L15, L25, L36 is loaded with the PC Register bits $A_{15} - A_0$. The PC Register is Hex 0054.

6308:

Write Enable and Memory Select are decoded in a similar manner as described in the previous cycle except L23 decodes a '3' at pin 9, selecting A_0 and $\overline{A_4}$ to decode $\overline{WTEN_2}$. Also, $\overline{\text{MERO}}$ clocks the PC Register into the Data Memory Address Register. The PC Register still contains Hex 0054.

2. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

6311:

With PCB active, $\overline{\text{MER}}$ is gated through L2 pin 3 to generate $\overline{AT_1} - \overline{AT_4}$. The Memory Data Register is clocked with the 'C' Bus data.

6309:

$\overline{\text{TIP}}$, $\overline{\text{CG}}$ and $\overline{\text{TMP}}$ are all inactive, selecting the Auxiliary Register as the input to the PC Register. The Auxiliary Register address is 0001. The data at this address of the Auxiliary Register is clocked into the PC Register by $\overline{AT_1} - \overline{AT_4}$, but this data is unknown. Also, the IC Register is incremented to Hex 0303.

3. $\overline{\text{MTF}}$

6310:

R_{11} is high, enabling L43 pin 1. $\overline{\text{MTF}}$ generates CTA.

6309:

R_{10} is 0 enabling L3 pin 9. CTA increments the Program Counter at L36 pin 5 by a count of two (CTA is composed of two 100 nsec pulses). The Program Counter now contains Hex 0056.

4. $\overline{MXS}$

6309:

L30 pin 13 was enabled earlier in this cycle. $\overline{MXS}$ now generates $\overline{WW}$ and the Program Counter data (Hex 0056) is written into the Auxiliary Registers L6, L16, L26 and L37 at the address specified by $R_3 - R_0$ (0001).

5. $\overline{REL}$

6307:

$\overline{REL}$ enables $\overline{WTEN}_2$ to be applied to the RAMs.

6. Ø2

6307:

The data on the 'C' Bus (from File Register 3) is written into RAMs L9 - L12. It is important to note here that the RAM address is the same as the address used during the previous cycle. In this case, however, $\overline{WTEN}_2$ enables a different group of RAMs for writing. In this manner, an eight bit word is written into eight RAMs at the same address. When this word is read, it can be read as a complete eight bit word. It is also important to note at this time how the eleven bit RAM address is derived from the sixteen bit PC Register. The sixteen PC Register bits are applied to the Data Memory Address Register L13, L12, L38 and L39 on the 6308. A_{14} and A_{15} are used to decode the $\overline{MS}$ signals for the Memory Board select and A_0 and A_4 decode the $\overline{WTEN}$ signals to write enable one of four groups of RAMs and select the data to be read from Memory by the CH and CL Read Buffers. A_{13} is used to select the first half (first 4K) or second half (second 4K) of the Memory Board. The remainder of the PC Register develops the actual RAM address as follows:

PC Register Bit	RAM Address Bit
A_1	$\overline{A_0}$
A_2	$\overline{A_1}$
A_3	$\overline{A_2}$
A_5	$\overline{A_3}$
A_6	$\overline{A_4}$
A_7	$\overline{A_5}$
A_8	$\overline{A_6}$
A_9	$\overline{A_7}$
A_{10}	$\overline{A_8}$
A_{11}	$\overline{A_9}$
A_{12}	$\overline{A_{10}}$
A_{13}	$\overline{A_{11}}$

7. DIN

   6325:

   The ROM Instruction at Hex 03D3 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 59001 (0101 1001 0000 0000 0001).

Machine Cycle 104 (Exchange PC Register and Auxiliary Register)

The ROM Instruction Op Code 1 indicates a Mini Instruction. Op Code 2 indicates an Exchange PC Register and Auxiliary Register.

6310:

The Mini Instruction is decoded by L33 as described in cycle 20. L1 decodes a '2' at pin 10 enabling L41 to decode a '4' at pin 5 from R_{10}, R_{11}, and R_{12}. L41 pin 5 low sets PCG active and enables $\overline{WW}$ to be generated.

1. $\overline{\text{MERO}}$

   6309:

   The Program Counter is loaded with the PC Register data (the data in the PC Register is unknown).

2. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

   6308:

   The unknown PC Register is clocked into the Data Memory Address Register.

   6311:

   With PCG active, $\overline{\text{MER}}$ is gated through L2 pin 3 to generate $\overline{AT_1}$ - $\overline{AT_4}$.

   6309:

   $\overline{\text{TIP}}$, $\overline{\text{CG}}$, and $\overline{\text{TMP}}$ are all inactive, addressing the PC Register Source Selector to select the Auxiliary Register as the input to the PC Register. The address of the Auxiliary Register is 0001, at which the VSVBEG pointer address +2 (Hex 0056) was written in the last cycle. The Auxiliary Register data is now clocked into the PC Register by $\overline{AT_1}$ - $\overline{AT_4}$ (note the output of the Auxiliary Register is the binary compliment of the PC Register and the PC Register inverts the Auxiliary Register). The IC Register is incremented to Hex 03D4.

3. $\overline{\text{UDC}}$

   6309:

   L41 is loaded with PC1. The PC Register bits A_{15} - A_0 are Hex 0056, which results in a RAM address of Hex 053, which will be clocked into the Data Memory Address Register at $\overline{\text{MERO}}$ of the next cycle.

4. $\overline{MXS}$

   6310:

   $\overline{MXS}$ generates $\overline{WW}$.

   6309:

   $\overline{WW}$ writes the Program Counter (unknown) into the Auxiliary Register.

5. DIN

   The ROM Instruction at Hex 03D4 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is 23E1F (0010 0011 1110 0001 1111).

Machine Cycles 105 - 107

Machine cycles 105 and 106 write File Register 2 and File Register 1 respectively into memory in the same manner as previously described. Cycle 107 is a Subroutine Return to Master Initialization Program.

Machine Cycle 108 (Branch to MOVEFP)

Cycle 108 branches to a subroutine that will move the data in the File Registers to the PC Registers. As you will recall, the RAM size is still contained in the File Registers. The PC Register will now be loaded with this data to address the end of RAM.

Machine Cycle 109

The ROM Instruction clocked during the last cycle was 03C0C (0000 0011 1100 0000 1100), at address 0353.

6310:

The ROM Instruction Op Code indicates an OR. L33 pin 9 decodes the OR instruction selecting the ALU function for a logical F = A + B. The 'B' Bus is selected from the 'dummy' as described in cycle 4 and the 'A' Bus is selected from File Register 1 in a similar manner as described in cycle 101. The resultant 'C' Bus data is the compliment of File Register 1 (File Register 1 contains 1000).

1. $\overline{\overline{MER}}$

   6311:

   With $\overline{CG}$ active, L21 decodes a '3' at pin 7 from R_2 and R_3. R_0 and R_1 are 0 0 causing L8 pin 8 to be low. R_{14} is 0 enabling L7 pin 10. PCG is inactive, enabling L30 pins 1, 4, 9 and 12. At $\overline{MER}$, $\overline{AT_1}$ is generated.

   6309:

   The 'C' Bus is applied to the PC Register Source Selector. The C3 inputs are selected with $\overline{CG}$ active. $\overline{\overline{AT_1}}$ clocks the 'C' Bus (File Register 1) into PC Register 1.

   The IC Register is incremented to Hex 0354.

2. $\overline{\overline{UDC}}$

   L41 is loaded with PC Register 1.

3. DIN

   The ROM Instruction at Hex 0354 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch.

Machine Cycles 110 - 113

In a similar manner as described in machine cycle 109, PC Registers 2, 3 and 4 are loaded with File Registers 2, 3 and 4. Machine cycle 113

writes a 4 into File Register 1 and 115 is a branch to a Subroutine to clear the end of the Symbol Table.

Machine Cycle 116 (Write 0 into Symbol Table)

The ROM Instruction at Hex 043F is 63E0F (0110 0011 1110 0000 1111).

6310:

The Op Code indicates a Binary Add Immediate. All operations are the same as described in cycle 38 with the resultant 'C' Bus data 1 1 1 1.

1. $\overline{\text{MERO}}$

   6308:

   $\overline{\text{WTEN}}_3$ and $\overline{\text{MS}}_1$ are decoded from A_0, A_4 and A_{14}, A_{15} in a similar manner as described in machine cycle 38. The PC Register is clocked into the Data Memory Address Register.

2. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

   6309:

   The IC Register is incremented to Hex 0440.

3. $\overline{\text{REL}}$

   6307:

   Data on the 'C' Bus is written into RAMs L5-L8 as described in cycle 38. The RAM address derived from the Data Memory Address Register is Hex 7FC.

4. $\overline{\text{MNT}}$

   6308:

   $\overline{\text{MNT}}$ clears the Memory Select and Write Enable Latches.

5. DIN

   6325:

   The ROM Instruction at Hex 0440 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 63F0F (0110 0011 1111 0000 1111).

Machine Cycle 117. (Write 0 into Symbol Table)

Machine Cycle 116 is identical to cycle 116 except $\overline{WTEN}_4$ is decoded and the data is written into RAMs L1-L4.

Machine Cycle 118. (Binary Add F in File Register 1)

The ROM Instruction is Hex 600F0, indicating a Binary Add Immediate (without carry).

1. $\overline{MER}$

   6310:

   The 'B' Bus is selected from File Register 1 and the 'A' Bus from $R_7 - R_4$ with the resultant ALU output 0 0 1 1. This 3 is written into File Register 1 in a similar manner as described in cycle 93.

2. DIN

   6325:

   The ROM Instruction at Hex 0442 is clocked into the ROM Output Latch. The ROM Instruction is Hex 5B801 (0101 1011 1000 0000 0001).

Machine Cycle 119. (Exchange PC Reg. and Aux. Reg. +2)

The ROM Instruction Op Code 1 indicates a Mini Instruction and Op Code 2 an Exchange PC Register and Auxiliary Register +2. All operations are the same as described in Machine Cycle 103, with the final Auxiliary Register value Hex 1FFA.

Machine Cycle 120. (Exchange PC Reg. and Aux. Reg.)

The ROM Instruction is Hex 59001. Op Code 1 indicates a Mini Instruction and Op Code 2 an Exchange PC Register and Auxiliary Register. This is similar to machine cycle 103. The PC and Auxiliary Registers now contain Hex 1FFA.

Machine Cycle 121. (Branch If Not Equal to Mask)

The ROM Instruction is Hex F030F (1111 0000 0011 0000 1111).

6310:

The Op Code indicates a Branch if Not Equal to Mask. R_{19} low enables L34 to decode a '7' at pin 9 from R_{16}, R_{17} and R_{10}. With L34 pin 9 low, the ALU is selected for an Exclusive OR function, $F = \overline{A \oplus B}$, and $\overline{FNHG}$ is high. The B Bus is selected from File Register 1 ('B' Bus Selector #2 is selected for CO imputs by R_{14} and R_{15} and File Register read address by R_{12}, R_{13} and R_{14}) and applied to the ALU A inputs. The 'A' Bus is selected from the mask (R_7 - R_4) as described in cycle 3.

The two ALU imputs are compared. If they are equal, the A=B output from the ALU is high; if not equal, A=B is low. At this time, File Register 1 is 0100 and the 'A' Bus is 0000. The A=B output is low and $\overline{FNHG}$ is high, setting $\overline{BRL}$ active.

1. $\overline{MER}$

6309:

With $\overline{BRL}$ active, IC Registers 1 and 2 are loaded with ROM Bits R_3 - R_0 (F) and R_{11} - R_8 (3), therefore the IC Register contains 043F (IC Registers 3 and 4 do not change because $\overline{BRH}$ is not active).

2. DIN

6325:

The ROM Instruction at Hex 043F is 63E0F.

Machine Cycle 122. (Write 0 into Symbol Table)

The Subroutine has branched back to the same instruction that was performed in cycle 116. Another 0 is written into memory at the new RAM address Hex 7FD.

This process of writing zeroes into memory and incrementing the PC Register will continue until the end of Memory is reached. Each machine cycle will be explained briefly.

Machine Cycle 123. (Write 0 into Symbol Table)

All operations are the same as described in cycle 117 with a RAM address of Hex 7FD.

Machine Cycle 124. (Binary Add F in File Register 1)

File Register 1 contains a 3 as a result of cycle 118. Binary Addition without carry is again performed by the ALU, the resultant output 0010 is written back into File Register 1.

Machine Cycle 125. (Exchange PC Reg. and Aux. Reg. +2)

All operations are the same as described in cycle 119 with the final Auxiliary Register value Hex 1FFC.

Machine Cycle 126. (Exchange PC Reg. and Aux. Reg.)

The PC Register is loaded with the value of the Auxiliary Register.

Machine Cycle 127. (Branch If Not Equal)

The mask and File Register 1 are not equal and the branch is made back to ROM address 043F in the same manner as described in cycle 121.

Machine Cycles 128 and 129 write a 0 into memory at PC Reg. value Hex 1FFC (RAM address Hex 7FE). Cycle 130 decrements the File Register to 0001. Cycle 131 increments the Aux. Register to Hex 1FFE and 132 transfers this to the PC Register. Cycle 133 branches back to ROM address 043F. At this time the RAM address is Hex 7FF, the last address location in the memory. Cycles 134 and 135 write zeroes into that address and 136 decrements File Register 1 to 0000. Cycles 137 and 138 increment and transfer the PC Register and Aux. Register to Hex 2000.

Machine Cycle 139. (Branch if Not Equal)

File Register 1 now contains a 0. When the ALU compares the A and B inputs, the A=B output goes high, preventing the branch from being performed by inhibiting $\overline{\text{BRL}}$.

1. $\overline{\text{MER}}$

   6309:

   $\overline{\text{MER}}$ increments the IC Register to Hex 0445.

2. DIN

   The ROM Instruction at Hex 0445 is Hex 58400.

Machine Cycle 140. (Subroutine Return)

The ROM Instruction indicates a Subroutine Return. The program returns to Hex 0014 as described in machine cycles 20 and 21.

A recap of the important instructions that have been performed would be helpful at this time.

Cycle 2 set the IC Register to the TRAP address. Cycles 4, 5 and 6 initialized Status Registers 1, 2 and 3. Cycles 22 and 23 set the KH and KL Registers to 0 and cycle 24 strobed a device address of 'X00' to disable all I/O devices. Cycle 27 initialized the last Status Register (SR4). Cycles 29 thru 32 cleared the PC Register to 0. Cycles 36 and 37 refreshed the Data Memory. Cycle 92 transferred the Memory Size into PC Register 4. Cycles 93 thru 96 wrote the memory size into the File Registers. Cycles 97 thru 101 set the PC Register to the VSVBEG system pointer. (Cycles 92 thru 113 show how the PC and File Registers work in conjunction with one another, transferring data back and forth.) Cycles 116 through 138 cleared four eight bit words in the Symbol Table with several Branch if Not Equal Instructions performed.

At this point, the remainder of the Instruction Set will be discussed without the use of successive machine cycles.

Decimal Subtract with Carry (DSC)

A typical ROM Instruction using DSC is Hex 19806 (0001 1001 1000 0000 0110). The DSC Instruction subtracts the B Bus data from the A Bus data with the result output to the C Bus.

6310:

L33 decodes the DSC at pin 12. With L33 pin 4 high, $\overline{DSC}$ is active and L44 pin 8 is low, setting the ALU for an arithmetic operation and selecting the F = A plus B function. Status bit ST1-0 (carry) was set active in the preceding instruction, enabling the Carry Function in the ALU. With the carry input active the ALU function becomes F = A plus (B+1).

The B Bus is selected from File Register 7. Suppose this register contains a 3. The 3 is applied to BCD 9's Compliment Converter L6, which was enabled by $\overline{DSC}$, converting the B Bus data to 0110 as the A word input to the ALU.

The A Bus is selected from File Register 0. Suppose FR0 contains a 7. The resultant ALU output is 1110, with no carry. A portion of the ALU output is applied to the Binary to BCD Converter L9. R_{16} is high, selecting the B inputs to the C Bus selector L8. The resultant output of the selector is 0100 (7-3=4). Since the ALU operation did not produce a carry, L46 pin 7 will be low, allowing the Status Register to be cleared the next time it is clocked.

Transfer PC Register to IC Register (TPI)

The TPI Instruction is particularly useful in recursive subroutines. Instead of storing the return address in the Subroutine Stack Register, the return address is stored in the PC Register, saving time and SSR space.

A typical TPI Instruction is Hex 59400 (0101 1001 0100 0000 0000).

6310:

Op Code 1 is decoded as a Mini Instruction enabling L41 to decode $\overline{\overline{TPI}}$ at pin 6. $\overline{\overline{TPI}}$ sets $\overline{\overline{BRH}}$ and $\overline{\overline{BRL}}$ active.

1. $\overline{\overline{MER}}$

   6309:

   $\overline{\overline{TPI}}$ selects the C1 inputs to the IC Register Source Selector. The PC Register is applied to the IC Register. With $\overline{\overline{BRH}}$ and $\overline{\overline{BRL}}$ are active, $\overline{\overline{MER}}$ clocks the PC Register into the IC Register.

Transfer IC Register to PC Register (TIP)

This Register instruction is similar to the TPI Instruction, again used in recursive subroutines. A typical TIP Instruction is Hex 59800 (0101 1001 1000 0000 0000).

6310:

Op Code 1 is decoded as a Mini Instruction enabling L41 to decode $\overline{\overline{TIP}}$ at pin 7. $\overline{\overline{TIP}}$ sets PCG active.

6309:

$\overline{\overline{TIP}}$ selects the C2 inputs to the PC Register Source Selector.

1. $\overline{\overline{MER}}$

   6311:

   $\overline{\overline{MER}}$ generates $\overline{\overline{AT}}_1$ - $\overline{\overline{AT}}_4$ via L2 pin 3.

   6309:

   $\overline{\overline{AT}}_1$ - $\overline{\overline{AT}}_4$ clocks the IC Register into the PC Register.

2. $\overline{\overline{UDC}}$

   6309:

   $\overline{\overline{UDC}}$ loads L41 with PC Register 1. The PC Register now contains

the data from the IC Register. The address in the IC Register that is transferred is the address of the TIP Instruction.

Transfer PC Register to Auxiliary Register, Increment by 1 (TP+1)

This instruction is similar to the TP Instruction discussed in machine cycle 35 except after the PC Register is transferred to the Program Counter, the PC is incremented by one and then written into the Auxiliary Register. A typical TP+1 Instruction is Hex 5A000 (0101 1010 0000 0000 0000).

6310:

Op Code 1 is decoded as a Mini Instruction and L1 decodes a $\overline{T/X}$ at pin 9, enabling CTA and $\overline{WW}$ to be generated.

1. $\overline{MERO}$

   6309:

   The value of the PC Register is loaded into the Program Counter.

2. $\overline{MOT}$

   6310:

   R_{11} is low, gating $\overline{MOT}$ to generate CTA.

   6309:

   R_{10} is low, and CTA is applied to the count up input of the Program Counter (L36 pin 5). The PC is incremented by one from the PC Register data loaded at $\overline{MERO}$.

3. $\overline{MXS}$

   6310:

   $\overline{MXS}$ generates $\overline{WW}$.

   6309:

   $\overline{WW}$ writes the Program Counter into the Auxiliary Register at the address specified by $R_3 - R_0$.

Transfer PC Register to Auxiliary Register, Decrement by 1(TP-1)

This instruction is identical to the TP+1 Instruction except R_{10} is now high, applying CTA to the count down input of the Program Counter, decrementing the value by 1.

Also, TP+2 and TP-2 are identical to TP+1 and TP-1 respectively, except CTA is generated from $\overline{MTF}$ instead of $\overline{MOT}$.

Branch if Equal to Registers (BER)

The BER Instruction compares the register specified in the A Field with the register specified in the B Field. If the registers are equal, a branch will be made to the in page ROM address specified by the Y Field Since only 8 bits are specified in the Y field, and there are 16 bits in the ROM address, only the low order bits (IB and IA) are changed by the Y field, effecting an in page branch. A typical BER Instruction is Hex 8220C (1000 0010 0010 0000 1100).

6310

R_{19} high desables L33. $\overline{R_{19}}$ low enables L34 to decode a '0' at pin 1. The ALU function is set to $F=A \overline{\oplus} B$, and FHG is set high, enabling I43 pin 3.

With $\overline{R_{19}}$ low the B Bus is selected from the register addressed by $R_{15} - R_{12}$ (B Field) by L40. B Bus Selector #2 is selected for CO inputs. The CO inputs are from the File Registers at the address specified by R_{14}, R_{13} and R_{12} (File Register 3) File Register 3 is applied as the A word to the ALU.

The A Bus is also selected from the File Registers at the address specified by R_6, R_5 and R_4 (File Register 1) and is applied as the B word to the ALU.

If the A word does not equal the B word, the A=B output of the ALU will remain low and the IC Register will be incremented to the next address by $\overline{MER}$. However, if the A word and B word are equal, the A=B output goes high, generating $\overline{BRL}$. The A=B output of the ALU works in the following manner: the function selected is performed on the A and B input words. If the resultant output word bits F_3 - F_0 are all high, then the A=B output goes high. The A=B output being active does not necessarily mean the A and B Words are equal.

6309:

With $\overline{BRL}$ active, R_3 - R_0 and R_{11} - R_8 are loaded into the IC Register by $\overline{MER}$. The ID and IC words of the IC Register remain unchanged, but the IB and IA words are changed to the new in page ROM address. In this example, the final IC Register value would be XX2C.

6310:

In addition to BER being performed, the Instruction can also increment or decrement the PC Register. Suppose the A Field (R_7 - R_4) in the example is changed to 1110. The A Bus is now selected from the CL Register. L18 pin 12 is low, enabling L7 pin 12 and setting B active.

With R_5 and R_6 high, L5 pin 8 and 9 are low, enabling L14 pin 4 and setting A active.

6308:

A and B set L4 pin 16 high and pin 4 low. MOT clocks L4, disabling $\overline{UDC}$.

6310:

$\overline{\overline{MXS}}$ is gated through L14 pin 5 to produce $\overline{\overline{IC}}$.

6309:

$\overline{\overline{UDC}}$ prevents L41 from being loaded with L40. $\overline{\overline{IC}}$ increments the value of L41 by one.

Branch if Not Equal to Registers (BNR)

This branch instruction is similar to the BER discussed above. In this case, however, the branch is executed if the registers specified are not equal. A typical BNR Instruction is Hex 9321B (1001 0011 0010 0001 1011).

6310:

L34 decodes a '1' at pin 2. The ALU is set for an $F=\overline{A \oplus B}$ function and $\overline{FNHG}$ is set high, enabling L43 pin 5. If the two registers selected are not equal, A=B is low, generating $\overline{BRL}$ to load the branch address. All other operations discussed in BER are the same.

Branch (B)

The Branch Instruction is an unconditional branch to the address specified by the last 16 bits of the Branch Instruction. A typical B Instruction is Hex B195B (1011 0001 1001 0101 1011).

6310:

R_{19} high disables L33 and enables L34. L34 decodes a '3' at pin 4 from R_{18}, R_{17} and R_{16}, generating $\overline{LB}$. $\overline{LB}$ sets $\overline{BRH}$ and $\overline{BRL}$ active.

6309:

$\overline{\overline{MER}}$ loads the IC Register with the ROM Instruction bits $R_{15} - R_0$. The branch address loaded is Hex 159B.

Branch if True (BT)

The BT Instruction tests the register specified by the B field with the ROM bits R_7 - R_4 (called the mask). For each '1' bit in the mask, there must be a corresponding '1' bit from the register for the branch to be made. If there are additional '1' bits in the register, they are ignored and the branch is made. If a 'dummy' is selected for the 'B' Bus, a NOOP (No Branch) results.

Example: Hex CE513 (1100 1110 0101 0001 0011)

6310:

R_{19} high disables L33 and enables L34. L34 decodes a '4' at pin 5 from R_{18}, R_{17} and R_{16}, generating FHG and setting the ALU for an F=A + $\overline{B}$ (A OR $\overline{B}$) function. The A word for the ALU is selected from the CL Register. The B word is the ROM Instruction mask (R_7 - R_4).

The ALU will perform the logic function on the input words, and if the result produces an F_3 - F_0 output of 1111, the A=B output will go high.

Suppose the CL Register contains 1011. The mask bits are 0001, which requires only the LSB of the register by a '1' for a branch. The ALU performs an OR with 1011 and 1110 ($\overline{B}$), with the result 1111. The A=B output goes high, generating $\overline{BRL}$.

6309:

$\overline{MER}$ loads L34 and L45 with the in page branch address XX53.

Suppose the CL register contained 1100. The ALU now performs the OR with 1100 and 1110, resulting in 1110. The A=B output will remain low, and no branch will be performed.

Branch if False (BF)

The BF Instruction is similar to the BT Instruction except and in page branch will be made if the register bits compared with the mask are '0' for the corresponding '1' bit in the mask.

Example: Hex DB329 (1101 1011 0011 0010 1001)

6310:

R_{19} high enables L34 to decode a '5' at pin 6, generating FHG and setting the ALU for an $F=\overline{A \cdot B}$ ($\overline{A \text{ AND } B}$) function. The B Bus is selected as follows:

6310:

$\overline{R_{19}}$ low selects the A inputs to L40. 'B' Bus Selector #2 is selected for C2 inputs from 'B' Bus Multiplexer bits $BI_8 - BI_1$. The address for the B Bus Multiplexer is derived from L40 and is 011 for b-4, b-2 and b-1.

6311:

The address for the B Bus Multiplex, L26 thru L29, selects Status Register 2, L16, for input.

6310:

Status Register 2 is applied to the ALU as the A word. The B word, from $R_7 - R_4$ is 0010.

Suppose SR2 contains 1001. The ALU performs the $A \cdot B$ function with a result of 0000; the $\overline{A \cdot B}$ result is 1111, causing the A=B output to be active. As with the other branch instructions, A=B high generates $\overline{BRL}$, performing the in page branch.

Suppose SR2 contained 1011. The resultant AND function is 1101, and no branch will be made.

If the B field specifies a 'dummy' the A word input will be 0000, and a branch will be made.

Branch if Equal to Mask (BEQ)

The BEQ Instruction is identical to the BER Instruction except the compare is done between a register specified by the B Field and the A Field mask, instead of an A Field register.

Example: Hex E6603 (1110 0110 0110 0000 0011) would branch to Hex XX63 if the compare was equal.

Branch if Not Equal to Mask (BNE)

The BNE Instruction is discussed in machine cycle 121.

4.4.2 *CPU POWER SUPPLY*

There are six regulated supplies, each independently variable, in the 2200 power supply. All six are of the series pass variety, each controlled by an IC voltage regulator. There are four transformer operated, full wave unregulated supplies which supply the necessary voltage for the regulators.

The six regulated supplies are the +5VRL for the TTL logic in the CPU, the +5VRM, +8VR, -12VR and -15VR for the ROMs, PROMs and RAMs. As all regulators operate in the same manner, only the +5VRL will be discussed here.

Refer to schematic L567 and Figure 4-20. The heart of the regulated supply is the voltage regulator L4. The unregulated +14V is applied to L4 pin 8 to provide the operating voltage for the IC. Pin 4 is an output from a reference amplifier in the IC. The reference amplifier contains a current source and temperature compensator to prevent drifting. The output of the reference amplifier is applied to the voltage divider network R1, R2 and R3.

R2 is adjustable and the voltage developed at the wiper is applied to the non-inverting input of the error amplifier at pin 3. By varying the voltage at the non-inverting input, the output voltage will change.

Since the IC Regulator cannot supply large output currents, external circuitry must be provided. Pin 7 is the collector output of the internal series pass transistor which provides the necessary drive for the first driver transistor Q5. Q5 provides the necessary current for the second driver Q8, which controls the series pass transistors Q6 and Q7.

The regulated output voltage is constantly monitored by the error amplifier by applying a sample to the inverting input at pin 2. Voltage regulation is performed as follows:

If the output voltage tries to go positive, the inverting input at pin 2 also follows positive, resulting in a more negative input to the

internal series pass transistor, causing it to conduct less, resulting in a more positive voltage at pin 7 (the voltage drop across R4 is less due to the decrease current, hence Q5 base tends toward +14V). Q5 conducts less, driver Q8 controlled by Q5 conducts less and finally the series pass transistors conduct less, decreasing the output voltage. In a similar manner, the output voltage is increased when a negative output change is detected. Note that no regulation can take place unless there is a change in the output voltage to initiate a correction, so that the regulation is less than perfect.

The regulators also employ foldback current limiting as follows:

Resistors R5, R7 and R8 form the external current sensing network. As the current in the external circuit increases, the voltage drop across the sensing network changes, until a point is reached where the internal current limiter transistor is turned on. The current limiter turns the internal series pass transistor off. The output voltage drops to zero and the output current remains at a safe value when the output current exceeds the predetermined value.

Capacitor C8 compensates the internal error amplifier to avoid instability. As mentioned previously, all other regulator circuits operate in the same manner. Diode D2 connected between L5 pin 1 and L1 pin 1 prevents to +5VRM supply from ever becoming more positive than the +8VR supply. This is necessary to prevent damage to the MOS Memory. Also diode D1 prevents the +8VR supply from rising above +14.2V, again to prevent damage to the memory.

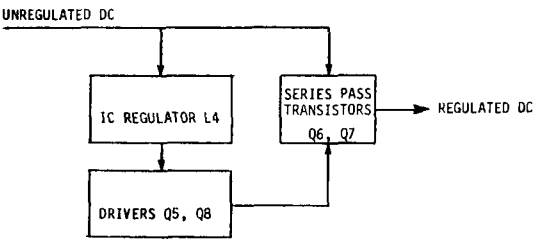


FIGURE 4-20 TYPICAL 2200 REGULATOR

A	Allows the PC Register to be incremented or decremented at the end of an instruction.
$A_{15} - A_0$	Output bits of the PC Register.
$\overline{A}_{10} - \overline{A}_0$	Output bits of the Data Memory Address Register.
$\overline{AB}_8 - \overline{AB}_1$	The Address Bus for I/O Devices.
$\overline{ABS}$	Address Bus Strobe.
AB_1 and AB_0	The address bits for the A Bus Source Selector.
$\overline{AT}_4 - \overline{AT}_1$	The clocks generated to load the four sub registers that make up the PC Register.
b4, b2, b1	The buffered B Bus Source Selector bits used as the address for the B Bus Multiplexer.
B	Allows the PC Register to be incremented or decremented at the end of a register instruction when a dummy register is used.
$BI_8 - BI_1$	The four output bits of the B Bus Multiplexer.
$\overline{BRH}$	Branch High. Loads the eight MSB of IC Register.
$\overline{BRL}$	Branch Low. Loads the eight LSB of the IC Register.
$\overline{CBS}$	Control Buffer Strobe sent to an I/O device to request an input.

$\overline{CAG}$	Carry Gate. Allows Status Register 1 to detect a carry.
$\overline{CG}$	C Bus Gate. Allows the C Bus to be applied to and clocks to be generated for the various registers in the CPU.
$CH_8 - CH_1$	The four high order output bits from the Data Memory Buffer.
$CL_8 - CL_1$	The four low order output bits from the Data Memory Buffer.
$\overline{CTA}$	The Increment/Decrement clock for the Program Counter.
CK (see timing section)	
$\overline{CS}$ (see timing section)	
$\overline{CIO}$	Control Input/Output. Allows input/output strobes to be generated.
$\overline{CPB}$	Indicates the CPU is Busy.
$\overline{D}_8 - \overline{D}_1$	C Bus data output.
$\overline{DC}$	Used to decrement the PC Register.
$\overline{DSC}$	Decimal Subtract with Carry.
$\overline{DI}_3 - \overline{DI}_0$	Buffered $\overline{D}_8 - \overline{D}_1$ bits.
$\overline{DIN}$ (see timing section)	

$\overline{DAST}$ (see timing section)	
$\overline{DI}_{15}$ - $\overline{DI}_{0}$	Derived data bits from $\overline{DI}_{3}$ - $\overline{DI}_{0}$.
$\overline{DO}_{15}$ - DO_{0}	Data Memory Output bits.
ERG	Error Gate. Not used.
$\overline{FHG}$	Used to detect a 'Branch if Equal' condition.
$\overline{FNHG}$	Used to detect a "Branch if Not Equal' condition.
Halt	HALT/STEP from keyboard.
$\overline{IB}_{9}$	Input Bus data bit for Special Functions.
$\overline{IB}_{8}$ - $\overline{IB}_{1}$	Input Bus data bits.
$\overline{IC}$	Used to increment the PC Register.
ID8-1, IC8-1, IB8-1, IA8-1	The output of the IC Register.
$\overline{IBS}$	Input Bus Strobe.
$\overline{LB}$	Indicates an unconditional Branch.
$\overline{MER}$ (see timing section)	
$\overline{MER}_{0}$ (see timing section)	
$\overline{MOT}$ (see timing section)	
$\overline{MXS}$ (see timing section)	
$\overline{MTF}$ (see timing section)	

$\overline{MNT}$ (see timing section)

$\overline{MHL}$ (see timing section)

$\overline{MS}_4$ - $\overline{MS}_1$ — Selects one of four Data Memory positions.

$\overline{OB}_8$ - $\overline{OB}_1$ — Output Bus data.

$\overline{OBS}$ — Output Bus Strobe.

PC_{4t} - PC_{1t} — Decoded to allow one of four PC Register clocks, AT_4 - AT_1, to be generated.

PCG — Allows all four PC Register clocks to be generated.

$\overline{PDS}$ — Active when a patch instruction has been decoded.

$\overline{PRMS}$ — Resets the CPU and I/O Devices.

R_{19} - R_0 — The twenty bits that comprise the Instruction Word.

$\overline{R}$/B — $\overline{Ready}$/Busy signal from I/O Devices.

$\overline{RTT}$ — Reset signal developed from $\overline{PRMS}$.

$\overline{REF}$ — Allows the Data Memory to be refreshed.

$\overline{RESET}$ (see timing section)

$\overline{REL}$ (see timing section)

$\overline{SB}$ — Indicates a Subroutine Branch instruction was decoded.

$\overline{SR}$	Indicates a Subroutine Return instruction was decoded.
ST_{1t}	Clock for Status Register 1.
ST_{2t}	Clock for Status Register 2.
ST_{3t}	Clock for Status Register 3.
ST_{4t}	Clock for Status Register 4.
$\overline{SKFN}$	Enables a Special Function to be input.
$\overline{T/X}$	Indicates a register transfer or exchange instruction was decoded.
$\overline{TIP}$	Transfer IC Register to PC Register.
$\overline{TMP}$	Transfer memory size to PC Register.
$\overline{TPI}$	Transfer PC Register to IC Register.
$\overline{TRAP}$	Generated when the power switch is turned ON, to master initialize the CPU.
$\overline{UDC}$	The clock to load PC1.
$\overline{WTEN}_4$ - $\overline{WTEN}_1$	Enables one of four sections of Data Memory to be written into.
$\overline{WW}$	Enables a write into one of sixteen Auxiliary Registers.

SECTION 4

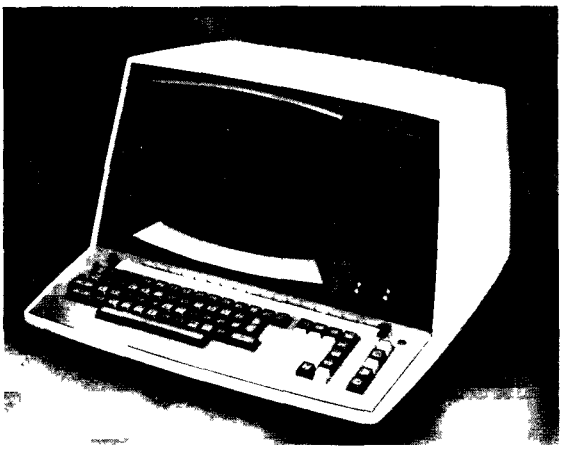
NOTES:

SECTION 5

USER TERMINAL & POWER SUPPLY HARDWARE OPERATION

5.1 VIDEO DISPLAY

The Video Display Unit provides visual interface between the 2200 CPU and operator. The Display provides fast and efficient viewing of programs and data stored in the CPU.

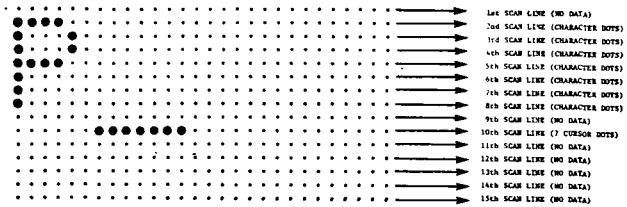


A Video Display Controller (located in a CPU I/O Slot) is used to control display of dot matrix characters on a Cathode Ray Tube screen (CRT) by providing video information and all required synchronization/ timing signals.

5.1.1 *VIDEO DISPLAY PRINCIPLES*

The Motorola Video Display Chassis electronics causes the electron beam of the Cathode Ray Tube to scan from left to right across the CRT screen. Refer to Figure 5-2 for a basic explanation of how beam scan is affected by the WANG I/O Controller. A more comprehensive timing illustration is found in Section 6. Each *character row* is comprised of

5 x 7 DOT CHARACTER MATRIX



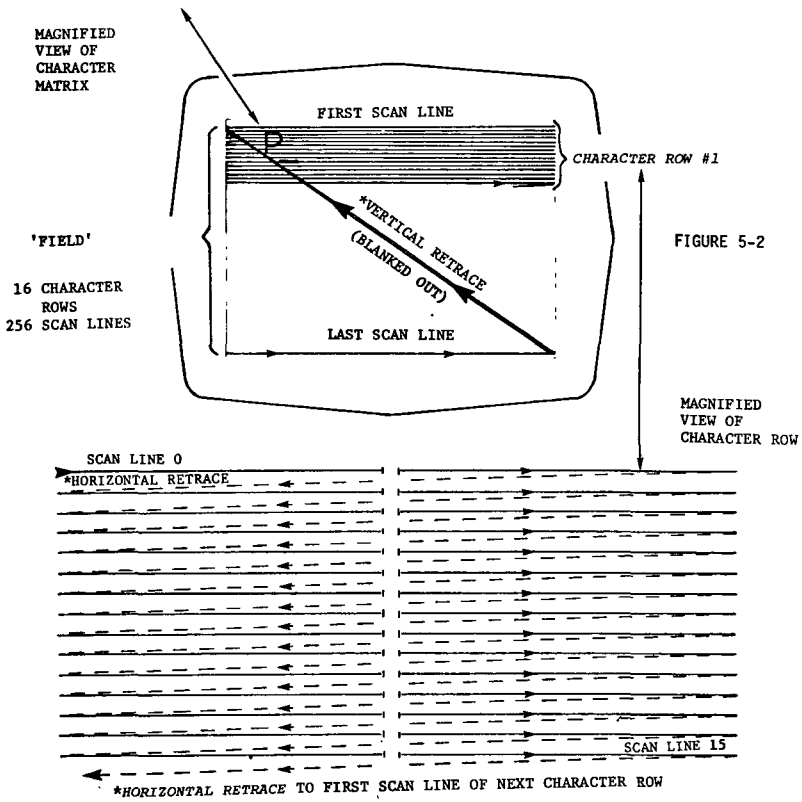


FIGURE 5-2

*HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL RETRACE ARE BLANKED (SEE TEXT)

fifteen *scan lines* and has 64 *character positions* available. Using the *first* character row as an example, the first scan line is *blanked*; the next seven scan lines contain character information; the ninth line in the character row is blanked; the tenth is for cursor display. The remaining five lines contain no display data, and consequently appear blank for adequate spacing to the beginning of the next character row.

The entire display, comprised of 256 scan lines is called a *field.* Sixty fields are generated per second; therefore, all video data is displayed 60 times per second. This repetitive field generation cannot be detected by the human eye and video display therefore appears to be continuous.

When each scan line reaches the right-hand scan-line sweep limit, the electron beam is quickly returned (*retraced*) to the left and the starting position of the next scan line is reached.

At the right-hand sweep limit of the last scan line, the CRT electron beam is retraced to the *top left* (starting point) of the first scan line, thus beginning a new display field.

Since beam retrace is visually objectionable, the electron beam is turned off (*blanked*) during both horizontal (scan line) retrace and vertical (end-of-field) retrace. Accordingly, these intervals are termed *horizontal retrace blanking* and *vertical retrace blanking,* respectively.

5.1.2 *THEORY OF OPERATION*

A simplified overall block diagram of the Display Unit is shown in Figure 5-3. The Display Unit consists of a Video Amplifier, a Sync Separator, a Vertical Oscillator and Driver, a Horizontal Oscillator and Driver, a CRT and Low and High Voltage Power Supplies.

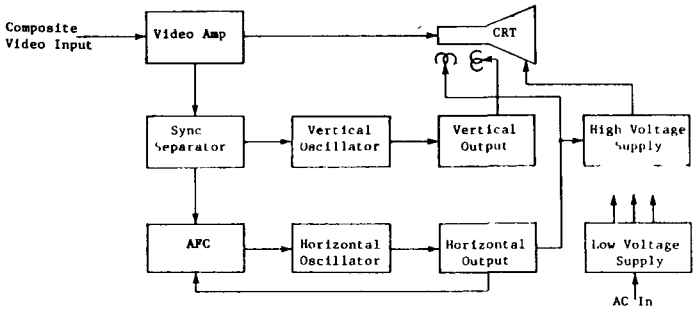


FIGURE 5-3 VIDEO DISPLAY UNIT

Refer to Motorola Schematics XM351 and XM227 and the simplified diagrams that accompany the circuit descriptions to follow; for simplicity of explanation references to specific components apply to XM351.

5.1.2.1 Video Amplifier

The video circuit is a wide band transistorized amplifier utilizing up to four stages with a capability of 60 volts output for .5 volts input, (2.5V PP Maximum Input). On some models the input impedance is switch selected for 75 ohms terminated or 12KΩ unterminated. The high impedance operation permits use of bridging connections to drive a number of monitors from a common signal source. The frequency response within is 3db from 10 Hz to 15 MHz and, depending on CRT type, is capable of up to 800 lines resolution at the CRT center.

The first video amplifier (Q1) is an emitter follower. It provides impedance matching and couples the input to the low impedance load. Its emitter resistor R5 is a low resistance control which provides an adjustable low impedance drive signal without the need for frequency

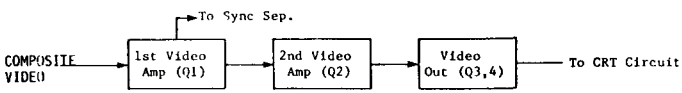


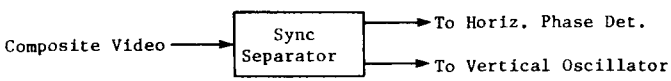
FIGURE 5-4 VIDEO AMPLIFIER

compensation. On composite video models, sync information is removed at the collector, and C3 provides high frequency roll off to limit the collector bandwidth to the synchronizing signals (50/60 Hz vertical and up to 20 KHz horizontal). C1 provides DC blocking, permitting Q1 to be base biased. The video signal is coupled from the contrast control by C4 to the base of amplifier Q2 which is operated common emitter. The emitter of Q2 and base of Q3 are AC grounded by capacitor C6. Bypass capacitor C5 is used for frequency compensation increasing Q2 gain at high frequencies. The output is DC coupled to the base of the common emitter stage Q4. The output stages Q3 and Q4 form a Cascode pair which is used in place of a single output stage to obtain a high gain bandwidth by reducing the input capacity or "Miller effect". As a result of an increase in temperature, the emitter base drop of Q4 decreases, causing an increase of collector current. The forward drop of D8 and D13, both silicon diodes, decreases with an increase in temperature. This results in a lower base voltage for Q4, cancelling variations of Q4 collector current with temperature. The video bias control R10 is used to set the quiescent collector voltage of the output stage.

DC restoration is accomplished by setting this control so the sync tips, which are negative going at the collector of Q3, just go into saturation. Variations in the video drive will result in variations of Q2 base current during sync time due to the low load reflected back to Q2 when Q3 is saturated. The charge on C4 will depend on the amplitude of Q3 collector current during sync time. The result is a clamping action which holds the sync tips at a constant level despite video input signal variations. The output is DC coupled to the CRT through R18 which isolates the output stage from transients should they occur as a result of CRT arcing. C5, C7, C8 and R15 are used for high frequency compensation.

5.1.2.2 Sync Separator

The function of the sync separator is to receive the composite video signal and separate the sync pulses, discarding all other information. When a signal is applied to the base of Q5 it is driven positive causing current to flow from emitter to base, charging C11. As the input signal drops, a charge remains on C11 because its only discharge path is through the high resistance of R24, since the transistor is cut off at this time and its base has stopped drawing current. When the next sync pulse arrives it must overcome the residual charge voltage on C11 which is holding the transistor in cutoff. Between pulses some of the charge will be lost through R24, but it is somewhat less than the height of the sync pulse. The amount of charge lost by C11 will determine when the transistor is turned on. Q5 conducts only when C11 is charging, while video information is blocked by C11's residual voltage which is holding Q5 in cutoff at that time. The charge amplitude depends on the peak to peak input to Q5 and thus makes the bias for Q5 track the amplitude of the input signal, allowing only the positive peaks (sync pulses) to be amplified.



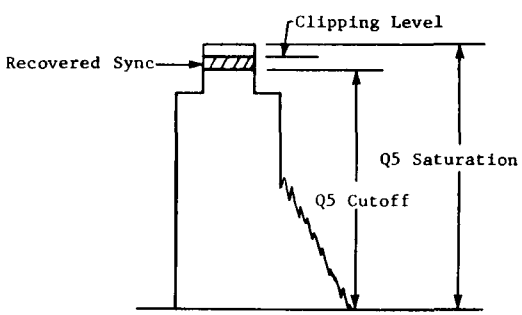


FIGURE 5-5 - SYNC SEPARATOR AND WAVEFORM ANALYSIS

5.1.2.3 Vertical Oscillator

The function of the vertical oscillator is to provide the vertical sweep frequency to move the beam from top to bottom. At the output of the vertical oscillator, a pulse shaping network is incorporated that will develop the required waveform. This waveform is then applied to subsequent stages that amplify and apply it to the vertical deflection coils to scan the electron beam vertically.

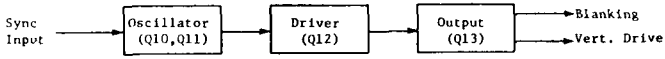


FIGURE 5-6 VERTICAL SWEEP

Q10 and Q11 are connected as a regenerative switch; bias is supplied from the voltage divider R56, R55, R82 and R50. The vertical hold control will vary the bias on the base of Q10, thus allowing an adjustment of its frequency. In the free running condition capacitors C37 and C38 charge through R58 and D3. The oscillator is held in cutoff at this time by the bias on Q10, and the CRT is being scanned vertically from top to bottom. At the bottom of the raster the charge is of sufficient amplitude to forward bias Q10 on. Its collector current develops a positive pulse across R57 which forward biases Q11 on, developing a negative pulse at the base of Q10, driving it into saturation. Its collector/emitter resistance is reduced to a fraction of an ohm discharging C37 and C38. This initiates vertical retrace and forces the beam back to the top of the CRT. Note that the charge path is through a high resistance during trace allowing a relatively long scan time; but discharge is through a low resistance during vertical retrace. The discharge causes Q10 emitter to become less positive, decreasing its collector current, biasing Q11 toward cutoff. Q11's collector voltage rises positive and reverse biases Q10, allowing the capacitors to charge again, repeating the sequence. Sync from the collector of Q5 is integrated by R26 and C35 and applied to the free running oscillator. This prematurely forward biases Q10, synchronizing the oscillator frequency. C38, C37 and

R58 form the pulse shaping network that develops the required sawtooth waveform. C36 filters the sawtooth from the power supply. R57 is the common feedback load resistor. L2 in conjunction with C37 and C38 determine the on time of the oscillator. R54 is used for damping. D3 provides a small incremental voltage above ground to overcome the forward base/emitter drop of the following stages.

5.1.2.4 Vertical Driver and Output

The task of the vertical amplifiers is to increase the level of driving signal generated by the vertical oscillator to a level which is sufficient for driving the vertical deflection coils. A sawtooth of voltage must be applied to the vertical output transistor to produce a sawtooth of current through the vertical deflection coils to achieve vertical deflection.

The vertical driver, Q12, is an emitter follower which transforms the high impedance input to a low impedance drive for the vertical output. Q13 amplifies the vertical sawtooth output current waveform from the oscillator. Q13's output current waveshape is used to drive the yoke L5 through transformer T3. R61 limits the dissipation of Q12 by reducing average collector voltage. R63 is the emitter load resistor for Q12. DC coupling is employed from the vertical oscillator to the vertical output.

R64 and R65 set the current gain of Q13 with R65 (vertical size) adjustable.

When the driving signal at the base of Q13 goes negative, vertical retrace will be initiated. At the instant of vertical retrace, a high positive pulse is introduced to the collector of Q13. During the time it was turned on, a large magnetic field was built around T3 and the vertical deflection coils, then when Q13 is cut off, this field collapses and causes a large self-induced voltage to be produced in the form of a positive pulse at the collector.

C39 increases turn off time of Q13 reducing the amplitude of the positive pulse at its collector. Additional pulse limiting is provided by a VDR (Voltage Dependent Resistor) R81, across the primary of the vertical output transformer. The resistance of the VDR varies inversely with the voltage across it thus further limiting the positive pulse on the collector of the vertical output transistor to a safe value.

Since the primary impedance of T3 decreases with current, the degree to which the primary shunts the reflected load impedance will vary with collector current, resulting in vertical non-linearity, stretching the top and compressing the bottom of the raster. In order to counteract this, a concave sawtooth is applied to the base of the output transistor.

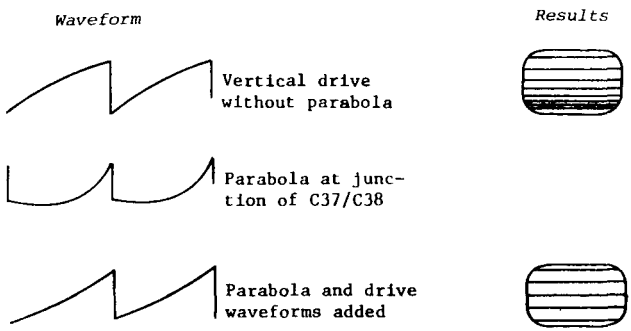


FIGURE 5-7 - VERTICAL WAVEFORM ANALYSIS

To develop this waveform, a portion of the vertical sawtooth in the emitter circuit of Q13 is coupled back to the wave shaping network C37 and C38 via R59 (vertical linearity control) and R60. C38 combines this sawtooth to the sawtooth developed by the oscillator producing a parabola. The amount of parabola added to the sawtooth waveform is governed by the setting of the vertical linearity control. An additional feedback path through R62 and C40 serves to optimize the drive waveshape for best linearity.

R66 and C41 provide damping to shape the collector pulse so it may be used for retrace blanking.

5.1.2.5 Horizontal AFC Circuit

The horizontal oscillator is used to generate a signal to drive the horizontal deflection coils and ultimately sweep the electron beam from left to right across the face of the CRT. It is susceptible to false triggering by noise because its synchronizing pulses are selected by a process of differentiation, and differentiators are high-pass filters. Thus, any noise which passes through the sync separator would be applied to the oscillator resulting in instability. To insure operation on the correct frequency and immunity to noise, the oscillator is controlled by an automatic-frequency-control circuit (AFC).

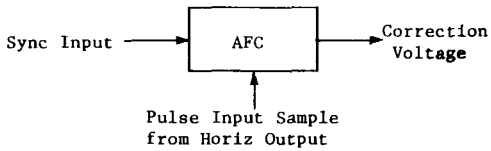


FIGURE 5-8 HORIZONTAL OSCILLATOR AUTOMATIC FREQUENCY CONTROL

The AFC phase detector is a keyed clamp circuit. Its function is to develop a control voltage for synchronizing the horizontal oscillator with the incoming sync pulses. If the oscillator deviates in phase with respect to the sync, a correction voltage (proportional to the amount the oscillator deviated) is developed and applied to the oscillator, pulling it back in phase lock with sync.

Two inputs are required to generate the required output, one from the sync separator and one from the horizontal deflection system.

R27 and C13 are used to couple the horizontal sync into the phase detector. The capacity of C13 is made small so as to differentiate the vertical serrated sync pulses, thus coupling only horizontal sync to the AFC network. C32, C23, R45 and C15 integrate and couple a positive pulse from the horizontal output transformer (this pulse is a representation of the oscillator frequency) into the phase detector for frequency comparison with the sync pulse.

To explain the operation of the AFC circuit, begin with sync separator stage (Q5). Prior to the arrival of the sync pulse at base of Q5, it is cut off and has a high collector voltage. Since C13 is connected to the collector of Q5, it will be charged up to nearly the supply voltage. When a sync pulse turns on the sync separator, its collector voltage decreases.

C13 will now discharge coupling the sync to the cathodes of D1 and D2. This voltage will forward bias both diodes (D1 and D2) into conduction, shorting C15 to ground.

The sawtooth on C15 is thus clamped to ground at sync time. If the horizontal time base is in phase with the sync, the sync pulse will occur when the sawtooth is passing through its AC axis and the net charge on C15 will be zero. (Figure 5-9B) If the horizontal time base is lagging the sync, the sawtooth on C15 will be clamped to ground at a point negative from the AC axis. This will result in a positive DC charge on C15 (Figure 5-9C). This is the correct polarity to cause the horizontal oscillator to speed up to correct the phase lag.

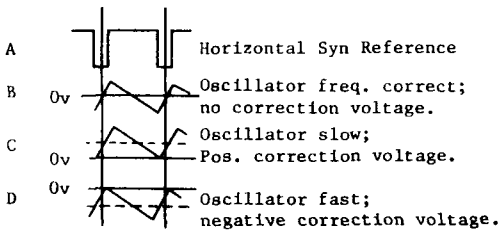


FIGURE 5-9 - HORIZONTAL OSCILLATOR FREQUENCY CORRECTION

Likewise, if the horizontal time base is leading the sync, the sawtooth on C15 will be clamped at a point positive from its AC axis, resulting in a net negative charge on C15 which is the required polarity to slow the horizontal oscillator (Figure 5-9D). R30, C23, C15 and R45 comprise the phase detector filter. The bandpass of this filter is chosen to provide correction of horizontal oscillator phase without ringing or hunting.

5.1.2.6 Horizontal Oscillator

The horizontal oscillator acts like a switch turning on and off at a predetermined rate. The base of Q6 receives a DC voltage from the AFC to keep the oscillator locked in phase and frequency with the transmitted sync.

The oscillator frequency is sensitive to base input voltage changes. This permits control by both the AFC output and setting of the hold control R34, while oscillator range is set with the core adjustment of L1.

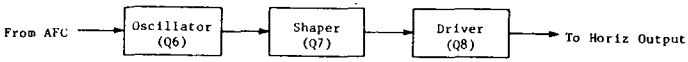


FIGURE 5-10 HORIZONTAL OSCILLATOR

The horizontal oscillator is similar to a Hartley Oscillator with a tapped oscillator coil, L1, in its emitter circuit which sustains oscillation. The main frequency determining components are L1, C18, C19 and R36. The output of the oscillator is a 22% duty cycle square wave. This waveform is produced by the abrupt switch on, to saturation, and off, to cutoff, of the horizontal oscillator transistor. This unsymmetrical square wave is not quite suitable for switching (or driving) the horizontal output transistor and must be applied to the Horizontal Pulse Shaper first.

5.1.2.7 Horizontal Pulse Shaper

This stage is incorporated to insure that a more perfect square wave is applied to the Horizontal Driver. The pulse shaper, Q7, achieves the shaping by being driven into saturation and cutoff by the existing driving signal on its base. This squares the waveform by clipping off the top and bottom portion.

The base of Q7 is directly coupled to the collector of the oscillator. Therefore, the collector voltage of the oscillator will apply bias to Q7. Since the emitter of Q7 and the collector of the oscillator both return to the +30 volt supply, Q7 will stay in cutoff until the oscillator transistor

turns on and forward biases it. R39 is used to raise the input impedance of Q7. C20 increases the conduction of Q7 to 50% by holding a charge positive at the base of Q7 after Q6 turns off. R41 is a collector load resistor for Q7 and base load for Q8.

5.1.2.8 Horizontal Driver

The function of the driver is to amplify the existing driving signal from the pulse shaper to a power level sufficient to drive the horizontal output transistor.

Forward bias is applied to the base of the driver, Q8, by DC coupling from the collector of the shaper, Q7. The driver will follow the oscillator as it has no forward bias when the oscillator is cut off. When the oscillator conducts, its collector current will turn on the shaper and the driver.

The output of the driver is coupled into a driver transformer (T1). When the driver is driven sharply into cutoff, the primary winding of T1 and its stray capacitance ring because the driver stage unloaded the circuit and allowed the "Q" of it to rise. This ringing could exceed the collector to emitter breakdown voltage of the horizontal driver. To prevent this undesirable condition, a damping resistor (R42) and series capacitor (C21) are placed across the primary of T1 to lower the circuit "Q". This keeps the tuned circuit loaded even when the driver cuts off, preventing oscillations from occurring on the driving signal. C22 and R43 decouple the driving signal from the 73 volt supply.

The driver transformer (T1) has a turns ratio of approximately 30:1 with the voltage stepped down and current stepped up. This transformer provides current step up and coupling to the base of the horizontal output transistor.

5.1.2.9 Horizontal Output

A simplified diagram of the horizontal output showing collector current when the output transistor Q9 is turned on is illustrated below.

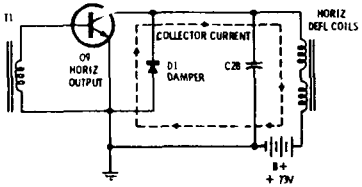


FIGURE 5-11 HORIZONTAL OUTPUT

This stage must be capable of developing both a sawtooth of current through the horizontal deflection coils and a high voltage pulse for the high voltage rectifier (not shown). In order for a transistorized horizontal output stage to perform these functions properly, it must be driven with a square wave of voltage. A square wave is needed because the circuit is almost purely inductive. The circuit is virtually absent of resistance because the output transistor, Q9 exhibits only a fraction of an ohm when driven into saturation by the driving signal. Since the only impedance left in the circuit now is the yoke and flyback (high voltage transformer), the circuit is primarily inductive.

Q9, the horizontal output transistor, is simply a switch which is turned on and off at a horizontal scan rate by the driving signal applied to its base. Shown with respect to time, Figure 5-12 shows the Horizontal Output Waveforms, Figure 5-12A the driving signal applied to base of Q9, Figure 5-12B current through deflection coils, Figure 5-12C pulse appearing on collector of Q9 during retrace and Figure 5-12D CRT scan relative to time.

Figure 5-12A shows the drive voltage applied to the base of Q9. From T1 to T2, the input signal turns on Q9 and drives it into saturation. In this condition, the emitter/collector resistance is reduced to a fraction of an ohm, thus simulating a closed switch. During this time Figure 5-12B illustrates the flow of current from zero to maximum through the yoke (horizontal deflection coils) in a direction to move the beam from the center of the screen to the right side.

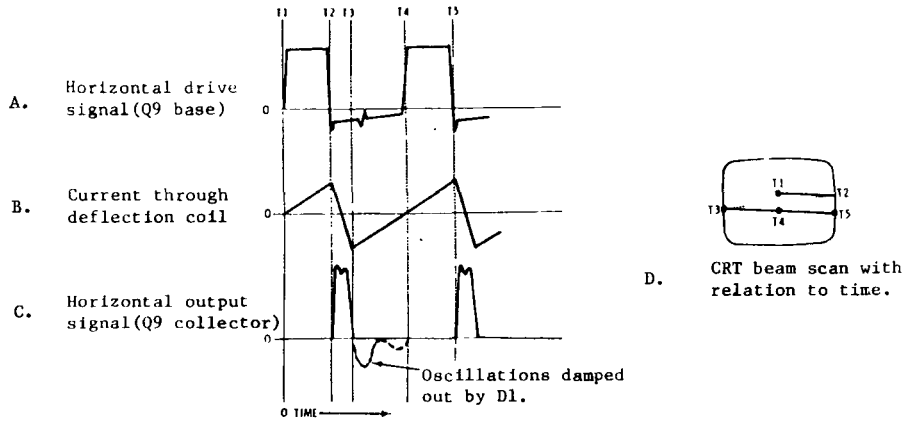


FIGURE 5-12 - HORIZONTAL OUTPUT WAVEFORM ANALYSIS

At T2, Q9 is driven sharply into cutoff, thereby initiating horizontal retrace. Between T2 and T4, Q9 is driven into cutoff, and the current supplied to the deflection coil ceases. However, an induced voltage appears across the deflection coils as the magnetic field collapses and an oscillation then occurs between the deflection coils and C28. The damper diode, D1, then conducts on the negative ring of this oscillation and the beam is returned to the center of the screen at a linear rate.

It is important to note here that Q9 conduction causes scan which starts at the CRT center and moves to the right edge and damper D1 conduction causes scan from the left edge to the CRT center.

From T2 to T3, the direction of current through the yoke is shown in Figure 5-12B. During horizontal retrace, the current rises to a high value in the reverse direction causing retrace which quickly returns the beam to the left side of the screen. Then, from T-3 to T-4, the yoke current gradually decreases to zero during damper conduction allowing the beam to return to the center of the screen. The beam movement relative to time is illustrated in Figure 5-12D.

From T4 to T5, Q9 is turned on by the driving signal on its base, thus causing current to rise (Figure 5-12B) at a sawtooth rate. This rising current produces an increasing magnetic field in the yoke which will deflect the beam from the center of the screen to the right side.

When the beam reaches the right side of the screen, Q9 is abruptly cut off causing retrace and again, repeating the sequence of events.

Figure 5-12C indicates the collector voltage waveform of Q9. The instant Q9 is switched off, the collapsing magnetic field produces a positive pulse. This pulse is stepped up by the flyback transformer (not shown) and rectified to produce the required high voltage to accelerate the CRT beam toward the screen.

Transistors require bias to turn on and, note, the horizontal output stage has no DC voltage paths to its base to form the required emitter/base forward bias for turning on. Q9 will turn on only when the driving signal on its base is positive enough to forward bias it, therefore, no harm will be done to the horizontal amplifier stage in the event of lost drive.

The secondary of T1 provides the required low drive impedance for Q9. R44 and C24 form a time constant for fast turn-off of the base of Q9. The transition of time between saturation and cut off is very critical. If this time is too long, the maximum collector dissipation would be exceeded. To alleviate this undesirable condition, this network is incorporated in the base circuit.

Q9 operates as a switch which, once each horizontal period, connects the supply voltage across the parallel combination of the horizontal yoke and the primary of T2. The required sawtooth of deflection current through the horizontal yoke is formed by the L-R time constant of the yoke and output transformer primary. The damper diode, D1, conducts during the period between retrace and turn on of Q9. A second diode, D2, is employed as a pulse limiter/boost rectifier. The horizontal retrace pulses charge C27 through D2 providing a DC supply voltage for use at the CRT. Should momentary transients appear at the collector of Q9 they will be limited to the voltage on C27 since D2 will conduct if the collector voltage rises to this value.

C28 is used to tune the retrace pulse to the proper frequency. C43D is charged through D5 developing the video output supply voltage. D4 serves as the high voltage rectifier supplying the DC voltage for the CRT 2nd anode. The capacitance of the CRT is used to filter this voltage. Since the low side of the deflection coils are connected to ground, a capacitor, C29 is in series with the yoke, blocking the DC voltage which would decenter the raster.

The linearity of scan is critical in a monitor due to its application in reproduction of a fixed image. Two circuits are included to control linearity and width of the horizontal sweep. The width coil L4 is adjustable and in series with the yoke. By changing the inductance of the width coil the amount of deflection current flowing through the yoke is varied and the raster size (scan without picture information) changes in a horizontal direction. The linearity coil L3 is a factory adjusted, magnetically biased coil which shapes the deflection current for optimum trace linearity. If the yoke was a pure inductance, a sawtooth current through it would be adequate. However, to compensate for its internal resistance, the linearity coil reshapes the sweep current to compensate for system losses which could cause right side compression. C31, R49, C42 and R68 are the damping network components for the linearity and width coils.

5.1.2.10 Retrace Blanking

The blanking function disables the CRT during retrace, which occurs at blanking time when video information is not being received. As a result of this action the vertical and horizontal retraces are not observed. Both vertical and horizontal retrace blanking are provided by pulses applied to

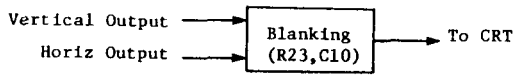


FIGURE 5-13 BLANKING CIRCUIT

the CRT. The collector pulse from the horizontal output transistor is placed across R23 through R46. The vertical collector voltage is differentiated by C30 to remove the sawtooth portion of the waveform. The remaining pulse appears across R23. The mixed vertical and horizontal pulses on R23 are coupled to the CRT cathode by C10.

5.1.2.11 Power Supply (73V Version)

Two basic power supplies are used in Motorola Display modules: a 73V supply for large screen (12 inch) applications and a 12V supply for small screen (9 inch) displays.

The power supply is a transformer operated, full wave, regulated supply which maintains constant output voltage with input variations of ±15%. A switch (SW1) is provided to allow operation from 115 or 230 volts, 50/60 HzAC. The regulator is a series pass circuit. Q16 is the series pass transistor, Q15 the reference amplifier and Q14 the output driver.

The output voltage of the regulator appears at the emitter of Q16. This voltage is divided between R71, R74 and R73. The voltage appearing on the arm of potentiometer R74 is a reference input to the base of Q15.

A temperature compensated Zener diode (D6) is used to establish a fixed reference voltage at the emitter of Q15. R72 provides a bias current for D6, establishing its operating point.

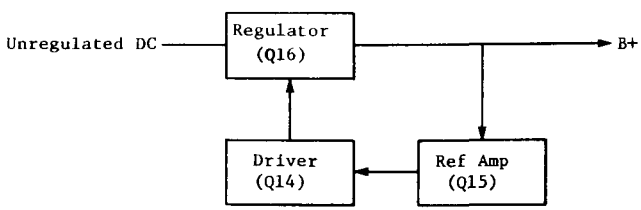


FIGURE 5-14 POWER SUPPLY

An increase in output voltage results in an increase of voltage at the base of Q15. Since the emitter of Q15 is held at a fixed reference voltage, the change in base voltage will turn Q15 on harder, reducing its collector voltage. This reduces forward bias for Q14 resulting in less emitter current and less base current for Q16. Q16 will conduct less, lowering the output voltage.

R79 provides a shunt current path for Q16 allowing it to run cooler, improving reliability. C44 is an RF noise filter.

5.1.2.12 Power Supply (12V Version)

Operationally the 12 volt supply is similar to the 73 volt version just discussed.

The IC replaces the temperature compensated Zener diode, reference and regulator driver circuitry. The IC operating voltage is supplied by diode D105 and capacitor C101 and the power transformer winding.

5.2 THE TAPE DRIVE UNIT

The Tape Drive Unit is used in the 2200 System to store data or programs from the CPU memory onto a cassette; this data can be read back into the CPU memory when required, providing a convenient method of mass storage.

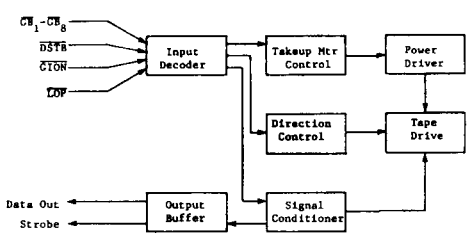


FIGURE 5-15 - TAPE DRIVE UNIT

5.2.1 *THEORY OF OPERATION*

Refer to the simplified block diagram in Figure 5-15.

5.2.1.1 Input Decoder

Information pertaining to Track 0 and Track 1 Data, Head In or Out, Speed, Direction, Record Current On or Off, and Motors On or Off is sent by the CPU to the Input Decoder. The Input Decoder generates the signals necessary to perform the tape drive operations and also checks the status of the clear leader, rewind and reset.

5.2.1.2 Signal Conditioner

During a write operation, the Signal Conditioner changes data from the 2200 to a form that is required by the tape head. During a read operation, the Signal Conditioner changes the data from the tape head to a form that can be used by the 2200.

5.2.1.3 Take-up Motor Control

The Take-up Motor Control determines which take up motor is to be used during a read/write, and rewind operations; it also controls braking signals for these motors.

5.2.1.4 Direction Control

The Direction Control determines the direction of the tape during read and write operations. The Direction Control Decoder energizes the forward or reverse pinch roller solenoids to move the tape in the required direction.

5.2.1.5 Output Buffer

The Output Buffer provides the Track 0 and Track 1 data signals for the CPU and generates a data strobe for the CPU from these data signals.

5.2.2 *DETAILED THEORY OF OPERATION*

Refer to schematics L558, L559 and 6175, where applicable.

5.2.2.1 Input Decoder (L558)

When the I/O controller for the tape drive is selected, $\overline{GION}$ is active. This removes the clear from latch L12 and resets MMV L9, which resets latch L7 and removes the clear from L5 pin 13. When L7 is reset, the clear is removed from L13, and L11 pin 9, L8 pin 5 and L6 pins 2 and 12 are enabled.

At the time the CPU generates OBS, $\overline{DSTB}$ clocks data $\overline{GB}_1$ - $\overline{GB}_8$ through L12 and L13 to be used to control tape drive operations:

5.2.2.2 Tape Forward Operation (LOAD, SAVE, SKIP)

During a Forward operation, L12 pins 3 and 6 and L13 pin 10 are high, and all others are low. L12 pin 15 is high only during SAVE.

L12 pin 11 resets L5 pin 7 and causes L6 pin 11 to go high, enabling L6 pin 10 and L7 pin 5. L12 pin 6 causes L6 pin 3 to go low, leaving $\overline{PACR}$ and $\overline{NACR}$ inactive, and setting L6 pin 8 low, enabling $\overline{NACF}$ and $\overline{PACF}$. This causes the Forward take-up motor to turn. At the same time, L12 pin 6 enables L8 pin 13 and disables L2 pin 1. Since L13 pin 10 is high, L7 pin 6 is low, causing L8 pin 11 to go high, energizing the forward pinch roller. With both of the above operations occurring, the tape is moved forward and taken up on the forward take-up reel. At the end of the forward operation, L12 pin 11 goes high, causing L6 pin 11 to go low. This disables $\overline{NACF}$ and $\overline{PACF}$, (turning off the forward take-up motor) triggers MMV L5 pin 5 and triggers MMV L5 pin 12. MMV L5 pin 9 goes low for approximately 15 msec to keep the forward pinch roller energized while MMV L5 pin 7 enables $\overline{NACF}$ and $\overline{NACR}$ to apply a braking force to the tape by turning on both the forward and reverse take-up motors at half speed. This series of events is necessary to prevent the tape from moving when the forward (or reverse) operation has ended.

5.2.2.3 Tape Reverse Operation (BACKSPACE)

During a Reverse operation, L12 pin 3 and L13 pin 10 are high, and all others are low. L12 pin 12 low enables L2 pin 2 and L6 pin 4, and disables L8 pin 13. L6 pin 11 high sets $\overline{PACR}$ and $\overline{NACR}$ active and L2 pin 3 low. The reverse pinch roller allows the tape to move in the reverse direction and the tape is taken upon the reverse take-up reel. The tape

motion is stopped at the end of the operation in the same manner described for a Forward operation.

5.2.2.4 Rewind

During Rewind (from CPU) L13 pin 11 is high and all others are low. L6 pin 6 is low setting $\overline{\text{PACR}}$ and $\overline{\text{NACR}}$ active, causing the reverse take-up motor to turn. L12 pin 3 low sets $\overline{\text{GHS}}$ active, to turn the take-up motor at high speed. When the clear leader is detected, $\overline{\text{LOP}}$ goes high, sending LOP to the CPU. The tape is then deselected by the CPU, $\overline{\text{GION}}$ goes high and clears latch L12. L21 pin 3 high sets $\overline{\text{GHS}}$ inactive, taking the reverse motor out of high speed. L12 pin 6 high disables $\overline{\text{PACR}}$ and $\overline{\text{NACR}}$ and L12 pin 11 high triggers MMV L5 pin 5. L5 pin 7 goes low, setting $\overline{\text{NACR}}$ and $\overline{\text{NACF}}$ active. Both Forward and Reverse Motors are turned on at half speed for approximately 100 μsec to apply a brake to the tape.

5.2.2.5 Power Driver (L559)

The Power Drivers turn the Forward and Reverse Take-up Motors. One side of the motor is connected to M_x while the other side is connected to an AC voltage. When the $\overline{\text{NAC}}$ and $\overline{\text{PAC}}$ signals are active, transistors Q3 and Q4 (or Q1 and Q2) are turned on. The positive portion of the AC signal is conducted through the motor through D4 (or D1) and Q3 (or Q2) while the negative portions conduct through D3 (or D2) and Q4 (or Q1).

5.2.2.6 Speed Control (L559)

During normal operation, $\overline{\text{GHS}}$ is inactive. In this mode of operation, a resistor is connected in series with the motor to ±0V. When a Rewind is indicated, $\overline{\text{GHS}}$ goes low, turning on Q5 and Q6. This places HLC effectively at ±0V, removing the series resistor from the circuit and causing the motor to turn at a higher speed.

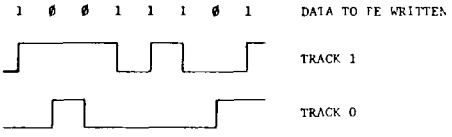


FIGURE 5-16 DATA FROM CPU

5.2.2.7 Signal Conditioner (6175) & Output Buffer (L558)

To insure that all data is read correctly, a two track system of NRZ recording is employed. Track one produces a flux change for a binary "one" while track zero produces a flux change for a binary "zero" of CPU data.

The data cannot be written on tape in this manner, of course, and is converted to an analog current pulse by the Signal Conditioner.

The digital signal for track 0 is applied to the push-pull amplifier Q1, Q2, Q5 and Q6 (or Q3, Q4, Q7 and Q8 for track 1). When the digital signal changes from a 1 to 0 or 0 to 1, a change in the direction of the current through the head winding results. This change of current causes a reversal in the direction of the magnetic flux in the recording head. As shown in Figure 5-17, the magnetic lines of force in the head bridge the head gap through the magnetic tape. The tape head is in contact with the moving tape. As the tape moves, the magnetic particles which constitute its oxide coating are magnetized and create small magnets in line with the direction of tape motion. The polarity of these magnets is ultimately determined by the direction of the current in the head winding. When the direction of this current changes, so will the polarity of the magnets, thus creating a succession of these, with the North poles of one next to the North poles of the next.

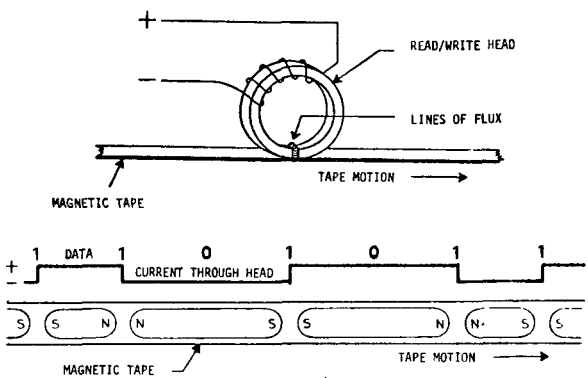


FIGURE 5-17 MAGNETIC TAPE RECORDING

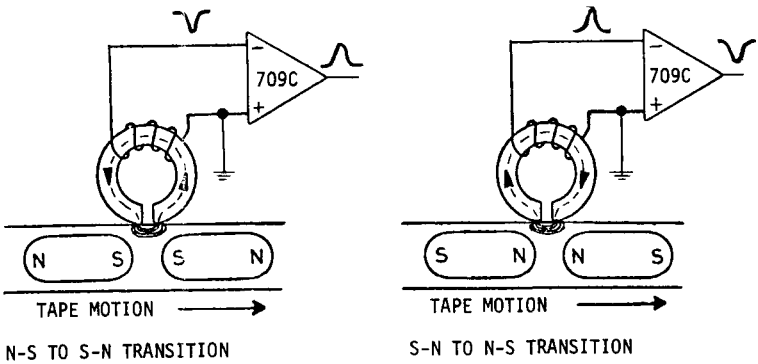


FIGURE 5-18 TAPE DATA SENSING

The read process is the opposite of the write process described above. As the tape and its magnetized portions move past the head, lines of force are induced in the head; when the magnetism changes direction (N → S to S → N), so do the lines of force. Each change is translated into a pulse in the tape head winding, in much the same manner as in a transformer. If a N-S to S-N tape transition induces a negative going pulse, a S-N to N-S transition will induce a positive going one (see Figure 5-18).

When reading data, alternate positive and negative-going pulses are generated as the magnet boundaries are crossed. The data written on track 1 in Figure 5-14 would be read back as shown in Figure 5-20.

This signal is amplified by L7 (or L8) amplifier and applied to the pulse shaping network of Q10, Q11, Q9 and MMVs L1 and L2, producing a 40 usec digital pulse for every flux reversal on the tape (Figure 5-21).

The LTCK and LDK signals read from Track 0 and Track 1 are applied to the Output Buffer and Clock Generator, L1 and L9 (L558). The signal from each track is gated through L2 to trigger MMV L9 and develop an 11 usec clock signal to strobe the buffered data into the CPU. Since there is always a signal on either Track 0 or Track 1 (but never both), one clock pulse for each data signal is generated as shown in Figure 5-22.

FIGURE 5-20

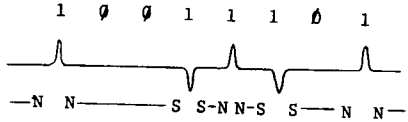


FIGURE 5-21

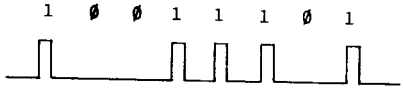
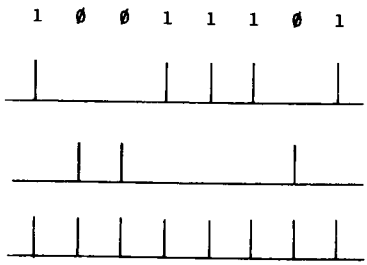


FIGURE 5-22

CLOCK GENERATION



THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 6

CPU INPUT/OUTPUT CONTROLLER CIRCUIT BOARDS

HARDWARE OPERATION

6.1 INPUT/OUTPUT DEVICE SELECTION

6.1.1 *INTRODUCTION*

Whenever a peripheral device Input/Output Controller is to be accessed by the CPU, it is addressed, and an acknowledge signal is sent back to the CPU indicating that the controller is ready for use. Only one peripheral I/O device may be selected at one time. This address/selection is controlled by the user's program via the 2200 Microcode. All I/O controllers are addressed and subsequently "selected" in the manner described in paragraphs to follow.

Although there are hardware differences between various controllers, all are composed of three basic sections: an Address Comparator, a Select Latch, and a Ready Busy Decoder. The select operation is the same for all controllers. Refer to Figure 6.1.

6.1.2 *ADDRESS COMPARATOR*

The Input Comparator compares the data on the Address Bus $\overline{AB}_1$ - $\overline{AB}_8$ with the settings of the address switches located on the controller. When the data and switches have an equal value, the output of the Input Comparator changes from low to high.

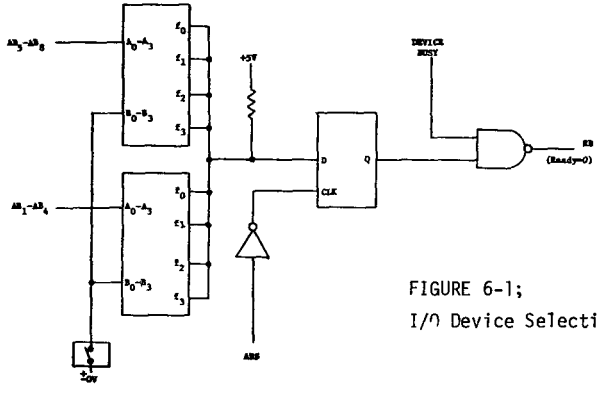


FIGURE 6-1;
I/O Device Selection

6.1.3 *SELECT LATCH*

The select latch is clocked every $\overline{AI}$ time. If the input address comparator output is high, the output of the select latch will be LOW at $\overline{ABS}$ time. This signal is simultaneously applied to the Ready/Busy Decoder input.

6.1.4 *READY/BUSY DECODER*

When the controller is selected (Select latch set), the Ready/Busy Decoder will indicate *Ready* (active low) to the CPU only if the peripheral device is *not* doing an operation. The Ready indicator will stay active until the peripheral device being used generates a *Busy* indicator, allowing the CPU to do another I/O operation. Normally, the device being used will generate a Busy indicator after the I/O Bus ($\overline{OB}_1$ - $\overline{OB}_8$) has been strobed by $\overline{OBS}$, the CPU output strobe.

6.2 VIDEO DISPLAY CONTROLLER

6.2.1 *GENERAL THEORY OF OPERATION*

The theory of operation for the video display controller is explained and illustrated in the following paragraphs.

6.2.1.1 Timing

All timing is derived from an 8.6 MHz (approx.) oscillator. The oscillator frequency has a period of one-seventh of one character. The oscillator clocks a divide-by-seven ring counter which generates timing at character times.

6.2.1.2 Device Selection and Data Input

The Input Decoder determines if the data is a printable character or a control function. Refer to paragraph 6.1 for a description of device selection.

6.2.1.3 Clock Decoder

When a printable character is received, the data is sent to the input of the memory and a Data Strobe is sent to the Clock Decoder. At the appropriate time, a Write Enable is generated at the Clock Decoder and the data is written into memory.

6.2.1.4 Horizontal Counter

The Horizontal Counter counts the number of character times in each scan line. When 64 character spaces have been counted, a horizontal blanking pulse is generated to blank the display during horizontal retrace. When 68 character spaces have been counted a horizontal sync pulse is generated to keep the horizontal oscillator in the display unit synchronized with the controller.

6.2.1.5 Vertical Counter

When 240 horizontal lines have been scanned (0-239), a vertical blanking pulse is generated (vertical blank (VB) blanks the display during vertical retrace). The vertical sync pulse, starting at line 240 and terminating at the end of vertical retrace (beginning of line 244), is generated to keep the vertical oscillator in the display unit synchronized with the controller.

6.2.1.6 Cursor Character and Row Counters

The Cursor Counters keep track of the horizontal and vertical position of the cursor.

6.2.1.7 Cursor Character and Row Compare

The Cursor Row Counter is compared with the Display Row Counter and the Cursor Character Counter is compared with the Horizontal Sync Counter. When all counters are equal, the output decoder allows a cursor to be written on the display.

6.2.1.8 Memory Address Selection

The Memory Address Selection circuit determines the memory address to be used during read and write operations. When a character is read from memory, the address is determined by the Display Row and Character Counters. When a character is written into memory, the address is determined by the Cursor Row and Character Counters.

GRAPHIC EXPLANATION OF DISPLAY TIMING

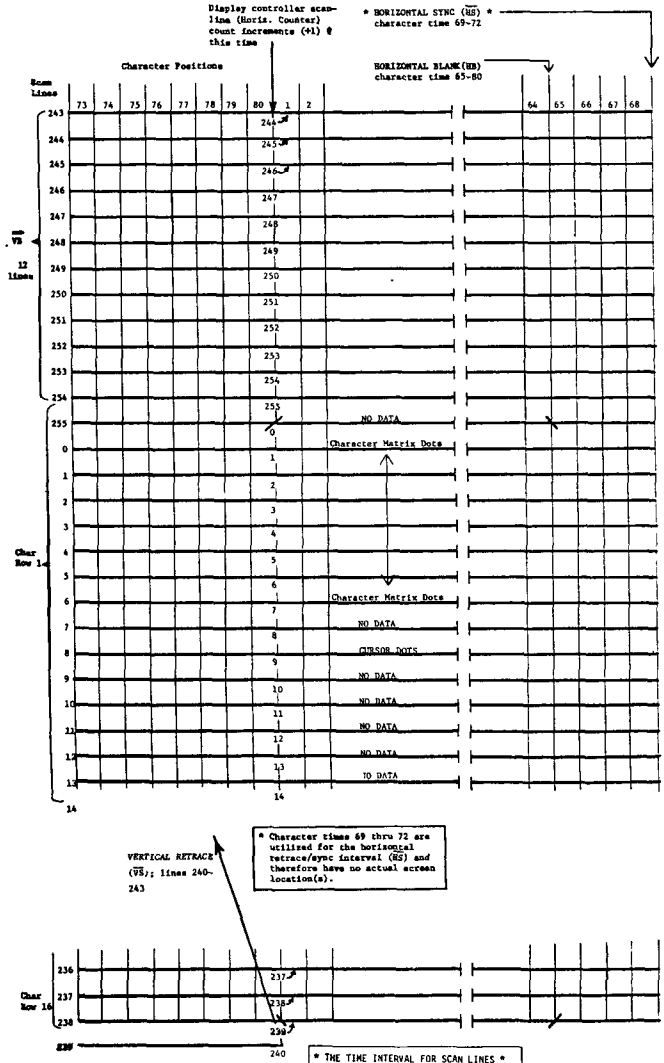


FIGURE 6-2

6.2.1.9 Character Generator Row Select Counter

The Character Generator Row Select Counter counts the number of horizontal scan lines in the character row to determine the address of the Character Generator. When eight scan lines in a character row have been *completed*, the Character Generator is disabled. The ninth scan line enables the cursor to be written, and the first and tenth through fifteenth lines are left blank. When 15 scan lines have been completed, a Step Row Display pulse increments the Character Row Counter and the Character Row Select Counter is reset to zero (0000_2).

6.2.1.10 Character Generator and Conversion

The row address and data inputs to the character generator provide a printable dot matrix. This matrix is transferred, line-by-line, to a parallel-to-serial shift register and the entire character row (one of 16 character rows) is subsequently written on the CRT display screen.

6.2.1.11 Output Gates

The Output Gate determines whether a character or a cursor is to be written on the display screen. It also blanks the display and allows the horizontal and vertical sync pulses to be sent to the display unit.

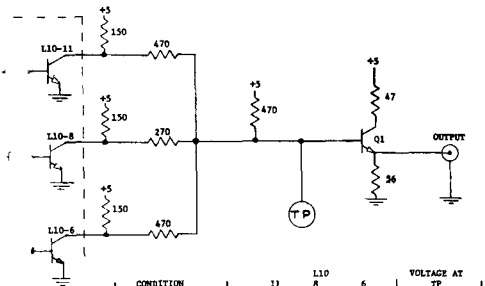


FIGURE 6-3

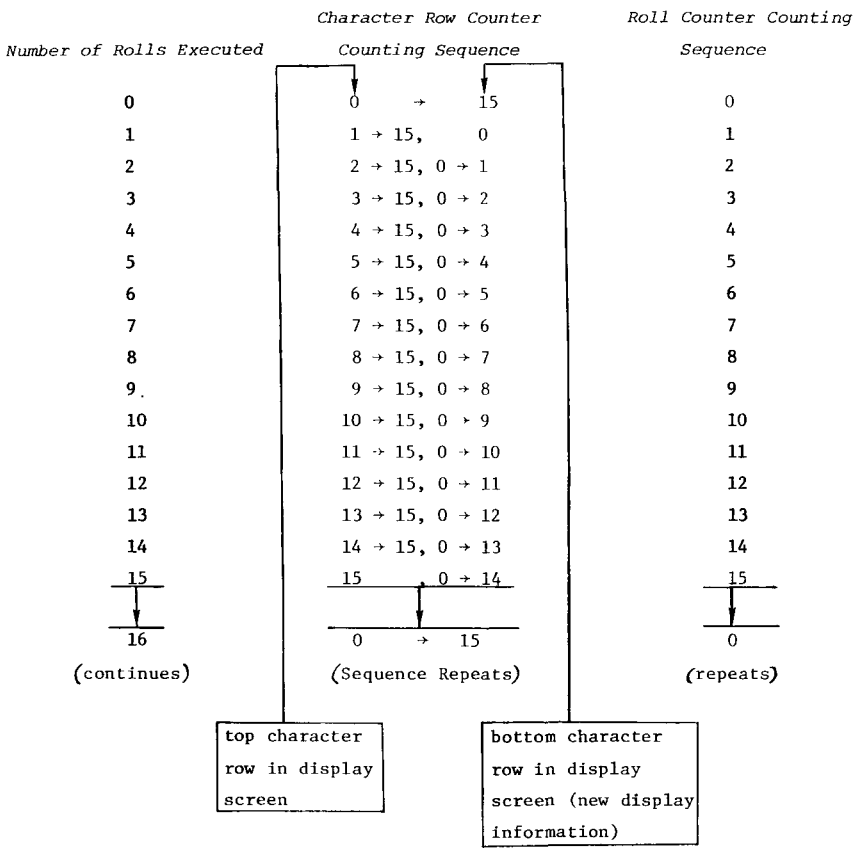
CONDITION	L10 11	L10 8	L10 6	VOLTAGE AT TP
VERTICAL SYNC HORIZONTAL SYNC	0	0	0	1 00
HORIZONTAL BLANK VERTICAL BLANK	0	0	1	2 00
DATA	1	0	1	3 00
CURSOR	0	1	1	3 50

1= HIGH(OFF)
0= LOW(ON)

6.2.1.17 Roll Counter and Compare

A normal display has a 16-character row capacity. When an attempt is made to write more than 16 rows into display, a *roll* is initiated.

The 16 character rows stored in display RAM are addressed according to the counting sequence of the *character row counter*. Whenever a roll is executed, the character row counting sequence is modified (updated) by the *roll counter* as follows:



The roll counter keeps track of the number of rolls executed, and thus causes the character row count to be modified as listed above.

The visual effect is that the top character row is *erased* from display (and display RAM) and all character rows beneath move *up* one *character row position*.

6.2.1.13 Control Function Decoder

When a control function is received, the control function decoder determines the type of function to be performed and increments or decrements the Cursor, Character, and Row Counters for the appropriate number of counts.

6.2.1.14 Control Functions

When a Control Function is sent from the CPU, the Control Function Decoder determines what type of control was sent. If the control moves the cursor up or down, the Cursor Row Counter is decremented or incremented, respectively. If the control moves the cursor left or right, the Cursor Character Counter is decremented or incremented, respectively. If a *cursor home* is issued, the Cursor Row and Character Counters are cleared.

If a *clear page* (ETX) is issued, several actions occur. First, the Cursor Row and Character Counters are cleared to position the cursor in the home position. Second, the memory address is selected from the Cursor Counters and a memory write is enabled. Next, the Cursor Counters are incremented to address every memory location. A "SPACE" is written into each of these memory locations. When every location contains a "SPACE", the clear page execution sequence is completed.

6.2.1.15 Read Cycle

The Display Row and Character Counters are always being incremented. The counters are used to address the memory sequentially. As the data in each memory location is read, it is converted to a dot pattern by the character generator and sent out serially to be displayed on the CRT screen.

6.2.1.16 Write Cycle

When a printable character is sent from the CPU, the Input Decoder sends a Data Strobe to the Clock Decoder, which generates a Write Enable at character time. The Write Enable selects the cursor position for the memory address. The character is then written into memory and the cursor is moved one position to the right. The character that was written into memory is displayed during the next read cycle.

6.2.2 *DETAILED THEORY OF OPERATION*

Refer to schematics 6312A and 6313 for the following circuit descriptions. All CRT controllers operate as described in the Detailed Theory of Operation. Also refer to the Timing Diagram in Figures 6-5 and 6-6. Circuit differences in CRT controllers are also documented in this section.

6.2.2.1 Device Selection

The CRT controller is selected as described in Paragraph 6.1. L37, L39 is the Address Comparator, L36 is the Select Latch, and L10 the Ready/Busy Decoder.

6.2.2.2 "D" Clock and Clock Decode Logic

All timing on the CRT controller is derived from the "D" clock of .116 μsec. L9 and L10 form a divide by seven ring counter to provide timing at one character intervals. BOC, LOAD S/R, STEP DISPLAY CRT, and READ STROBE are all developed every character time.

When a printable character is generated by a PRINT statement or by an input from the primary input device, $\overline{\text{DATA STROBE}}$ is developed and sets Q0 of Clock Decode Latch L4 at HS and BOC times. Q0 generates $\overline{\text{W BUSY}}$ and allows Q1 to be set. Q1 is set at LOAD S/R time, develops $\overline{\text{WRITE ENABLE}}$ and resets Q0 and Q1. $\overline{\text{WRITE ENABLE}}$ is only active during horizontal sync to prevent character flickering on the display screen.

6.2.2.3 Vertical Counter

L4 and L5 form a divide by 256 counter. When a count of 240 is detected at L6 pin 6, $\overline{VB}$ is generated and remains active for 16 horizontal sweeps (until the end of scan line 255). L23 is also enabled at count 240 and is active for the next three horizontal sweeps to provide a vertical sync pulse (VS) for the Video Display Unit. The beam returns to the upper left corner of the screen during VS. Scan lines 244-255 are subsequently scanned from the top of display. Scan line 0 begins at the 13th scan line from the top of the screen.

6.2.2.4 Horizontal Counter

READ STROBE, the basic .81 μsec clock, is applied to divide by eight L8. The divide 8 output is applied to divide by ten L7. Output D is the divide by ten output of L7, or the divide by eighty output of the clock. During the first 63 clock pulses, D remains low. At the 64th clock pulse (after the 64th character) output D toggles high. This output is applied to L18 pin 9 and is called $\overline{HB}$ (Horizontal Blanking) at pin 8. $\overline{HB}$ prevents video information from appearing at the video output connector and increments the Vertical Counter L5.

The D output is also applied to L23 pin 3. When output A of L7 is low and output D of L8 is high, L23 pin 6 goes low, generating $\overline{HS}$. This occurs from the 69th to the 72nd character times. $\overline{HS}$ is gated through the video output gate to the display unit. HS returns the beam from the right hand display scan limit to the left hand display scan limit. The Horizontal Counter is still counting character times and HB is still active. Character positions 73-80 are the first eight character times on the new scan line. After the 80th character time, $\overline{HB}$ is inactive, and character 1 is written in the ninth character position from the left side of the CRT.

L6 pin 8 is active every 16 clock pulses. This is applied to L9 pin 5. When the D output of L7 is high at the 65th character, L9 pin 6 will be low until the 79th clock pulse, when L6 pin 8 is low. The low from the 65th through 78th characters is inverted and used to reset the Display Character Counter L34/35.

6.2.2.5 Control Functions

Data on the OB lines is detected as being either a printable character or a control function. If a control function is defined, L43 and L44 select the particular function and initiate the appropriate action.

1) *Cursor Home* - When a Cursor Home is indicated at L44 pin 10, the cursor must be placed in the upper left corner of the display. L13 pin 12 high clears the Cursor Character Counters L19 pin 14 and L32 pin 14 and L42 pin 2 loads the Cursor Row Counter L17 with the Roll Counter Address. If no rolls were performed before the Home was given, the address will be Row 0. If rolls were performed, the number of rolls must be loaded into the Row Counter to properly position the Cursor. If the Cursor were allowed to return to Row 0, it would appear wherever Row 0 happened to be at that particular time.

2) *Carriage Return* - A line return at L43 pin 6 clears the Cursor Character Counters L19 pin 14 and L32 pin 14, positioning the cursor at left of the line.

3) *Cursor Up* - A Cursor Up at L43 pin 7 decrements the Cursor Row Counter L17 pin 4.

4) *Cursor Down* - If a Cursor Down (Line Feed) is indicated at L43 pin 11, the Cursor Row Counter L17 pin 5, is incremented. If the Line Feed is indicated on the last line (line 15) a Roll is also generated.

5) *Cursor Left* - When a Cursor Left (Backspace) is indicated at L43 pin 9, the Cursor Character Counter L19 pin 4 is decremented. If the Counter is at a count of all zeroes (the cursor at the left of the line) a decrement will set the counter to all ones and the Cursor will be positioned at the last character of the same line.

6) *Cursor Right* - A Cursor Right indicated at L43 pin 10 increments the Cursor Character Counter L19 pin 5 and moves the cursor one space to the right.

7) *Bell* - A Bell indicated at L44 pin 4 triggers L12 pin 5. L12 pin 6 enables L12 pin 11, and every 16 vertical fields, L12 pin 12 is triggered by L5 pin 11. This sounds the audible alarm until L12 pin 6 times out.

8) *Erase Page (ETX)* - When ETX is decoded at L44 pin 12, the Roll Counter L31 is reset, Q2 of Mode Select Latch L14 is set and Q3 at Clock Decode L4 is set. Clock Decode Q3 allows Reset Row Display to be generated at VB time to reset the Display Row Counter. The Cursor Row Counter L17 is reset by loading the reset Roll Counter Output into the Cursor Row Counter. At the next BOC time, Q3 of L14 is set. $\overline{\text{ENABLE B6}}$ and ENABLE WP are set active to allow a write operation in memory. ENABLE WP selects the Cursor Row and Character Counter inputs for memory address selection. ENABLE WP is applied to L41 pin 1. Every LOAD S/R pulse applies a count pulse to the Cursor Character Counter L19 pin 5. After 63 counts, L13 pin 6 goes low, causing a count up pulse at the Cursor Row Counter L17 pin 5. This continues until a count of 15 is reached in the Cursor Row Counter L17 indicating 16 rows of characters. While the character and row counters are being incremented, a "SPACE" is being written into every memory location. The 16th count generates a carry from L17 pin 12 which resets Q3 in the Mode Select Latch L14. This puts $\overline{\text{ENABLE B6}}$ and ENABLE WP in their inactive states, and terminates the Erase operation.

6.2.2.6 Roll

When all 16 character rows are filled and a line feed is executed, a roll is generated in the controller.

The Line Feed is decoded at L43 pin 11 at $\overline{\text{OBS}}$ time. $\overline{\text{OBS}}$ triggers MMV L25 pin 6 which in turn triggers MMV L25 pin 10, strobing L43. When L25 times out, L43 pin 11 returns high. This produces a count up to the Cursor Row Counter L17 pin 5 and triggers MMV L40 pin 6. Since the Cursor Row Counter L17 was incremented one count from 15, its outputs A through D are now low. If this is the first roll, the outputs of the Roll Counter are also low and a compare enables L27 pin 12. When L40 pin 6 returns low, MMV L40 pin 11 triggers, setting pin 10 high.

When MMV L40 appears at L27 pin 13, L27 pin 11 goes low. This does several things. First, it sets Q1 of L14 which generates a Busy (R/B high) and also sets Q0 of L14 at the next BOC time. Q0 produces $\overline{\text{ENABLE B6}}$ and ENABLE WP. L27 pin 11 also clears the Cursor Character Counters L19 pin 14 and L32 pin 14, and sets latch L3 pin 11 to enable L3 pin 4. When MMV L40 times out, L27 pin 11 will go high again and cause the Roll Counter L31 pin 14 to be incremented.

$\overline{\text{ENABLE B6}}$ and ENABLE WP were set active. ENABLE WP selects the memory address from the Cursor Row and Character Counters L17 and L19/L32 and also allows the Cursor Character Counter to be incremented by LOAD S/R. This writes "SPACES" into the memory for all 64 characters in Row 0. When the Cursor Character Counter reaches a count of 63, L13 pin 6 goes low. This resets Q0 and Q1 of L14 and sets a low at the input of the Cursor Row Counter L17 pin 5. The next LOAD S/R pulse causes L13 pin 6 to go high, incrementing the Cursor Row Counter L17 pin 5.

When L14 Q0 and Q1 are reset, $\overline{\text{ENABLE B6}}$ and ENABLE WP are set inactive. Memory addresses are now selected from the Display Row and Character Counters L28 and L34/35.

At the end of the first horizontal line, HS is generated and is gated to L3 pin 5, triggering MMV L2. L2 $\overline{Q}$ produces a count pulse to increment the Display Row Counter L28 pin 14 so the first row displayed is now Row 1. L2 Q resets latch L3.

6.2.2.7 Character Generation

Data is read from memory, clocked through Latch L13 and applied to the character generator L15. The row address is generated by counting the number of horizontal scan lines. $\overline{\text{HB}}$ clears the character generator and increments the Row Address Counter L18. When a count of 8 is reached, the address inputs to L15 are disabled by L24 pin 4 low so as not to generate an additional character in scan lines 8 through 15. L23 pin 8 decodes a count of 9 to enable the cursor to be written on that row. No information

is written on scan lines 0 or 8 nor on scan lines 10 through 15 of each character. L23 decodes a count of 15 to reset the Row Address Counter. Step Row Display is also generated at this time when the "D" output has a positive to negative transition. For a complete display, this occurs for every character row, or 16 times.

6.2.2.8 Cursor Generation

The cursor row and character position is stored in the Cursor Row and Character Counters L28 and L19/32.

The outputs of the counters are connected to two five bit comparators which can be considered as one ten bit comparator with the A=B output at L27 pin 8. When the outputs of the horizontal and vertical counters equal the count of the cursor counters, an A=B is generated and enables L11 pin 9. When Cursor Enable is active in scan line 9, a cursor is printed on the Video Display.

6.2.2.9 Writing a Character Into Memory

When a printable character is generated by a PRINT statement or by reading from an input device, $\overline{\text{DATA STROBE}}$ is developed. $\overline{\text{DATA STROBE}}$ sets Q0 of the Clock Decode Latch L4. Q0 generates $\overline{\text{W BUSY}}$ and allows Q1 to be set at HS and BOC time. $\overline{\text{W BUSY}}$ sets $\overline{\text{RB}}$ Busy to the CPU. When Q1 sets, $\overline{\text{WRITE ENABLE}}$ is active, and L2 pin 10 is enabled. At the next LOAD S/R time, the D0 and D1 inputs go low and reset Q0 and Q1.

$\overline{\text{WRITE ENABLE}}$ is applied to L13 pin 11 and sets ENABLE WP active. ENABLE WP selects the Cursor Row and Character Counters for the memory address, enables L41 pin 1, and enables the data inputs to the memory at L21 pin 2. The data present at B1 through B6 is written into memory at the location indicated by the cursor. At LOAD S/R time, the Cursor Character Counter L19 pin 5 is incremented by one count and $\overline{\text{WRITE ENABLE}}$, ENABLE WP and $\overline{\text{W BUSY}}$ are reset to their inactive states.

Since HS is used to set $\overline{\text{WRITE ENABLE}}$, only one character can be written into memory for each horizontal scan line.

6.2.2.10 Lower to Upper Case Conversion

When both the B6 and B7 bits are high, a lowercase character is indicated. In uppercase displays, it is not necessary to distinguish between upper and lower case and only uppercase is printed. L11 generates a "0" for bit 6 if both bits 6 and 7 are active, indicating the same character in uppercase.

6.2.3 *DIFFERENCES IN VIDEO DISPLAY CONTROLLERS*

1) 6312A and 6312. The 6312 Controllers has one circuit change and one circuit deletion.

   The circuit change is in the device selection detection. Instead of AB_1 - AB_8 being compared with the switch settings, AB_1 - AB_5 is compared. The eight exclusive OR on the 6312A is replaced by a five bit comparator on the 6312. Circuit operation is exactly the same.

   The circuit deletion is the alarm detector L12. The BELL code no longer can be used to sound an alarm.

2) 6312A and 6350A. The only difference between the 60 Hz and 50 Hz Controllers is in the Vertical Counter.

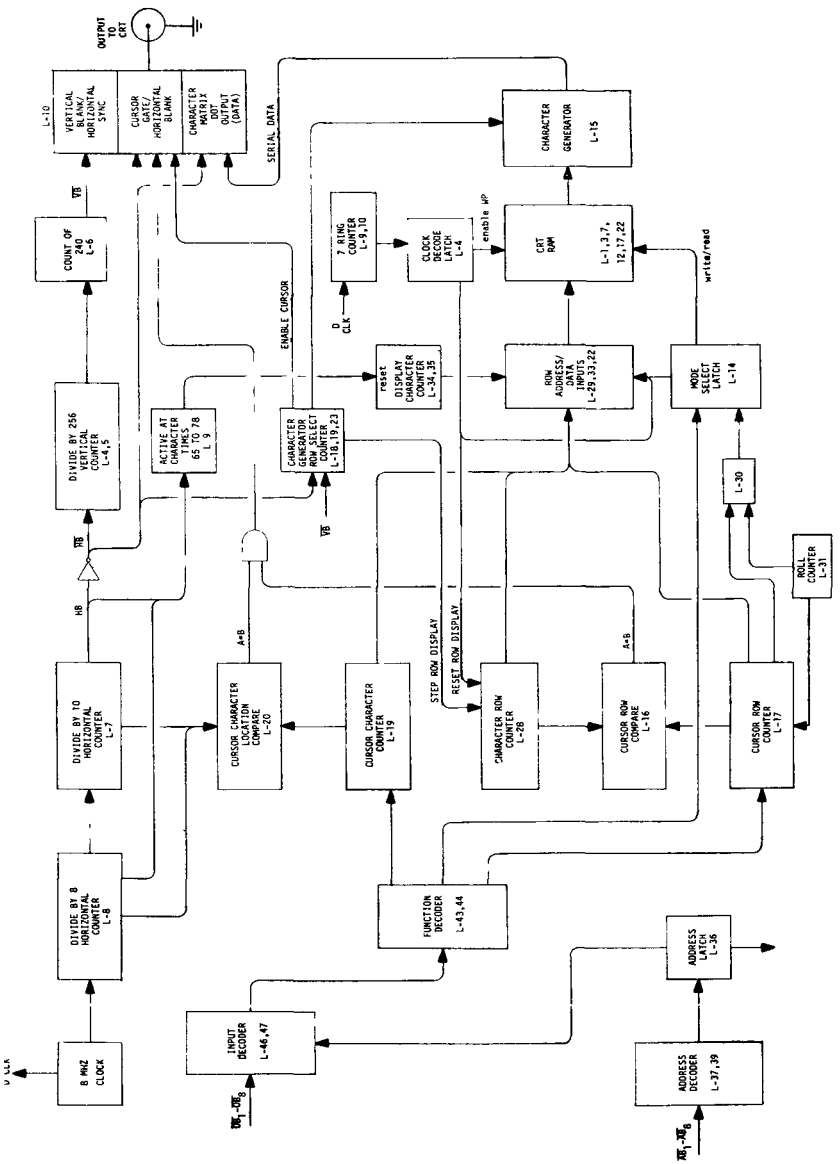
   At count 240, L7 pin 6 goes low, setting latch L10, generating VB and enabling L1 pin 12. At count 256, L7 pin 6 returns high, enabling L1 pin 2. L1 pin 1 goes high at count 288, pin 11 at count 304, pin 5 at count 306 and pin 3 at count 307. Pin 8 goes low at this time and a new vertical timing cycle starts. Vertical Sync is generated at L13 pin 8 and occurs from count 272 to 279.

3) 6313 and 6529. The 6529 has the capability of displaying Upper and Lower case English or Dual Language. When a lower case character is specified, L29 sets L28 which enables character generator L2. For upper case, character generator L8 is enabled.

5/15

6/16

FIGURE 6-4



DISPLAY CONTROLLER - SIMPLIFIED FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM

6.3 KEYBOARD CONTROLLER

The Keyboard Controller is used to input information to the CPU from the keyboard. Since the keyboard is the primary console input device, all CPU control is initiated through it.

6.3.1 *GENERAL THEORY OF OPERATION*

The theory of operation for the Keyboard Controller is described in the following paragraphs. Refer to the simplified block diagram Figure 6-7.

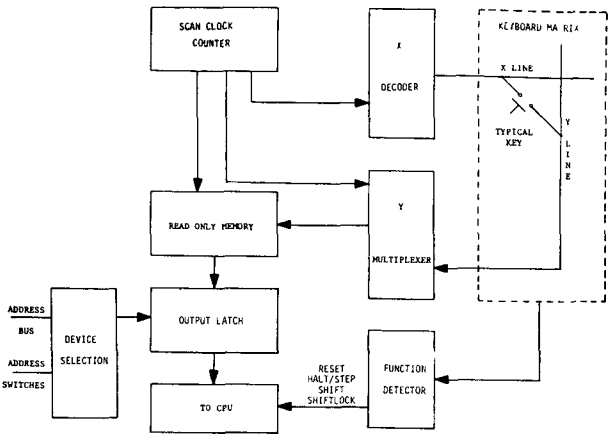


FIGURE 6-7 KEYBOARD CONTROLLER

6.3.1.1 Device Selection

Refer to Section 6.1 for description of Device Selection.

6.3.1.2 Scan Clock

The Scan Clock provides an address for the RAM, ROM and the Y Multiplexer. The clock also provides the necessary timing for the Y Decoder and control functions.

6.3.1.3 Y Multiplexer

The Y Multiplexer receives the strobe from the key that was depressed on the keyboard.

6.3.1.4 ROM and Output Latch

Once a key is depressed, the ROM is enabled for an output. The output of the ROM is stored in the Output Latch until the proper time for use by the CPU.

6.3.1.5 Function Decoder

When Shift, Shift Lock, Halt/Step or Reset keys are depressed, the Function Decoder provides the proper signals for the controller and the CPU.

6.3.2 *DETAILED THEORY OF OPERATION*

Refer to schematic 6367 for the following circuit descriptions.

6.3.2.1 Device Selection

The Keyboard Controller is selected as described in Section 6.1. L28, L29 is the Address Comparator, L21 the Select Latch and L18 the Ready/Busy Decoder.

6.3.2.2 Keyboard Input Cycle

Oscillator L8 is applied to the twelve bit counter L7, L14 and L15. L14 and L15 are the address and keyboard scan counters, the output of L7 being the input clock. For every scan and address increment, L7 is incremented 16 times.

Assume the Q outputs of all the counters have just changed to low. L15 pin 11 disables L24 pin 6, sets AD_8 of RAM L12 high (selecting the upper half of RAM) and enables L23 pin 2. As the counter is incremented up from 0, the Y Multiplexer, the ROM and the RAM are sequentially addressed, and the X Decoder decodes the count for output to the keyboard.

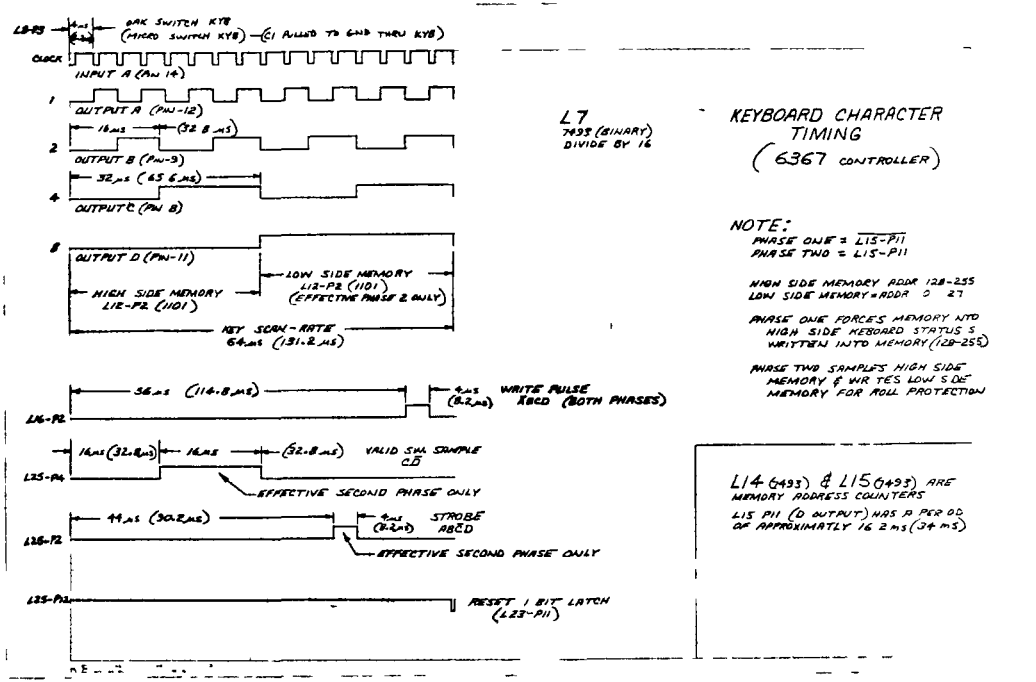
When a key on the keyboard is depressed, the X Decoder output is connected to a Y Multiplexer Input. At some time, the address of the Y Multiplexer and the decoded output of the X Decoder will be equal, causing a low at one input of L6. L6 pin 6 will go high, causing L23 pin 3 to go low, setting the RAM input high. A '1' is written into the RAM at this address at count 14 of L7. If more than one key is depressed, a '1' will be written into the RAM for each key, each at a different RAM address.

After the counter has been incremented to 128, QD of L15 goes high, enabling L24 pin 4, and L38 pin 5. When the address of the depressed key is addressed again, L6 pin 6 goes high, enabling L24 pin 1. Since L7 counts 16 times before the address is incremented again, L7 is used to perform several functions. When L7 pin 11 goes low, L38 pin 6 goes high, addressing the upper half of the RAM again. The data that was written previously at that address is now read. L12 pin 14 is the data compliment, and will be low, enabling L24 pin 5. At count 4 of L7, L24 pin 4 goes high, causing L24 pin 6 to go low. Latch L23 is reset (pin 11 high), enabling L24 pin 10, at count 8 of L7, L24 pin 2 returns low, enabling the latch to be reset. L38 pin 6 also goes low, addressing the lower half of RAM. Since nothing was written at this address, a '1' at the output will enable L24 pin 13.

At count 11 of L7, L24 pin 12 goes high, clocking the ROM data through L33 and L35. At count 12 of L7, L24 pin 12 returns high, clocking FF L21. L21 pin 9 goes high at this time. If $\overline{CPB}$ is inactive, L40 pin 6 goes low, triggering MMV L27. L27 pin 6 high allows the outputs of L33 and L35 to be presented to the $\overline{IB}$ lines and also generates $\overline{IBS}$. L27 pin 7 low clears L21 to prepare for another character output.

At count 14 of L7, L12 pin 15 goes high, enabling RAM Write. Latch L23 pin 8 is still low, presenting a '1' to the RAM data input. This '1' will be written in the lower half (AD_8 = low) of the RAM. If the key remains depressed during the next cycle, L24 pin 13 will be low, preventing $\overline{IBS}$ from being generated. Therefore, only one word will be strobed to the CPU no matter how long the key is depressed.

At count 16 of L7, pin 11 goes low ,setting latch L23 pin 8 high. L38 pin 11 is used to enabled the ROM and output latch when a Special



L7
7493 (BINARY)
DIVIDE BY 16

KEYBOARD CHARACTER TIMING
(6367 CONTROLLER)

NOTE:
PHASE ONE = $\overline{L15\text{-}P11}$
PHASE TWO = L15-P11

HIGH SIDE MEMORY ADDR 128-255
LOW SIDE MEMORY = ADDR 0 - 27

PHASE ONE FORCES MEMORY INTO HIGH SIDE KEBOARD STATUS S WRITTEN INTO MEMORY (128-255)

PHASE TWO SAMPLES HIGH SIDE MEMORY & WRITES LOW SIDE MEMORY FOR ROLL PROTECTION

L14 (6493) & L15 (6493) ARE MEMORY ADDRESS COUNTERS

L15 P11 (D OUTPUT) HAS A PER OD OF APPROXIMATLY 16.2 ms (34 ms)

HOLE LEGEND

	HOLE DIA.	TOL.
DRILLED OR PUNCHED HOLE TOLERANCES	0 .35 in .25	.002 .005
	.26 in .250	.005 .010
	.25 in .500	.005 .010

IDENT	DESCRIPTION	QTY
A		

GENERAL NOTES:

1. ALL KEYBOARD CONTOL CARDS, (6314, 6317, 6528) AS WELL AS 6367 SHOWN HAVE THE SAME TIMING HOWEVER SOME CHIP LOCATIONS ARE DIFFERENT
2. (XXX) - MICRO SWITCH TIMES (CASE C1 PULLED TO GND THRU KEYBOARD
3. ALL TIMES ARE APPROXIMATE.

PREPARED BY: F.R. SOUSA (DEPT 16)
ENGINEER: JEFF JELESCHEFF (DEPT 15)

REVISION	BY	DATE	APPROVED BY	DATE
	DWN		E ENGR	
	CHK	5/16/75	M ENGR	
	E C CONTROL		MFG ENGR	

WANG PART NO | ITEM | QTY | NAME | MATERIAL | DESCRIPTION

WANG LABORATORIES, INC.

MODEL NO 2225/2222

TITLE KEYBOARD TIMING

C 6367

6-21

Function Key is depressed. Since the SF key uses the Y4 line and the Edit key the Y6 line, L38 pin 11 inhibits an $\overline{IB}_9$ output except during Y4 or Y6.

6.3.2.3 Function Key Detector

The Function Key Detector detects a Prime, Halt, or Shift from the keyboard.

1) Prime. L3 pin 5 is normally low. When the Reset is depressed, L3 pin 5 goes high and pin 1 low, triggering MMV L1 pin 6. This generates $\overline{Prime}$ to the CPU and clears L9 pin 13 and L9 pin 1.

2) Halt. The HALT/STEP key is applied to L2 pins 7 and 11. L2 pin 10 goes low when the key is depressed, triggering MMV L1 pin 10 and generating $\overline{Halt}$ to the CPU.

3) Shift Lock. The SHIFT LOCK key is applied to L2 pins 5 and 6. Depressing the key presets L9 pin 10 and L9 pin 4. L9 pin 8 goes low, disabling L19 pin 8, setting A_8 address of ROM L22 low and turning on the Shift Lamp. L9 will remain preset until either Reset or Shift Left/Right is keyed.

4) Shift Left/Right. When either the Shift Left or Right key is depressed, L10 pin 10 goes low, clocking L9 pin 3 and clearing L9 pin 13. L19 pin 11 goes high, setting AB_8 low and turning on the Shift Lamp.

6.4 TAPE DRIVE CONTROLLER

The Tape Drive Controller is used to control the flow of data to and from the Digital Cassette Tape Drive. The controller works in conjunction with the motor and pinch control logic in the Digital Cassette Tape Drive Unit (refer to Section 5 of this manual).

6.4.1 *GENERAL THEORY OF OPERATION*

The theory of operation of the Tape Drive Controller is described in the following paragraphs. Refer to the simplified overall block diagram in Figure 6-9.

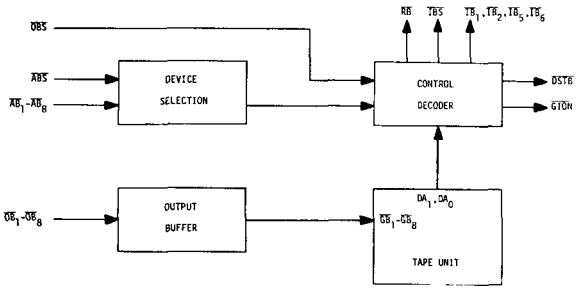


FIGURE 6-9 TAPE DRIVE CONTROLLER

6.4.1.1 Device Selection

Refer to paragraph 6.1 of this manual.

6.4.1.2 Control Decoder

The Control Decoder provides selection, control and data signals for the CPU and the Tape Drive Unit.

6.4.1.3 Output Buffer

The Output Buffer provides buffered data signals for the Tape Drive Unit from the CPU.

6.4.2 *DETAILED THEORY OF OPERATION - TAPE DRIVE CONTROLLER*

Refer to schematic 6316 for the following circuit descriptions.

6.4.2.1 Control Decoder

When the controller is selected by the CPU, L4 pin 5 goes high. This sets $\overline{\text{GION}}$ active, enables L9 pins 2, 4, 9 and 13 and L10 pin 4, and sets $\overline{\text{RB}}$ to Ready (low). L10 enabled allows $\overline{\text{OBS}}$ to generate $\overline{\text{DSTI}}$ for the tape drive unit. L9 enabled allows $\overline{\text{IB}}_1$ - $\overline{\text{IB}}_6$ to be generated from the tape drive unit to the CPU.

$\overline{\text{RB}}$ stays Ready until the controller is deselected or $\overline{\text{BSY}}$ goes active. $\overline{\text{BSY}}$ is active during a tape braking operation or a Rewind from the front panel rewind switch. When $\overline{\text{BSY}}$ is active, $\overline{\text{RB}}$ goes high, sending a Busy condition to the CPU.

The data clock signal from the tape drive unit, $\overline{\text{GOSTB}}$, generates $\overline{\text{IBS}}$ to the CPU when $\overline{\text{CBS}}$, $\overline{\text{CPB}}$ and $\overline{\text{BSY}}$ are inactive.

6.4.2.2 Output Buffer

Output Bus $\overline{\text{OB}}_1$ - $\overline{\text{OB}}_8$ is applied to buffers L6 and L7. The output of the buffers provides $\overline{\text{GB}}_1$ - $\overline{\text{GB}}_8$ as data for the tape drive logic.

6.5 DISK CONTROLLER

The disk controller provides buffering of information being transferred between the disk and the CPU. Since the disk unit has its own processor, the controller is only used to transfer data and strobes.

6.5.1 *GENERAL THEORY OF OPERATION*

The theory of operation of the Disk Controller is described in the following paragraphs. Refer to the simplified block diagram in Figure 6-10.

6.5.1.1 Device Selection

Refer to section 6.1 of this manual.

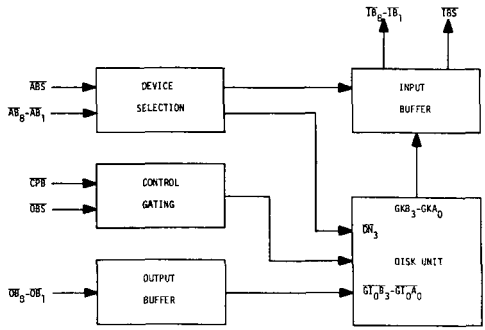


FIGURE 6-10 DISK CONTROLLER

6.5.1.2 Input Buffer

The Input Buffer receives data being sent from the disk microprocessor allowing it to be transferred to the CPU when the controller is enabled.

6.5.1.3 Output Buffer

The Output Buffer provides buffered data signals for the Disk Unit from the CPU.

6.5.2 *DETAILED THEORY OF OPERATION*

Refer to schematic 6541 for the following circuit descriptions.

6.5.2.1 Device Selection

The disk controller is selected in the same manner as described in section 6.1. L11, L12 is the Address Comparator, L13 the Select Latch, and L15 the Ready/Busy Decoder. In addition a Drive #3 Latch,

which detects the '40' bit with the specified address, is used to enable the third disk drive in triple disk systems.

6.5.2.2 Prime Circuit

$\overline{PRMS}$ is initially generated in the CPU and comes into the controller at connector 3 pin 3. When the RESET Key is depressed, $\overline{PRMS}$ clears the Select Latch, Drive #3 Latch and sends a $\overline{GPRM}$ to the disk.

6.5.2.3 Input Buffer

Data $\overline{GKB_3}$ - $\overline{GKA_0}$ and strobe $\overline{GISN}$ from the disk are buffered by L1 and L2. When the controlled is enabled, the data and strobe are sent to the CPU via L3, L9 and L10.

6.5.2.4 Output Buffer

CPU Output Bus Data $\overline{OB_8}$ - $\overline{OB_1}$ is applied to buffers L6 and L7. The output of the buffers provides data for the disk unit. When the controller is enabled, $\overline{OBS}$ is gated through L15 to provide the data strobe for the disk.

6.6 DISK MULTIPLEXER CONTROLLER (2230MXA/B)

The Disk Multiplex Master and Slave Controllers provide a means to efficiently use one disk system with up to four 2200 CPUs. The Disk Multiplexer controls the transfer of data and strobes between the disk and the appropriate CPU.

6.6.1 *THEORY OF OPERATION*

The simplified and detailed theory of operation is described in the following paragraphs. Refer to the simplified block diagram in Figure 6.11.

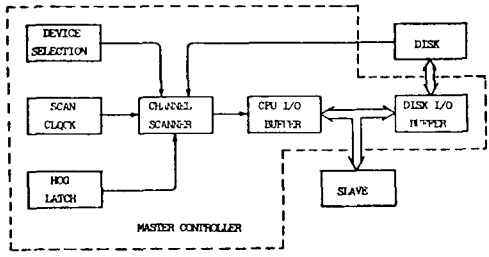


FIGURE 6-11 DISK MULTIPLEXER CONTROLLER

6.6.1.1 Device Selection

Refer to Section 6.1 of this manual for a description of device selection.

6.6.1.2 Scan Clock

The Scan Clock provides the Channel Scanner with two 6.4 usec clocks.

6.6.1.3 Channel Scanner

The Channel Scanner checks each CPU sequentially for a disk access indication. If a CPU is trying to access the disk, the Channel Scanner will connect that CPU to the disk to allow one disk operation to be performed. The Channel Scanner also informs each CPU if the disk it is attempting to access is Busy.

6.6.1.4 CPU I/O Buffer

To eliminate the need for complex multiplexing of each channel, the CPU I/O Buffer uses Tri-State devices for data transfer. When the controller is enabled for a disk operation, the I/O Buffer is removed from its high impedance state and allowed to transfer data to and from the disk. The I/O Buffers on the other Multiplexers remain in their high impedance states.

6.6.1.5 Hog Latch

The Hog Latch connects the disk to a CPU when the Hog Mode program command is generated. The Hog Latch allows the CPU to remain connected to the disk until a program command to disable the Hog Mode is generated.

6.6.2 *DETAILED THEORY OF OPERATION*

Refer to schematics 6785 and 6786 and Figure 6-12. The IC numbers called out in the circuit descriptions apply only to the 6785.

6.6.2.1 Scan Clock

CKL from the CPU is applied to L8 pins 3 and 11. The outputs of L8 are applied to L9 with the CKL clock. Once every four CKL clocks, L9 pins 6 and 8 will generate a Scan Clock 1 and Scan Clock 2 (refer to Figure 3).

6.6.2.2 Channel Scanner

The Channel Scanner is composed of an Address Counter (L20), a Disk Access Request Detector (L2) and Latch (L19), and a Disk Busy Indicator (L3).

When the disk is not accessed, L19 pin 6 is high, enabling L21 pin 6 to gate the scan clock to the Address Counter. The Address Counter sequentially changes the address to L2 and L3 at 6.4 usec intervals. When the disk is addressed by a CPU, one of the four C inputs to L2 will go high, setting L19 pin 2 high. At scan clock 2, L19 pin 6 is clocked low, preventing scan clock 1 from incrementing the Address Counter and enabling L3 to output a Disk Busy indication to the channel selected.

Suppose channel 1 was selected to access the disk. With the 6785 Controller selected, L18 pin 4 will be high setting the C0 input to L2 high. When the address for L2 is 0, the high at the C0 input is applied to L19 pin 2. When Scan Clock 2 clocks L19, L3 is enabled and the

address for L2 and L3 is prevented from changing. If the disk is Busy, L3 pin 1 is low, L3 pin 7 will be high setting L22 pin 4 low, keeping $\overline{RB}$ high ($\overline{RB}$ high = Busy). If the disk is not Busy, the output selected at L3 will be low, setting L22 pin 6 low, indicating Ready to the CPU. All other outputs of L3 are high, so that even if another controller is selected, that CPU will not be allowed to receive a Ready ($\overline{RB}$ = low).

6.6.2.3 CPU I/O Buffer

The Output Bus bits $\overline{OB}_1$ thru $\overline{OB}_8$ are applied to L27 and L30. With the controller selected, L22 pin 1 is enabled. At $\overline{OBS}$ time, MMV L24 is triggered, enabling L27 and L30 to output data to the disk. Since $\overline{OBS}$ is also sent to the disk to clock the data in, L24 ensures that the data is present on the output bus for a slightly longer time than $\overline{OBS}$. Due to signal degredation on long cables, L7A ensures that the disk receives an $\overline{OBS}$ of the correct duration.

The input data from the disk is applied to the Disk Input Buffer. Because of the length of the multiplexer cables, erroneous data is prevented from being received by the CPU by the following method:

The data and the data strobe from the disk are applied to latch L13/L14 and MMV L15. L15 pin 13 high triggers MMV L15 pin 10 after a slight delay. L15 pin 4 low is gated through L18 pin 10 to indicate a CPU Busy condition to the disk. L15 pin 4 remains active for approximately 15 usec to prevent the disk from sending more data to the CPU before it is ready. L15 pin 5 high clocks the disk data into latch L14/15 and is applied to Buffers L10 and L11. L10 and L11 were enabled when L15 pin 14 triggered low. The data is now applied to buffers L28 and L31. The buffers are enabled by L22 pin 6 low, presenting the input data to the CPU. When L15 pin 5 times out (approx. 4.5 usec), L12 pin 4 goes low for approximately 7 usec to generate $\overline{IBS}$. The input data is now clocked into the CPU by $\overline{IBS}$. When L15 pin 4 times out, buffers L10 and L11 return to their high impedance state, and a Ready is now indicated to the disk.

6.6.2.4 Prime Circuit

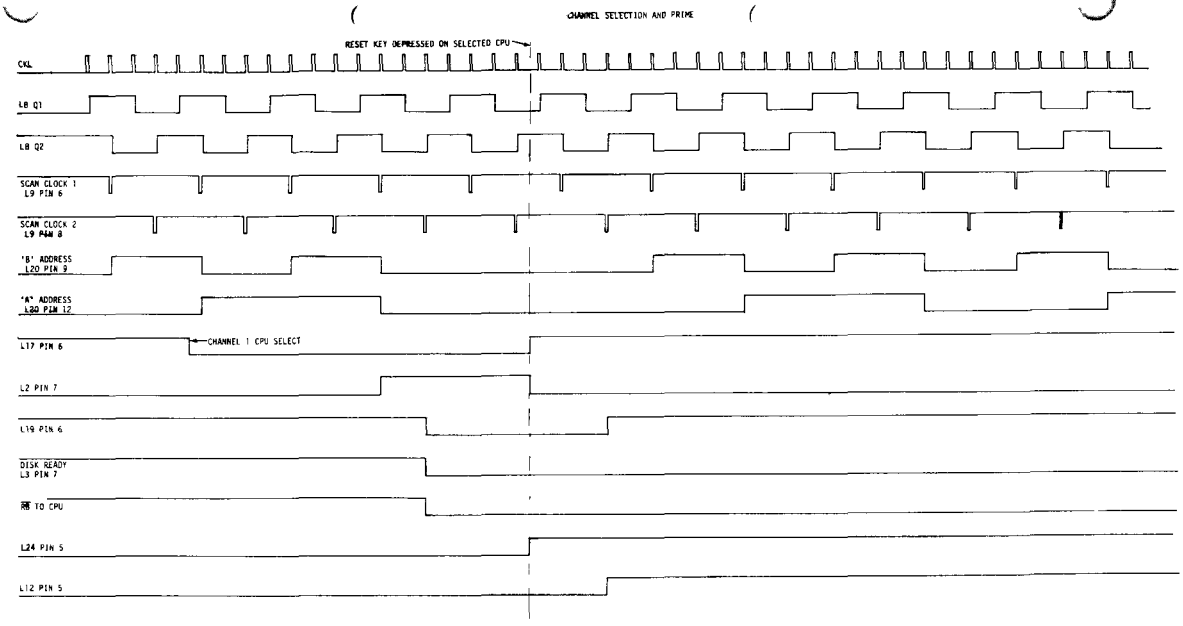
When the RESET key is depressed on the keyboard, a $\overline{\text{PRMS}}$ is generated by the CPU. $\overline{\text{PRMS}}$ clears the Device Selection Latch L17, which removes the channel enable to L2, and also clears the Hog Latch L17A. $\overline{\text{PRMS}}$ is also applied to Tri State Buffer L33, whose output is connected to the same type of buffer in the other controllers. When one of the $\overline{\text{PRMS}}$ signals is present on the PRIME line, MMV L24 is triggered. If the $\overline{\text{PRMS}}$ is generated by a CPU other than the one presently selected, L22 pin 9 low will prevent $\overline{\text{PRIME}}$ from being sent to the disk. When $\overline{\text{PRMS}}$ is generated by the CPU that has control of the disk, L2 pin 7 goes low and L19 pin 6 is clocked high by scan clock 2, enabling L22 pin 9. MMV L24 pin 5 is on for a sufficient length of time to allow L22 pin 8 to generate $\overline{\text{PRIME}}$ for the disk and to trigger MMV L12. MMV L12 pin 5 disables L2 for approximately 150 usec to allow the disk to complete the Prime Routine before another CPU can be selected by L2.

6.6.2.5 Hog Latch

When the Hog Mode is programmed by specifying an address with the 80 bit on, L17A pin 8 is clocked low by $\overline{\text{ABS}}$. This sets the respective C input to L2 high until the Hog Mode is deselected by a program command or until $\overline{\text{PRMS}}$ is generated. The CPU that specified the Hog Mode will have complete control of the disk and cannot be interrupted by another CPU.

6.6.2.6 Drive #3 Latch

When an address with the 40 bit on is specified, L17 pin 9 is clocked low by $\overline{\text{ABS}}$, generating $\overline{\text{DN3}}$ for the disk.



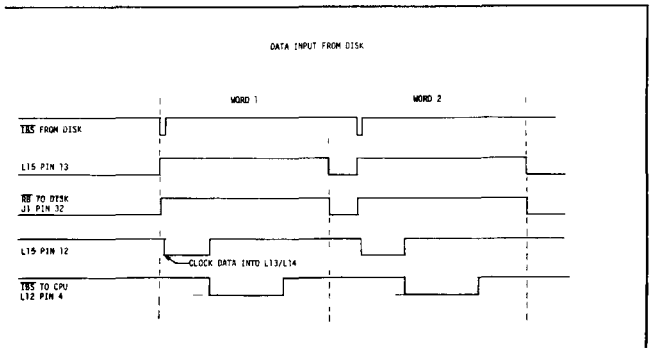


FIGURE 6-12

DISK MULTIPLEXER CONTROLLER
TIMING CHART

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

6/33

6134

NOTES:

SECTION 7

SYSTEM DIAGNOSTICS

NOTE:

All diagnostics will run with 4K RAM, except where specified.

The following units have diagnostics incorporated on diskettes presently:

MODELS:		
	-01	-30MXA/B
	-02	-40
	-03	-42
	-09	-43
	-12	-60
	-21	-61
	-21W	-62
	-24	-70
	-30	-S, T CPU Tests

Eventually, 2200 System unit diagnostics will be incorporated on diskettes.

7.1 MODEL 2200 A, B AND C CPU BASIC DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

7.1.1 *TESTS 1 & 2*

The BASIC Diagnostic Tests #1 and #2 check the following BASIC statements:

LOAD, LOAD NAME, LOAD LINE NO., LET, IF/THEN, FOR/NEXT, DIM, DIM for STRING ARRAYS, STR(), DATA READ/RESTORE, GOSUB/RETURN, DEFFN, TRACE, DEFFN, DATA SAVE, DATA LOAD, LOAD, NAME, REWIND, SKIP NF and BACKSPACE NF.

At the end of each test, a go/nogo indication is displayed. To use the BASIC Test:

(a) Key CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(b) LOAD the program into the 2200.

(c) Key RUN, EXECUTE.

(d) The function being tested and the results of the test are displayed on the Video Display Unit for the first thirteen tests.

(e) When TRACE is tested, CONTINUE, EXECUTE must be keyed after each portion of the test as indicated on the Video Display.

(f) After DEFFN has been tested, rewind and remove the Diagnostic Test Tape and insert an unprotected blank cassette.

(g) Key CONTINUE, EXECUTE.

(h) When DATA SAVE and DATA LOAD Tests are completed, rewind and remove the cassette and insert BASIC Diagnostic Test #2.

(i) Key CONTINUE, EXECUTE.

(j) When BASIC Diagnostic #2 stops, the BASIC Diagnostic Tests are completed.

7.1.2 *MODEL 2200B BASIC DIAGNOSTIC TEST*

The 2200B BASIC Diagnostic Test checks the following BASIC statements:

AND, OR, XOR, ROTATE, ADD, ON GOTO, ON GOSUB, NUM, VAL, BIN, BOOL, CONVERT PACK, UNPACK and POS.

To use the 2200B BASIC test:

(a) Key CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(b) Load the program into the 2200.

(c) Key RUN, EXECUTE.

(d) The function being tested and the results of the test are displayed on the Video Display Unit.

7.1.3 *MODEL 2200C BASIC DIAGNOSTIC TEST*

The 2200C Diagnostic Test checks the following BASIC statements:

ON ERROR GO TO, RETURN CLEAR, COM CLEAR, STR(), DEFFN TEXT ENTRY, PROTECTED PROGRAMS.

To use the 2200C BASIC Diagnostic Test:

(a) Key CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(b) LOAD the program into the 2200. Do not protect the program.

(c) Key RUN, EXECUTE.

(d) When DEFFN TEXT ENTRY is tested, follow the instructions displayed on the Video Display. The following will be displayed after each Special Function Key is depressed:

```
S.F. Key '0      :A$=
S.F. Key '1      :A$="]"
S.F. Key '2      :RUN 280
S.F. Key '3      :PRESS SF KEYS '4 and '16
S.F. Key '4      :RUN 140
S.F. Key '16     :STOP
S.F. Key '5      (CLEARS DISPLAY)
S.F. Key '6      :302 PRINT HEX (03)
S.F. Key '7      :304 PRINT"   *****   2200C DIAGNOSTIC
                                *****"
S.F. Key '8      :306 N=20
S.F. Key '9      :308 PRINT TAB(N);'ON ERROR GO TO.......'
S.F. Key '10     :RUN 302
S.F. Key '11     (CPU STARTS NEXT TEST)
```

(e) Protected Programs are now tested. Follow the instructions displayed on the Video Display. The following should appear after the S.F. Keys are depressed:

```
S.F. Key '0      :SAVE P
S.F. Key '1      :BACKSPACE 1F
S.F. Key '2      :LOAD
S.F. Key '3      :5000
                        ↑ERR 44
S.F. Key '4      :SAVE
                        ↑ERR 44
S.F. Key '5      :LIST
                        ↑ERR 44
```

7.1.4 *MODEL 2200S BASIC DIAGNOSTIC TEST*

The 2200S BASIC Diagnostic Test checks the following BASIC statements:

LOAD, LOAD NAME, LOAD LINE NO., LET, IF/THEN, FOR/NEXT, DIM, STR(), DATA READ/RESTORE, GOSUB/RETURN, DEFFN, DEFFN[1], ON GOTO, ON GOSUB, VAL, CONVERT, NUM and RETURN CLEAR.

To use the 2200S BASIC Test:

(a) Key CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(b) LOAD the program into the 2200.

(c) Key RUN, EXECUTE.

(d) The function being tested and the results of the test are displayed on the Video Display Unit.

(e) This test is continuous.

```
2200S  Memory Test .
2200T  Basic Diagnostic
2200T  Memory Test
```

7.1.5 *MODEL 2200T DIAGNOSTIC TESTS*

The Model 2200T is equivalent to a 2200C with Options 1, 2 and 5 or a 2200S with Option 24. Accordingly, the diagnostics for the 2200T CPU are as follows:

Paragraph #	Title
7.1.3	2200C Basic Diagnostic
7.1.4	2200S Basic Diagnostic
7.2	2200 Memory and Math Diagnostics (MEM-1, MEM-2, and MATH-3)
7.3	2200 B & C Memory Diagnostic
7.4.1	Matrix Option 1 Diagnostic
7.4.2	General I/O Option 2 or 23 Diagnostic
7.4.6	Sort Option 5 Diagnostic

7.2 2200 MEMORY AND MATH DIAGNOSTIC TESTS (MEM-1, MEM-2, and MATH-3)

The 2200 Memory and Math Diagnostic Tests check the RAM and 8 bit ROM in 2200 Systems.

To use the test:

(a) Key CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(b) LOAD the program into the 2200.

(c) Key RUN, EXECUTE.

(d) When asked for, key the memory size in 'k' bytes, EXECUTE.

(e) When asked for, key 1, 2 or 3, EXECUTE for the test desired.

(f) The test selected is continuous. The total number of tests completed and the number of errors is displayed.

(g) If an error occurs, the type of failure that occurred is displayed.

(h) To select a new test, key RESET and perform steps a - e.

7.3 2200 B & C MEMORY DIAGNOSTIC

An improved 2200 memory diagnostic was written for 2200 B and C units. The test checks the memory and calls out both the bad board and bad IC on the board. The board that is called out faulty is correct, but the IC that is called out is not necessarily correct due to the addressing and decoding of all the memory ICs. The memory boards are referred to as boards #1, 2, 3 and 4; board #1 is nearest the 6308.

Equipment Required: 2200 B or C
2215 or 2222
2216/2217

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS:

1) CLEAR EXECUTE
2) LOAD EXECUTE
3) RUN EXECUTE
4) Enter memory size (4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24, 28, or 32), EXECUTE
5) The correct memory size program is loaded and the test begins by displaying LOOP 0. The test is not complete until LOOP 1 is displayed.

7.4 OPTION DIAGNOSTICS

7.4.1 *MATRIX (OPTION 1 OR OPTION 21) DIAGNOSTIC*

The MATRIX Diagnostic Test checks 2200 Systems with Option 1 or 21. To use the MATRIX Test:

(a) Key CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(b) LOAD the program into the 2200.

(c) Key RUN, EXECUTE.

(d) Key 1, 2 or 3, EXECUTE for the test desired.

(e) MATRIX Microcode Diagnostic Test 1 checks MAT EQUALITY, MAT ADDITION and SUBTRACTION, MAT CON, MAT ZER, MAT IDN, MAT SCALAR MULT, MAT TRN, MAT MULT, MAT INV, MAT REDIM and MAT READ.

(f) This test is continuous.

(h) Follow the instructions indicated on the Video Display Unit for this test.

(i) MATRIX PRINT TEST 3 checks for correct output of the matrix.

(j) Follow the instructions indicated on the Video Display Unit for this test.

7.4.2 *GENERAL I/O (OPTION 2 OR 23)*

INTERACTIVE DIAGNOSTIC

The GI/O Diagnostic Test checks the following BASIC statements in 2200 Systems with Option 2 or 23: $GIO (output), $GIO (input), $GIO C6XX and $IF ON.

(a) Key CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(b) LOAD the program into the 2200.

(c) Key RUN, EXECUTE.

(d) Follow the instructions indicated on the Video Display Unit.

(e) If a STOP ERROR message is displayed, key RUN, EXECUTE to start the test again.

AUTOMATIC DIAGNOSTIC

This test should be used in conjunction with the GI/O Test described in Paragraph 5.24. This test checks the following BASIC statements:

$IF ON, $TRAN, $GIO and A$()< or >A, B, C.

To use the test:

(a) Key CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(b) LOAD the program into the 2200.

(c) Key RUN, EXECUTE.

(d) The function being tested and the results are displayed on the Video Display Unit.

(e) This test is continuous.

7.4.3 *EDIT (OPTION 3) DIAGNOSTIC*

a) Enter any statement number and statement,
e.g. 10 PRINT "NOW IS THE TIME FOR"
EXECUTE

b) Key Edit, asterisk will appear signifying Edit mode, enter statement number, Key Recall, statement line appears on screen.

c) Move cursor one step by solid arrow to left or right.

d) Move cursor five steps by dotted arrow to left or right.

"*INSERT*" moves character or basic keyword above cursor and rest of line one space to the right.

"*DELETE*" deletes character or basic keyword above cursor and moves rest of line to the left one space.

"*ERASE*" erases text starting with character above cursor.

Key Execute to exit Edit mode.

NOTE 1: SPECIAL FUNCTION KEYS ARE INOPERATIVE IN EDIT MODE.

NOTE 2: EXIT FROM EDIT MODE CAN BE MADE REGARDLESS OF THE POSITION OF THE CURSOR ON THE TEXT LINE.

7.4.4 *AUDIO ALARM (OPTIONS 4 & 31) DIAGNOSTIC*

PRINT HEX (07) will cause a "BEEP" from the speaker.

```
10  FOR I=1 to 5
20  FOR J=1 to 50
30  NEXT J
40  PRINT HEX (07)
50  NEXT I
60  STOP
```

Run Execute causes five BEEPS and stop.

7.4.5 *SORT (OPTION 5) DIAGNOSTIC*

The SORT Diagnostic Test checks the following BASIC statements on 2200 Systems with Option 5:

MAT CONVERT, MAT MOVE, MAT SORT, MAT MERGE, MAT COPY and MAT SEARCH.

To use the SORT Test:

(a) Key CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(b) LOAD the program into the 2200.

(c) Key RUN, EXECUTE.

(d) This test is automatic and continuous.

7.4.6 *ADVANCED PROGRAMMABLE (OPTION 22) DIAGNOSTIC*

Verify proper operation by executing the 2200B, 2200S, and OP-1/21 (Matrix) Diagnostic Tests documented in this section.

7.4.7 *DISK ROM (OPTION 24) DIAGNOSTIC*

See 2200T diagnostics, paragraph 7.1.5.

7.4.8 *KEYBOARD CLICKER (OPTION 32) TEST*

a) Connect keyboard to controller and turn system ON.

b) Depress every key on keyboard including special funtion keys. Listen for click and check for entry on CRT.

NOTE:
The RESET, HALT/STEP, SHIFT and SHIFT LOCK keys do not produce a click.

7.5 PERIPHERAL DEVICE DIAGNOSTICS

7.5.1 *2200 INPUT SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC*

The diagnostic tape checks the following input devices and are accessed by the following Special Function keys:

KEY	MODEL NUMBER
01	2214 Mark Sense Card Reader
02	2203 Punched Tape Reader
03	2234/2244 Card Readers (Hollerith codes)*
04	2234/2244 Card Readers (binary codes)*

The following equipment is needed:

2200B1, 2216/2217, 2215 or 2222.

Operating Instructions

Enter: CLEAR EXECUTE
LOAD EXECUTE
RUN EXECUTE

The CRT now displays instructions.

1. SPECIAL FUNCTION 01 - 2214 MARK SENSE CARD READER

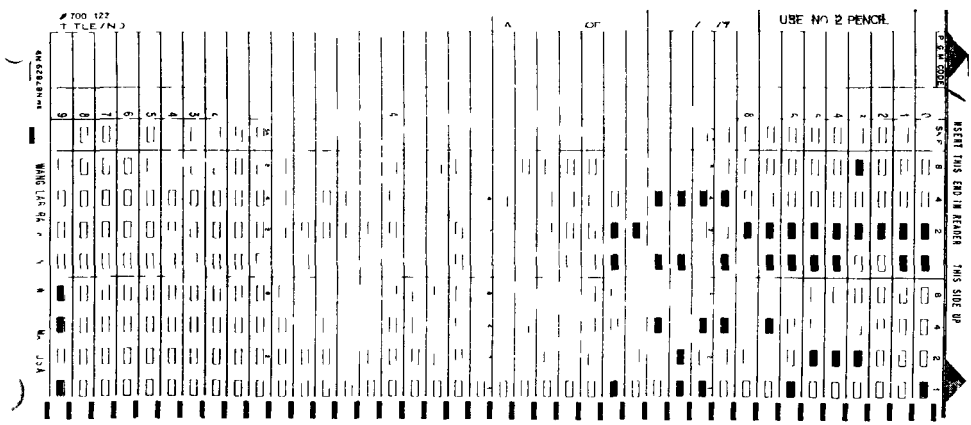
The test consists of entering 17 cards into the card reader. (See end of ISN for card codes)

(a) Load cards 1 through 5. After card #5 is loaded, the next file on tape will be loaded.

(b) Load cards 6 through 14.

(c) Load cards 15 through 17 four times each.
Card 15 checks for HEX (FF)
Card 16 checks for 1 bit per byte
Card 17 checks for skips

FIGURE 7-1 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #1



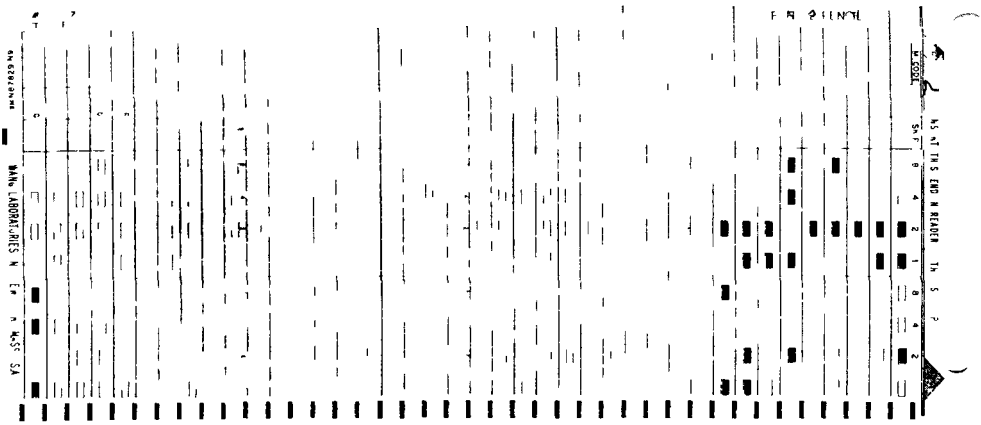


FIGURE 7-2 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #2

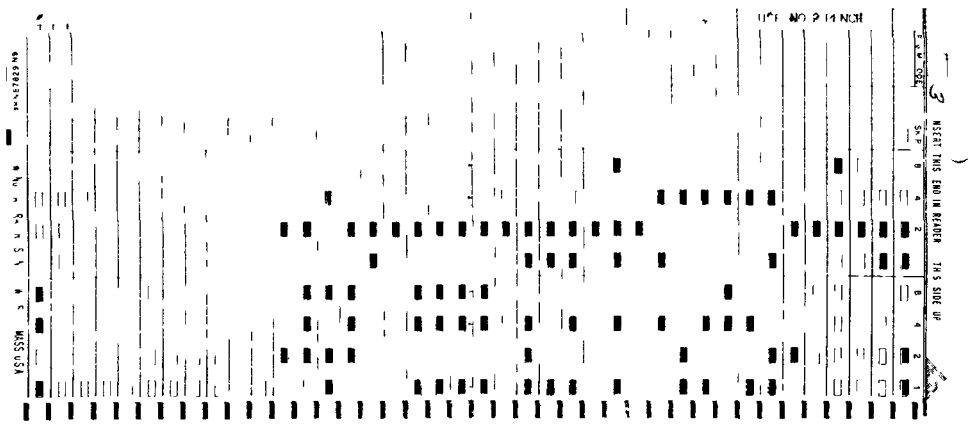


FIGURE 7-3 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #3

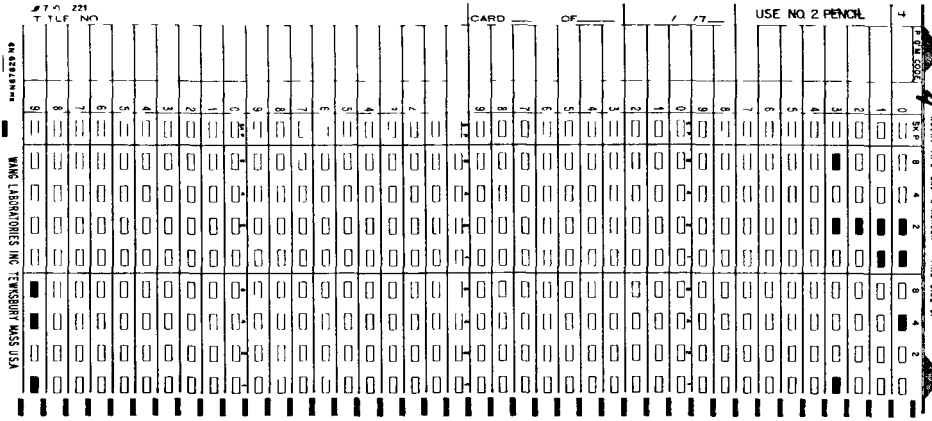


FIGURE 7-4 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #4

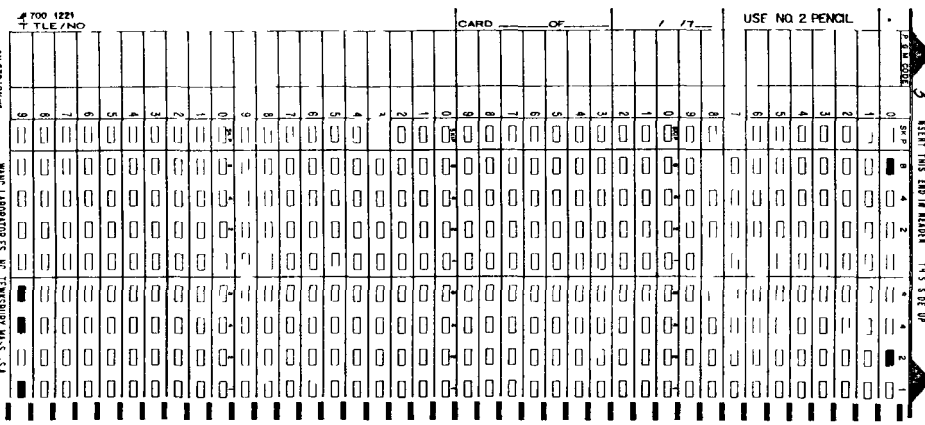


FIGURE 7-5 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #5

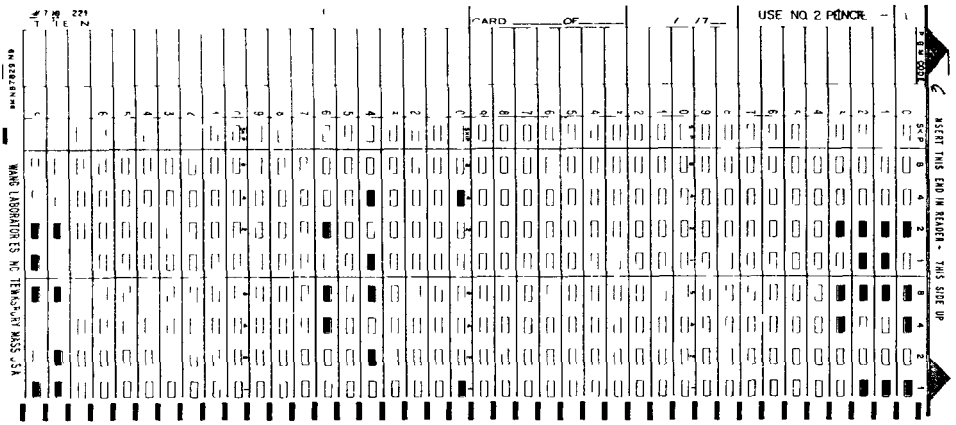


FIGURE 7-6 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #6

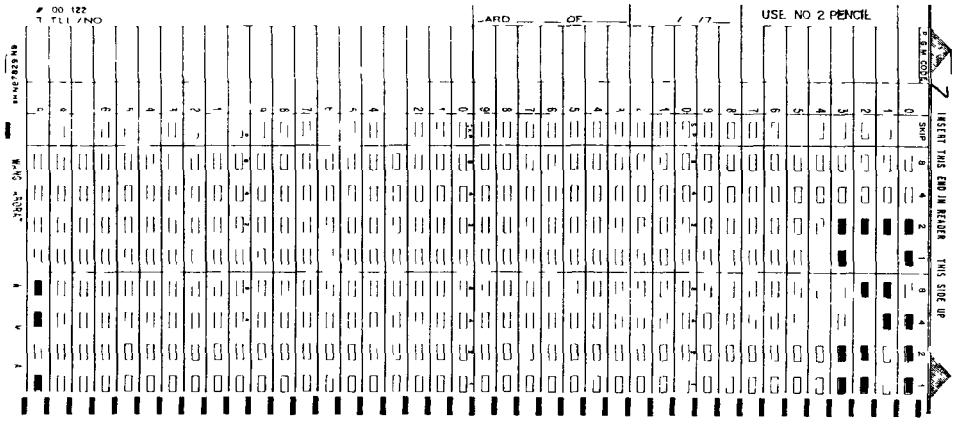


FIGURE 7-7 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #7

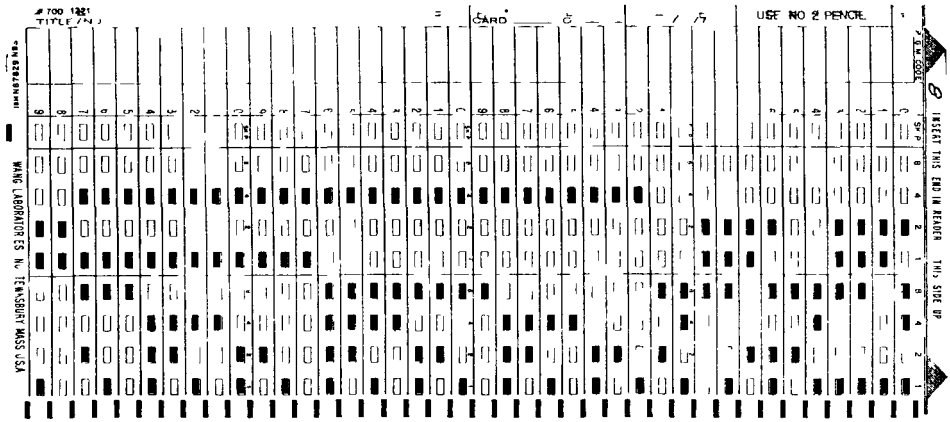


FIGURE 7-8 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #8

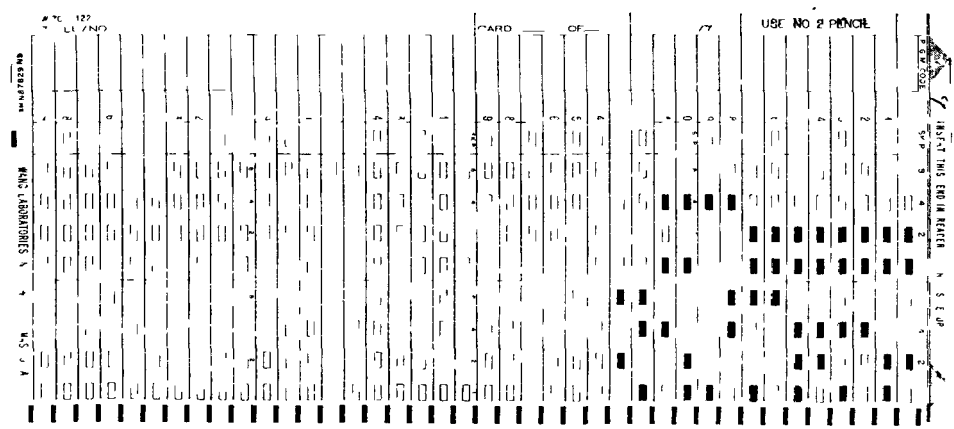


FIGURE 7-9 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #9

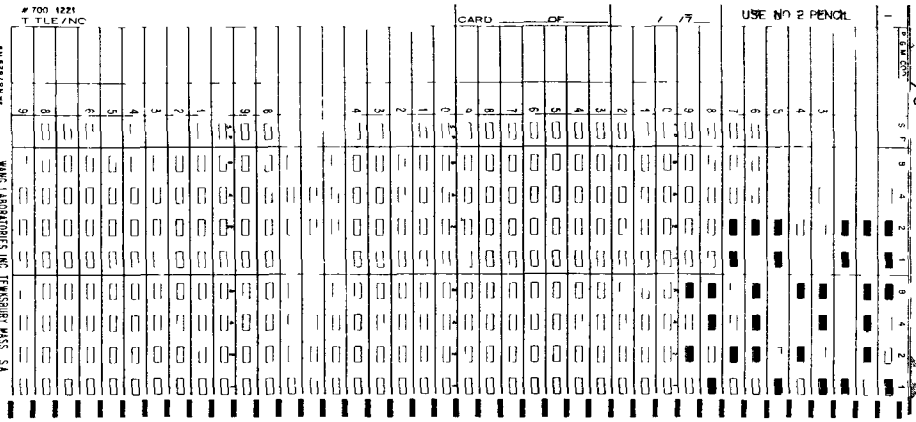


FIGURE 7-10 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #10

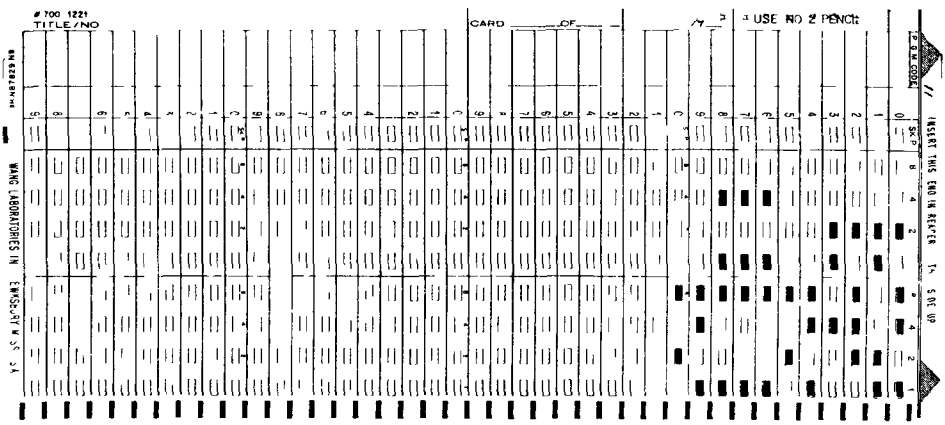


FIGURE 7-11 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #11

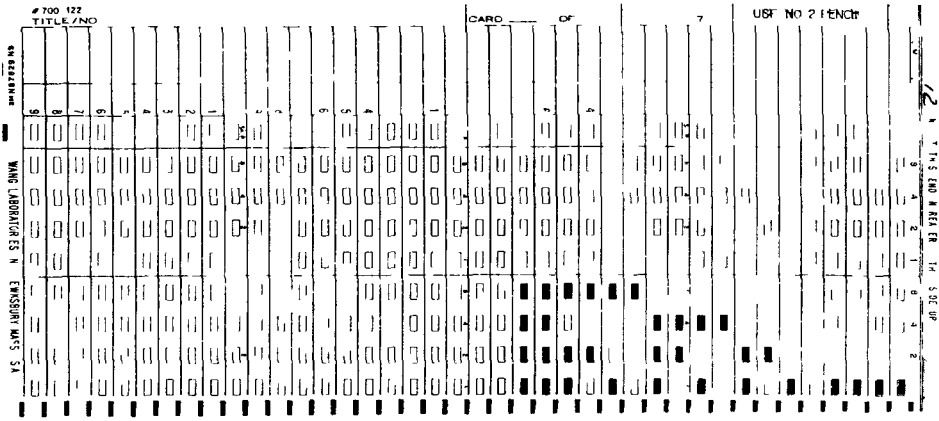


FIGURE 7-12 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #12

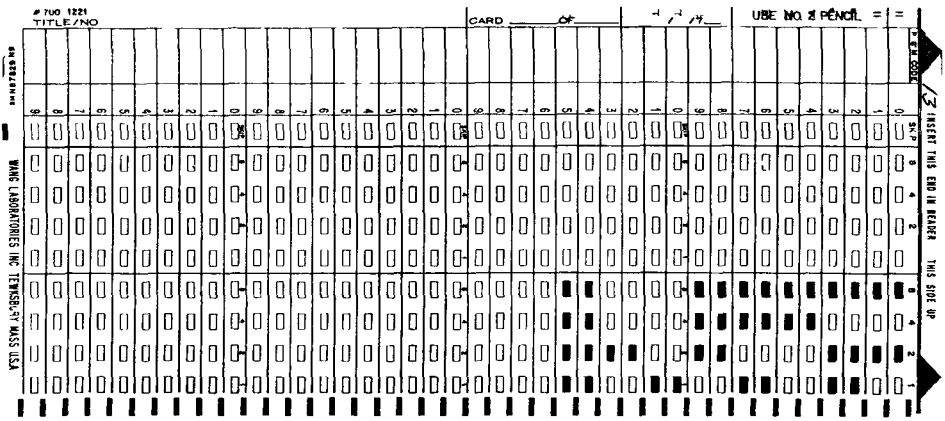


FIGURE 7-13 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #13

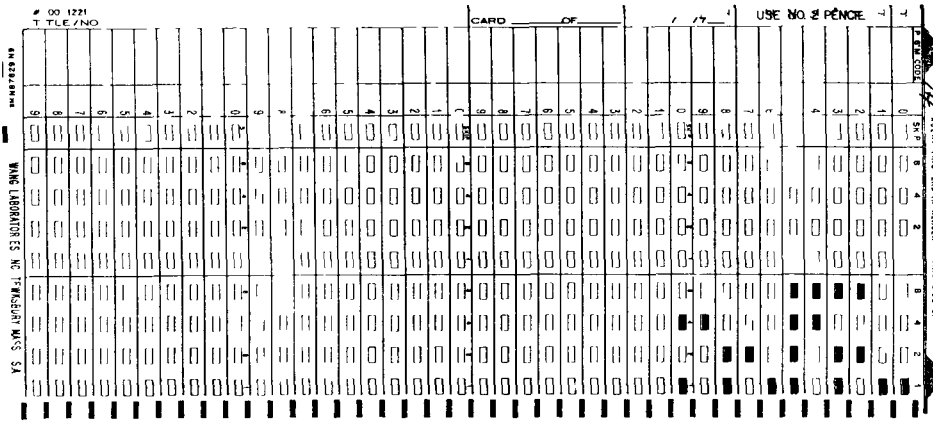


FIGURE 7-14 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #14

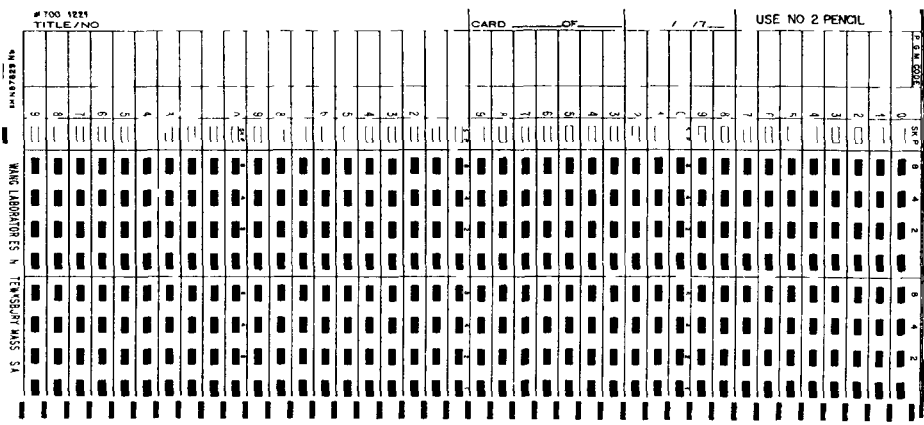


FIGURE 7-15 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #15

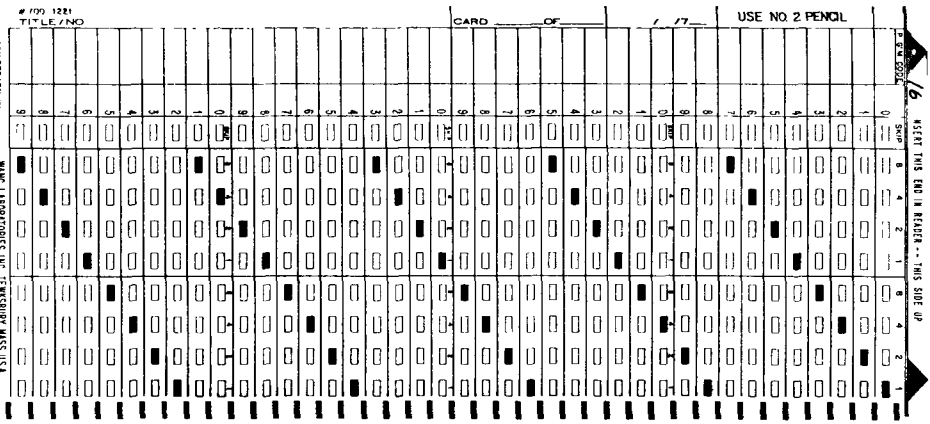


FIGURE 7-16 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #16

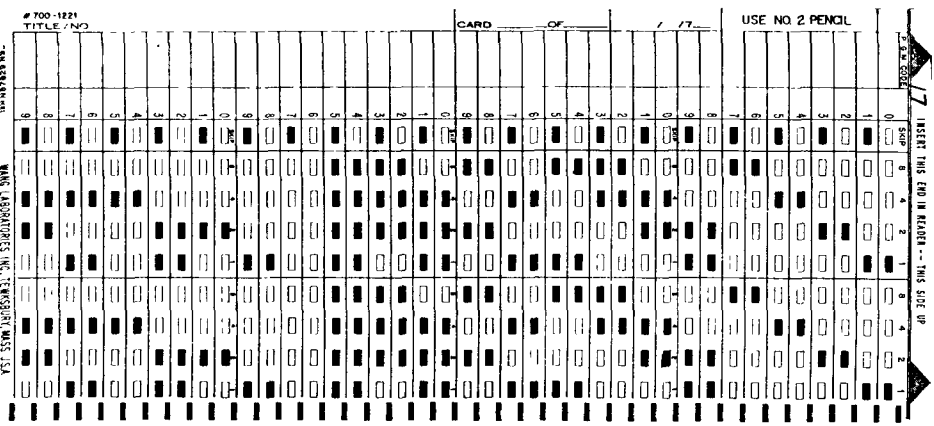


FIGURE 7-17 MODEL 2214 DIAGNOSTIC CARD #17

2. SPECIAL FUNCTION 02 - 2203 PAPER TAPE READER

Special Function Keys 00-03 and 14 use paper tape #1.
Special Function Key 04 uses paper tape #2.
Special Function Key 15 displays the tests for the 2203 on the CRT.

Tape #1 is shorter than tape #2. Make a loop out of tape #1 with a diameter of at least 8 inches.

Key 00 - Paper Tape Reads Display Patterns - The 2203 reads tape #1 and displays the pattern in hexadecimal and binary notation.

Key 01 - Read Forward/Backward Rapidly - The 2203 reads tape #1 forwards or backwards rapidly. Lines 1 and 4 on the CRT should not change since this is the data being read.

Key 02 - Read and Compare Loop Tape Forward - This test reads tape #1 and checks for any errors. The tape must start on the blank section.

Key 03 - Read and Compare Loop Tape Backward - This test reads tape #1 backwards and checks for any errors. The tape must start on the blank section.

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS - 2203 TEST

1) Make loop of ASCII tape; join at blank leader ends.

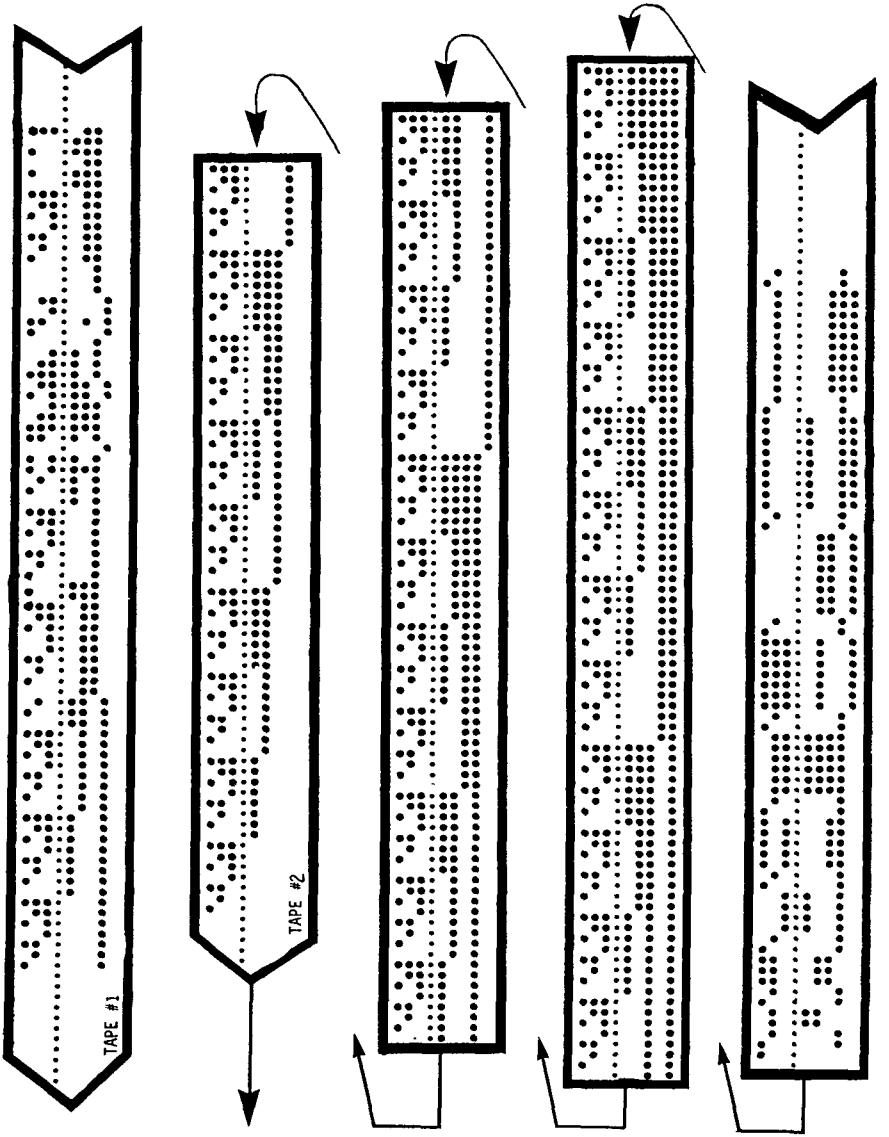
2) Load paper tape into reader.

3) Load diagnostic cassette into 2217 tape drive.

4) Rewind, Load, Execute.

5) When finished loading tape blocks, Run, Execute.

FIGURE 7-18 MODEL 2203 TEST TAPES



RESULTS:

The following should appear in the 2216 display screen:

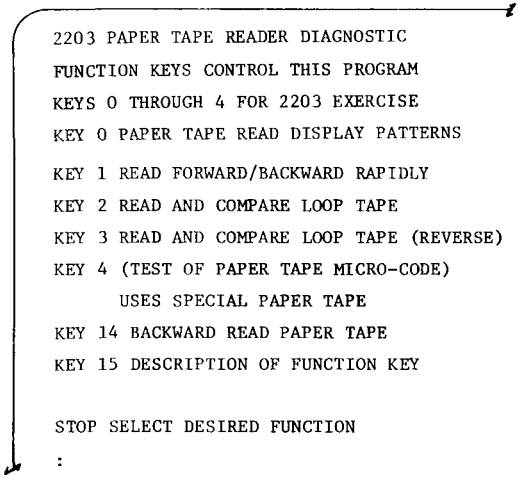


FIGURE 7-19

Key 04 - Paper Tape Microcode Test - This test uses tape #2. The tape must be started at the blank end. To operate, key RUN, EXECUTE, Special Function 04.

3. SPECIAL FUNCTION 03/04 - 2234/2244 HOPPER CARD READER

(a) Reset the card reader with at least 30 of the same type cards.

(b) On the 2200, key Run, Execute.

(c) The CRT displays the results of each card read.

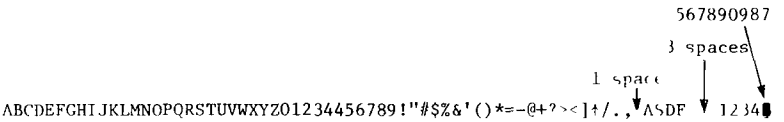
(d) Observe the CRT for any change in characters as the cards are being read.

4. DUPLICATING TEST CARDS AND PUNCHED TAPES

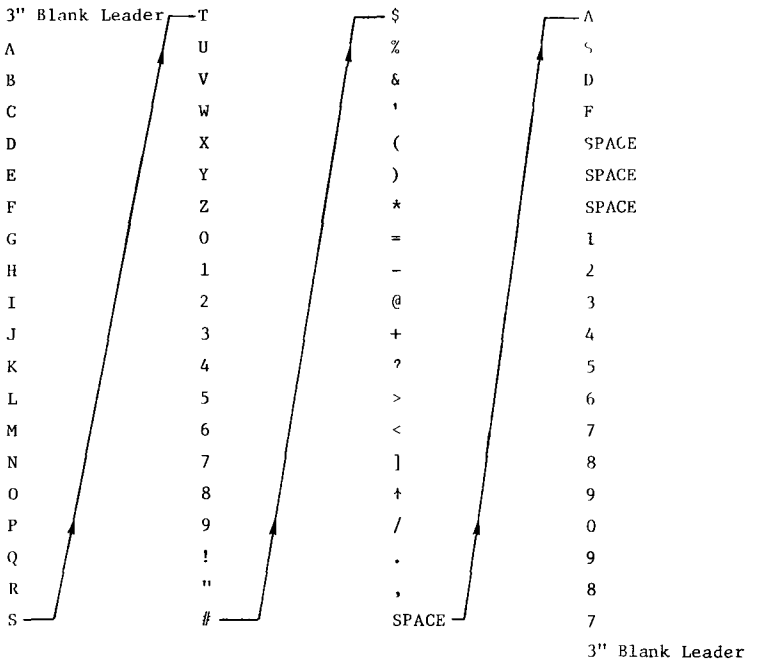
(a) Cards - Samples of the 17 card, Model 2214 test deck are found on pages 7-11 through 7-19.

(b) Tapes

1) The following is the contents of Tape #1. To produce this tape, key the following characters from a teletype keyboard·



DATA PUNCHED ON PAPER TAPE - 2203 [ES]



2) To duplicate Tape #2, enter the following program into the 2200's memory:

```
10DIM C$1,D$1,E$2,F$1
20C$=HEX(00)
30D$=HEX(01):E$=HEX(4142)
40F$=HEX(00)
50GØSUB 210
60FØR I=1TØ 256
70ADD(C$,01)
80DATA SAVE BT/41D,C$
90NEXT I
100DATA SAVE BT/41D,D$
110DATA SAVE BT/41D,E$
120FØR P=2TØ 10
130ADD(D$,19)
140FØR I=1TØ P
150DATA SAVE BT/41D,D$
160NEXT I
170DATA SAVE BT/41D,E$
180NEXT P
190GØSUB 210
200STØP
210FØR Q=1TØ 30
220DATA SAVE BT/41D,F$
230NEXT Q
240RETURN
```

Key *RUN EXECUTE* while holding the "Lock On" button down on the teletype. This button must be held during the entire punching of the tape.

NOTE:
These tapes must be punched on an EIA Standard RS-232 Compatible Teletypewriter.

7.5.2 *OUTPUT SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC*

This diagnostic cassette checks the following output devices:

2201, 2202, 2207, 2212
2221, 2231, and 2232

LOAD the tape and Key RUN, EXECUTE for instructions on conducting individual peripheral tests (listed on Display console).

7.5.3 *MODEL 2207A/2227 DIAGNOSTICS*

A test procedure has been set up for the Field Engineering Division to communicate with WYLBUR, PHI's IBM series 360 computer. The test procedure will be used to assure the customer that 2200 TC units are functioning properly.

IMPORTANT

THESE TESTS WILL NOT BE USED FOR DEMO OR TRAINING PURPOSES.

The WYLBUR test procedure describes how to sign on to WYLBUR, and to playback a test in WYLBUR's memory.

In order to use these test procedures you must obtain the "keyword" from a Home Office Field Engineer. Since the keyword is frequently changed, access to WYLBUR would be impossible without first obtaining the latest keyword.

Before contacting WYLBUR for a 2200/2227 telecommunication test, run the *off line* 2227 diagnostic (with test connector), described below:

This diagnostic cassette has five -07A/27 telecommunications tests. The first block is a general 2207A/2227 OFF-LINE test for 2200 A or B; the second block is a Model 2227 ON-LINE test (System 2200-to-System

2200 via modems); the third block is a 2207A/2227 OFF-LINE test for 2200B CPUs *only*; the fourth block is a Model 2207A ON-LINE Teletype test; the fifth block is the WYLBUR diagnostic.

To load any diagnostic on this cassette, rewind, key CLEAR, EXECUTE, LOAD, EXECUTE, RUN, EXECUTE and follow the instructions listed in this section, along with those listed on the CRT.

(a) Plug RS-232-C Cannon test connector* into Model 2207/2227 controller PC.
(b) Set RCV switch to HEX 19 (Model 2207/2227)
Set XMT switch to HEX 1D (Model 2207/2227)
Set EOM switch to HEX 0D (Model 2227 only)
(c) Plug controller board into CPU and turn System 2200 power ON.
(d) For Model 2207, set the red ASCII/BINARY switch to the BINARY position (DOWN). This will select 8 bits per character with no parity.
(e) For Model 2227, set switches NB1 and NB2 to the UP position (8 bits per character).
(f) For Model 2227, set OPS switch to either UP or DOWN position (not critical).
(g) For Model 2227, set PAR switch to the UP position (no parity).
(h) For Model 2227, set SB to the UP position (2 stop bits).
(i) RUN, EXECUTE
(j) Enter 64 characters on Model 2215/2222 keyboard:

:ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ0123456789:;<=>?!"#$%&'()*+,-./[]↑←ABC

(k) Enter "YES" for continuous test loop or "NO" for one test run.
(l) If characters are received into display exactly as sent, OFF-LINE test verifies good. Turn System 2200 power OFF. Remove RS-232-C test connector from controller board.

*RS-232 Cannon Special Test Connector: #DB-25P; WL #350-1030 (Male) or DB-25S; WL #350-1031 (Female).

Pins 2 and 3 are wired together; pins 4 and 5 are wired together; and pins 6, 8 and 20 are wired together.

BLOCK #2 (MODEL 2227 ON-LINE)

(a) This test may be used in the event of a WYLBUR test failure. Connect RS-232-C cable from Model 2227 controller board to modem. Both Home Office and remote terminal must use the same or compatible modem type.
(b) Call 617-851-4111, extensions 2124, 2125, or 2126 between 9 a.m. and 4:30 p.m. EDT, Monday through Friday.
(c) Home Office: key special function 01 (System 2200) to RECEIVE DATA.
(d) Remote Office: key special function 00 (System 2200) to TRANSMIT DATA.
(e) Enter data shown in OFF-LINE test.
(f) The Home Office should display data received from remote Model 2227.
(g) Reverse procedure; that is, Home Office keys 00, remote office keys 01. Send data.
(h) Remote office should display data received from Home Office Model 2227.

BLOCK #3 - 2207A/2227 OFF-LINE Test For 2200B Only

The instructions for this test are listed on the CRT.

BLOCK #4 - MODEL 2207A (Teletype ON-LINE Test)

Since the mechanical paper tape reading mechanism of TELETYPE units may also be used with the System 2200, the following test will verify TELETYPE punch/reader operation.

(a) With System 2200 power OFF, connect RS-232-C cable from Model 2207 controller to TELETYPE unit. (ASCII/BINARY SWITCH DOWN)
(b) Turn System 2200 power ON.
(c) Clear System 2200 RAM (CLEAR, EXECUTE).
(d) Reset System 2200.
(e) LOAD 2200 Output Writer System Tape. (The 2207,27,50,52 tape has the same test. See Service Newsletter #3-5, General section, item #2.)
(f) RUN, EXECUTE.
(g) Follow instruction on CRT.
(h) All operating instructions for this diagnostic are printed on the CRT.

This diagnostic performs two tests:

1) DATALOAD/DATASAVE (Indicates "OK" or "ERROR")
2) DATALOAD BT/DATASAVE BT (Indicates "OK" or ERROR")

NOTE:
When DATALOAD BT/DATASAVE BT test is being run, hold Teletype punch ON button down.

BLOCK #5 - WYLBUR TEST

If Block #1 verifies good for 2227, proceed with the following:

Set address switches to:

RCV = HEX 19, XMT = HEX 1D, EOM = HEX 11

BAUD RATE: Set baud rate switch to 300 baud.

NUMBER OF BITS: Set NB1 switch DOWN and NB2 switch UP for 7 data bit structure.

PARITY: Set PAR switch DOWN and OPS switch UP for even parity.

STOP BITS: Set stop bit switch UP for two stop bits.

Resultant switch settings should appear as follows:

UP - 110
UP 150
DOWN - 300 ——— BAUD RATE
UP - 600
UP - 1200

DOWN - NB1
UP - NB2 ——— NUMBER OF BITS
DOWN - PAR

UP - ODT PARITY: DOWN-EVEN PARITY

UP - 1 STOP BIT: DOWN-2 STOP BITS

TEST:

1) Dial WYLBUR at 617-646-9600.

2) If using a model 103 modem (or 103 equivalent), wait for carrier tone and then press "data" button.

3) If using acoustic coupler wait for high pitch sound from telephone and place receiver down into cups located on coupler. A light will illuminate on coupler when carrier tone is established. If not, redial WYLBUR.

> NOTE:
> The coupler should be set for full duplex operation.
> EXAMPLE: On OMNITECH coupler, both switches located at rear of coupler must be out.

4) Key special function 00 for 2200A; 01 for 2200B.

5) Enter the word "GTWX" from keyboard and EXECUTE.

6) The computer will respond with "Wang Computer Service". If this does not occur, repeat step three (3).

7) The computer will again respond with "TERMINAL?" ENTER "W33" then C/R.

8) The computer will respond with "INITIALS?" ENTER "FES" then C/R.

9) The computer will respond with "ACCOUNT?" ENTER "FS" then C/R.

10) The computer will respond with "KEYWORD?" Enter keyword obtained from Home Office) then C/R.

11) The computer will respond with "COMMAND?".

You are signed on to the computer system. If you want to play out the program which is already in the computer, follow procedure below.

The steps below follow step 10 of sign-on procedures.

1) ENTER "USE 2200 ON W33002" the C/R.
2) The computer response "COMMAND?" ENTER "LIST UNN", the C/R.
3) The computer will then send the test and it will be displayed on **CRT.**

1) This is a 2200 T.C. test.
2) The 2200 can operate at 110, 150, 300, 600, and 1200 baud rate depending on modem.
3) The bell 103A or compatible can operate at up to 300 baud/while bell 202C up to 1200 baud.
4) The 2200 system can be selected for 5 to 8 data bits per character.
5) The even or odd or not parity is switch selectable. Also 1 or 2 stop bits are switch selected.
6) The 2200 T.C. uses half duplex mode which means it cannot receive and transmit at the same time.
7) You must have received seven lines and this is the end of transmission.

4) When the test is completed the computer will respond with "COMMAND?" ENTER "CLR ACT" C/R.
5) The computer will respond with "COMMAND?"
6) ENTER "SIGNOFF", then C/R.
7) The computer will respond with "OK TO CLEAR?"
8) ENTER "CLEAR", then C/R.
9) The computer will give statistics on how long the terminal has been signed on, etc.
10) The computer will send "END OF SESSION"; this concludes the test.

7.5.4 MODEL 2221W DIAGNOSTICS

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

1. Load tape or disk

2. Key Run, Execute
   (CRT will display available Special Functions)

3. Key desired Special Function Key

   SF 00 - Selects CRT for all Print statements and gives list available Special Functions

   SF 01 - 2221 Diagnostic - Checks printer characters as well as functions. Program is written specifically for a 66 line/page form.
   When used with other lengths of form, the printout will be interrupted by the automatic top of form. However, all functions and characters will still be checked.

   SF 15 - Continuously sends space codes (Hex 20) to printer. Must be used to adjust timing of strobes for print solenoids. Insures that solenoids do not fire while adjustments are being made, thus preventing the print wires from tearing the ribbon.

   SF 14 - Continuously sends character strings to printer for quality test.

To repeatedly send portions of the 2221 diagnostic to the printer, the GOTO statement can be inserted to loop on portions desired. For example, if the audio signal doesn't function, the procedure should be to continuously send the code, Hex (07) to the printer and trace it with a scope. To do this, just insert in the program a GOTO statement at the end of the audio routine, looping back to the beginning of the routine.

7.5.› *MODEL 2224 & 2230 MXA/MXB DIAGNOSTIC*

In order to run this diagnostic, the 2200 CPU and disk unit (2230, 2240, 2242, 2243) must be operative. The programmable hog mode is checked by the test; the manual hog mode must be checked manually.

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS:

1) Turn on all pertinent units.
2) Load tape, REWIND.
3) CLEAR EXECUTE
   LOAD EXECUTE
   RUN EXECUTE
4) Follow directions and answer the questions displayed on the CRT.

7.:.6 *2230/2260 DIAGNOSTICS*

2230/2260 DISK HARDWARE DIAGNOSTICS

This diagnostic is very similar to the 2230 Disk Hardware Diagnostic. It can be used on both the 2230 and the 2260 models.

INSTRUCTIONS

1) CLEAR, EXECUTE.

2) LOAD, EXECUTE.

3) RUN, EXECUTE.

4) The CRT displays the following:
   ENTER 1, 2, 3, or 4.

   1 - - - - - - - - - - 2230-1 Disk Drive
   2 - - - - - - - - - - 2230-2 Disk Drive
   3 - - - - - - - - - - 2230-3 Disk Drive
   4 - - - - - - - - - - 2260 Disk Drive

5) ENTER Y (yes) or N (no) for the first test. This test is long, and may be skipped and returned to later.

This diagnostic checks the following:

(a) WRITES and READS on every sector.
(b) DATASAVE DA/DATALOAD DA using 1 to 10 variables.
(c) DATASAVE DA/DATALOAD DA using Alphanumeric variables.
(d) DATASAVE DA/DATALOAD DA using Alphanumeric arrays.
(e) DATASAVE BA/DATALOAD BA using Numeric and Alpha.
(f) Numeric Sector Addressing.
(g) READ after a WRITE.

Hardware diagnostics yield the following results:

TEST A:

FIXED DISK
ERRORS = X Y.Z%

REMOVABLE DISK:
ERRORS = X Y.Z%

Where: X = Quantity of errors
Y.Z = Percentage; indicates number of sectors failed vs. total number of sectors on the disk under test.

TEST B:

FIXED DISK

Testing DATASAVE DA, DATALOAD DA, using from 1 to 10 variables.

Loop # ( ) Complete (1 - 5 loop count)

REMOVABLE DISK

Testing DATASAVE DA, DATALOAD DA, using from 1 to 10 variables.

Loop # ( ) Complete (1 - 5 loop count)

TEST C:

FIXED DISK:

Alpha-numeric variables

Loop # ( ) Complete (1 - 5 loop count)

REMOVABLE DISK:

Alpha-numeric variables

Loop # ( ) Complete (1 - 5 loop count)

TEST D:

FIXED DISK:

Alpha and Numeric Arrays

Loop # ( ) Complete (1 - 5 loop counter)

REMOVABLE DISK

Alpha and Numeric Arrays

Loop # ( ) Complete (1 - 5 loop counter)

TEST E:

FIXED DISK:

Testing DATASAVE BA, DATALOAD BA, using numeric and alphanumeric sector addressing.

Loop # ( ) Complete (1 - 5 loop counter)

REMOVABLE DISK:

Testing DATASAVE BA, DATALOAD BA, using numeric and alphanumeric sector addressing.

Loop # ( ) Complete (1 - 5 loop counter)

TEST F:

FIXED DISK:

Read after Write at random locations.

LOCATION ##### TOTAL SECTORS ###

(0 - 19,583) (1 - 260) count

REMOVABLE DISK:

Read after Write at random locations.

LOCATION ##### TOTAL SECTORS ###

(0 - 19,583) (1 - 260) counter

When TEST F completes, the cassette automatically rewinds and reloads the first block, to allow continued testing.

NOTE: A failure in tests B through E produces "STOP ERROR" on CRT, and processing halts.

A failure in test F produces ERROR 85 on CRT.

This diagnostic is exactly the same as the 2230 MICROCODE Diagnostic except that it has been expanded for the 2260 addresses.

INSTRUCTIONS

1) CLEAR, EXECUTE.

2) LOAD, EXECUTE.

3) RUN, EXECUTE.

4) ENTER 1, 2, 3, or 4 for the following:

1 - - - - - - - - - - 2230-1 Disk Drive
2 - - - - - - - - - - 2230-2 Disk Drive
3 - - - - - - - - - - 2230-3 Disk Drive
4 - - - - - - - - - - 2260 Disk Drive

This diagnostic checks the following instructions:

DATALOAD/DATASAVE DC OPEN
DATALOAD/DATASAVE DC
DATALOAD/DATASAVE DA
DATALOAD/DATASAVE BA
DSKIP, DBACKSPACE
VERIFY
LIMITS
MOVE END
CATALOG INDEX
SCRATCH DISK
COPY
MOVE
DATASAVE DC CLOSE
SCRATCH

A test passed prints "OK" on the CRT; a test failure results in "ERROR" on the CRT.

7.5.7 *MODEL 2230 MXA & MXB DIAGNOSTICS*

See paragraph 7.5.5.

7.5.8 *MODEL 2234/2244 DIAGNOSTICS*

7.5.8.1 Electromechanical Tests

There are four card reader errors that are detected and displayed on the light panel of the 34/44. They are:

1) Read Check
2) Pick Check
3) Stack Check (stacker full)
4) Hopper Check (Hopper empty)

To simulate these errors in the 34/44, place card reader in local status (card reader need not be connected to 2200) and place approximately 300 standard 80 column punched or mark sense cards in the card reader hopper.

1. Read Check - depress reset pushbutton to initiate card feeding. Place one hand on top of card stack and press firmly until the picking and feeding of cards becomes slightly erratic. This pressure is meant to alter the constant speed of the card as it passes beneath the read head. With the correct pressure (a little experimentation will be necessary here) a read check error can be produced.

2. Pick Check - depress reset pushbutton to again initiate card movement through the card reader. Place one hand on top of the card deck and apply sufficient pressure to prevent the picker section from actually selecting the next card and sending it into the drive rollers that guide the card beneath the read station. The picker section will attempt to pick the card six times and then, if a card is not sent through the reader in this time frame, a pick check error is produced.

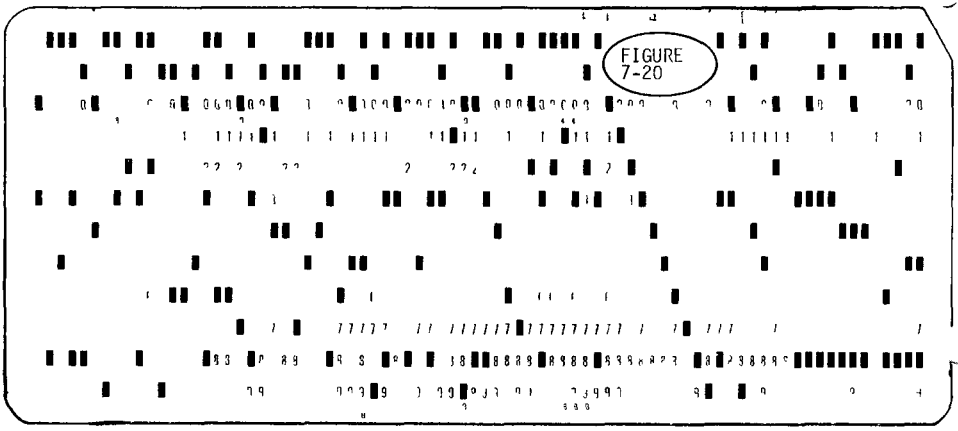
3 Stack Check which is also called stacker full, can be simply checked by pulling downward the stacker bin which receives cards that have been read by the card reader. There is a microswitch behind the stacker bin which is actuated when the bin is depressed by a full load of cards If this test fails and a bad microswitch is suspected, depress reset pushbutton to initiate card flow and place one hand, palm up, in the stacker section near where the cards are fed out from the read station. The desired result is to slow or stop a card as it passes from the read station and simulate a deck of cards filling the stacker, with no more room for any cards to be fed through the reader

4 Hopper Check - also called hopper empty can be initiated by initiating card flow and lifting the deck of cards in the hopper to be read, so that the microswitch located at the bottom of the hopper will spring upward This will indicate a hopper empty (no cards in hopper) condition and illuminate the error light

7 8.2 Data Tests

The test described below verifies proper operation of a WANG 2234 (DOCUMATION M-200) or a WANG 2244 (DOCUMATION IM-200) when used with a 6534 I/O controller PC

This test may be performed only with 80 column punch cards (2234) or with 80 column mark sense cards (2244). Use the following card format



Each card read performs one complete test loop

Instructions for operation are as follows

(a) Place INPUT SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC cassette in 2217 tape drive, close drive door, rewind cassette.

(b) CLEAR, EXECUTE.

(c) With 2234/44 ON, load a stack (5 to 10 diagnostic test cards) into the reader input hopper. Press RESET on the card reader.

(d) LOAD, EXECUTE

(e) Key special function
03 - for reading HOLLERITH data
04 - for reading BINARY data

(f) The proper block on tape will be automatically loaded and card reading will begin.

(g) If any errors occur, the HEX values read will immediately be displayed on the CRT. Comparison to predetermined "good data values" (see [ ]) should reveal the symptoms of a reader/controller problem.

7.5.9 *MODEL 2234A OR 2244A DIAGNOSTICS*

7.5.9.1 See Paragraph 7.5.8.1.

7.5.9.2 Data/Program Tests

ASSEMBLY OF 2234A/44A TEST CARD DECK

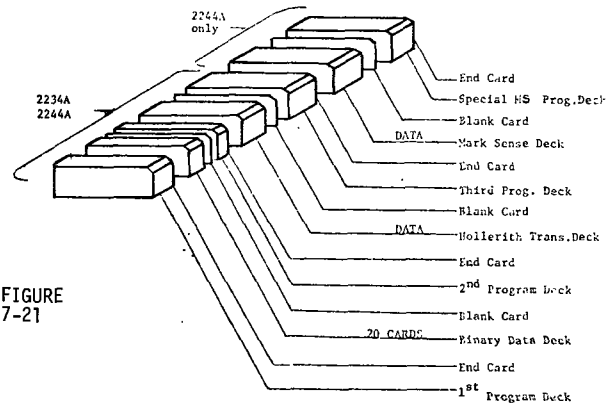


FIGURE 7-21

1. Take the Program Card Deck and divide it into three respective programs. (Look for the END card at the end of each program, it has an "E" punched in the 80th column). The end cards for each program appears as follows:

1st program	1370 LOAD/62B	E
2nd program	1560 LOAD/62B	E
3rd program	1370 LOAD/62B	E

2. Take twenty cards of PRHV card, shown in Fig. #7-22, with a blank card at the end of the deck and place it behind the 1st program deck. (Be sure to check for the number of cards).

3. Take 20 cards of each of the following card: HTD-1, HTD-2, HTD-3, HTD-4 and HTD-5, shown in Fig. #7-23, #7-24, #7-25, #7-26, and #7-27 and place a blank card at the end of the deck.

4. Take 20 80-column mark sense cards and mark them, shown in Fig. #7-28, with a No. 2 pencil. Place a blank card at the end of the mark sense deck.

5. Take a deck of the Wang Special Educational Program cards and mark them as shown in the sheets provided.

6. Combine the decks and the program together, shown in Fig. #7-21.

FIGURE 7-22; PRHV 1 SAMPLE CARD

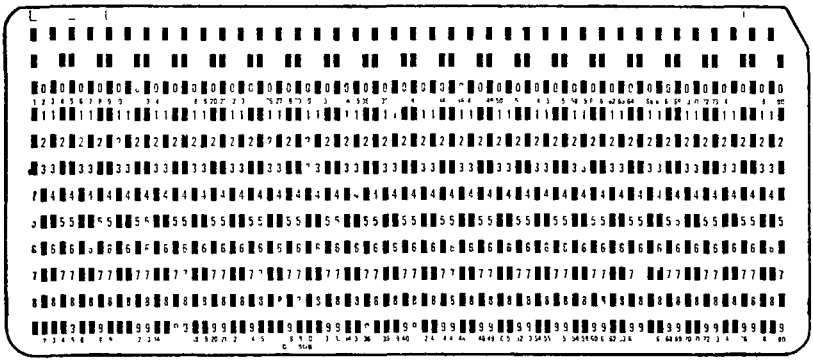


FIGURE 7-23; HTD-1 SAMPLE CARD

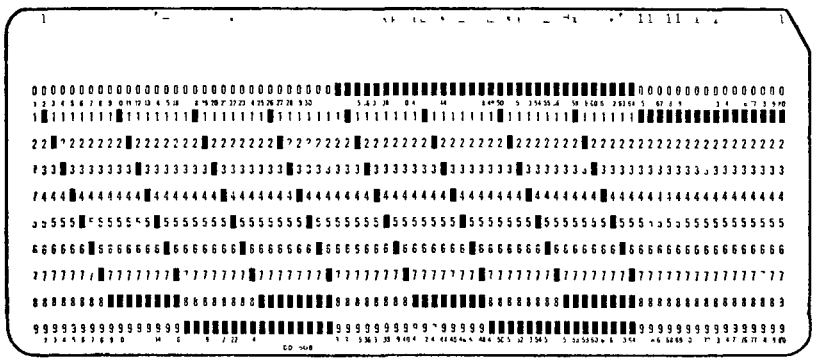


FIGURE 7-24; HTD-2 SAMPLE CARD

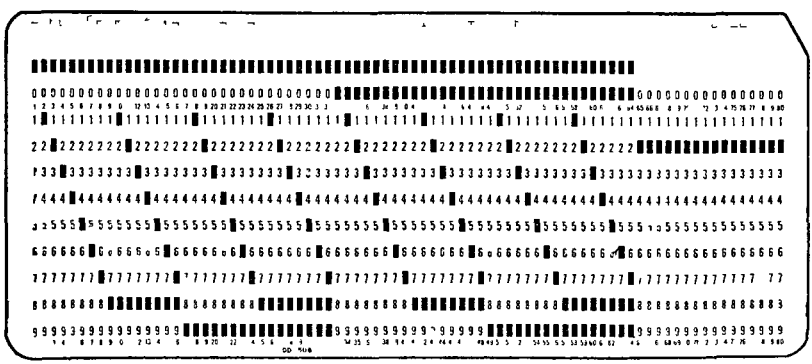
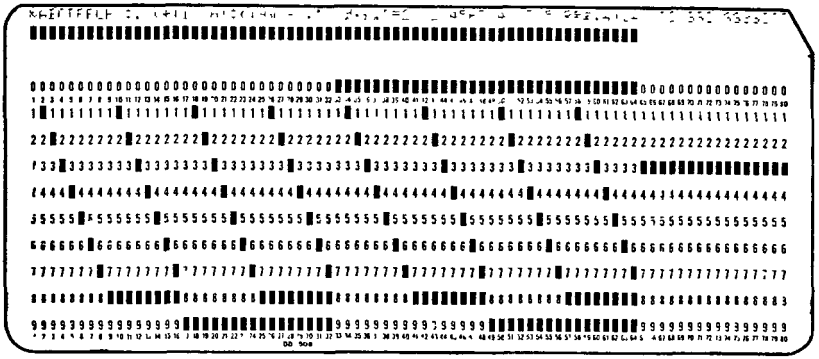


FIGURE 7-25; HTD-3 SAMPLE CARD



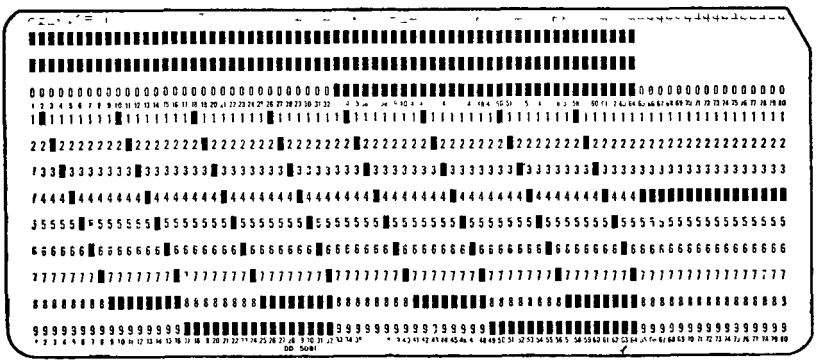
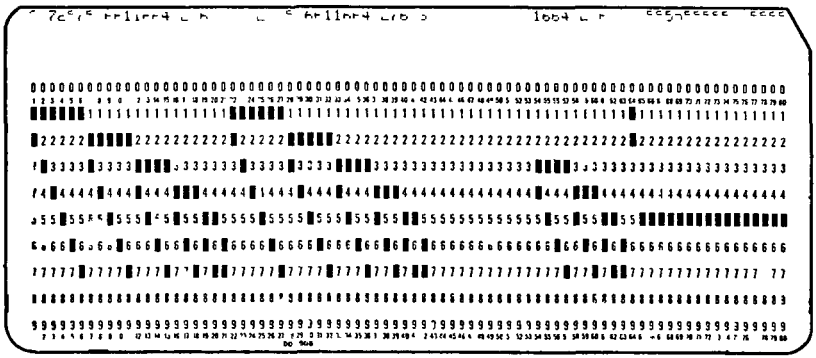


FIGURE 7-26; HTD-4 SAMPLE CARD

FIGURE 7-27, HTD-5 SAMPLE CARD



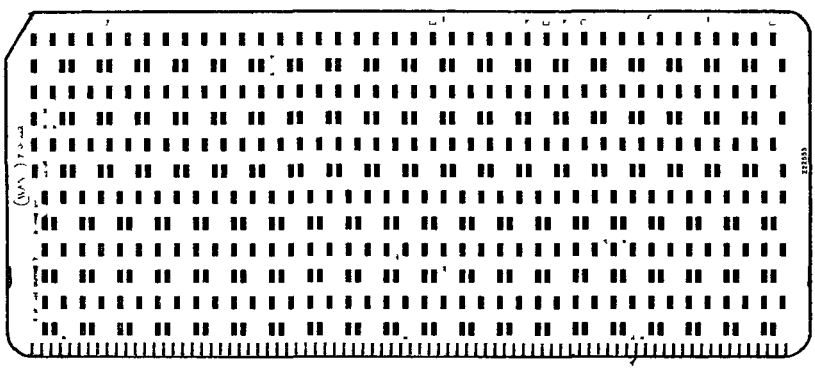
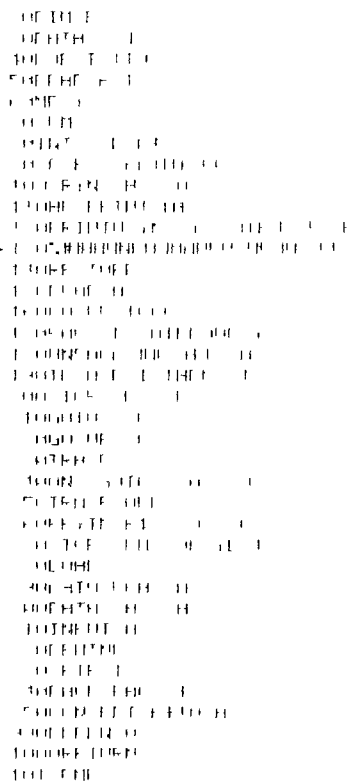


FIGURE 7-28, 80-COLUMN MARK/SENSE CARD

CONTENTS OF SPECIAL MS (MARK SENSE) PROGRAM DECK

*ONE STATEMENT PER CARD



SEE 2234A/2244A MAINTENANCE MANUAL FOR CARD MARKING INSTRUCTIONS.

The test described below verifies proper operation of a WANG 2234A (DOCUMATION M-200 with 6225/6449A WANG I/O Controller) or a WANG 2244A (DOCUMATION TM-200 with 6225/6449B WANG I/O Controller).

The cards used are as follows:

(a) With all units ON, ensure that the following switches are set:

	SWITCH	POSITION
2234A:	LOCAL/REMOTE	REMOTE
	AUTO/MANUAL	AUTO
2244A:	LOCAL/REMOTE	REMOTE
	AUTO/MANUAL	AUTO
	PUNCH/OPT. MARK	PUNCH
	CLOCK/NON-CLOCK	NON-CLOCK

(b) Key RESET on the 2200 keyboard.

(c) Load the 2234A/44A diagnostic card deck into the reader input hopper and key RESET on the card reader panel.

(d) CLEAR, EXECUTE at 2200 keyboard.

(e) Enter the following: 10 LOAD/62B.

(f) EXECUTE.

(g) RUN, EXECUTE.

The 2200 accepts a program (on punched cards) via the card reader.

(h) This program, executed automatically, checks the punch read station in the 2234A and 2244A by reading and checking the diagnostic card deck. DATALOAD BT (N=162)/62A (the Binary *Data* card) and DATASAVE BT /42F (the Look-Ahead card feed) are tested. The CRT displays the quantity of cards read, along with a test fail/pass indication. The next test loads automatically via card reader.

(i) This program checks the Hollerith translation of the controller board, using DATALOAD (N=82)/629 (the Hollerith Data card) and DATASAVE BT /42E (the Look-Ahead data cards for Hollerith to ASCII translation).

Five separate card stacks within the diagnostic are read sequentially. After the program is finished, the CRT will display which (if any) of the 5 card stacks have passed or failed testing. Also, if any of the 5 stacks fail, the CRT will indicate that if it is desired to continue to the next test, key EXECUTE and the next test program on cards will be loaded. If the 5 decks are tested without failures, the next program on cards is loaded automatically.

(j) When the 2234A test ends, the remainder of cards in the diagnostic deck will be mark sense type, and cannot be read by a punch read station.

(k) Change the following switch settings on the 2244A card reader

PUNCH/OPT MARK	OPT MARK
CLOCK/NON CLOCK	CLOCK

(l) Key RESET on card reader.

(m) Key EXECUTE to resume.

(n) This program reads and checks a mark sense card (WL #700-1222) type in a deck, using DATALOAD (N=162)/62A (the Binary Data card) and DATASAVE BT /42E (the Look-Ahead data card).

(o) Next, key EXECUTE to load special mark sense program cards (Wang Format; WL #700-1224). The resulting program which is loaded executes automatically. Upon completion of this program, the following appears on the CRT.

```
5E5E5E5E5F5E5F5E5E5F5E5E5E5E5E5E
↑↑↑↑↑↑↑↑↑↑ 0    2    4
TRANSFER  TO   250

STOP  END  OF  TEST
```

FIGURE 7-29

This test verifies all BASIC commands and formula from Wang mark sense cards, using the LOAD/62C command.

7.5.10 *MODEL 2240/2242/2243 DIAGNOSTICS*

The 2240/2242/2243 diagnostics (hardware and microcode) replace the 2240 only tests. Prior to running any disk diagnostic, insure that the switches on the 6375, 6541, or 6541-1 board are set to HEX 010.

2240/2242/2243 MICROCODE DIAGNOSTIC (VERSION 6/25/74)

The 2240/2242/2243 Microcode Diagnostic checks the following instructions:

(a) DALALOAD/DATASAVE DC OPEN
(b) DATALOAD/DATASAVE DC
(c) DATALOAD/DATASAVE DA
(d) DATALOAD/DATASAVE BA
(e) DSKIP, DBACKSPACE
(f) VERIFY
(g) LIMITS
(h) MOVE END
(i) CATALOGUE INDEX
(j) SCRATCH DISK
(k) COPY
(l) MOVE
(m) DATASAVE DC CLOSE
(n) SCRATCH

An approximate time is displayed on the CRT for each test; this is the maximum time needed to check a 2243. The length of time decreases for the smaller capacity units. The test automatically rewinds the tape and repeats the diagnostic indefinitely if no error conditions exist.

1) Equipment Needed:

2200B1 (4K memory minimum)
2216/2217
2215 or 2222
2240, 2242, or 2243

2) Operating Instructions:

(a) Format all disks to be used if not already formatted.
(b) Insert tape into tape drive and rewind.
(c) Key: CLEAR EXECUTE
LOAD EXECUTE
RUN EXECUTE
(d) Key correct number, EXECUTE.
(e) To restart a test that terminated due to an error, key:
RESET RUN EXECUTE

2240/2242/2243 HARDWARE DIAGNOSTIC

The 2240/2242/2243 Hardware Diagnostic checks the following instructions:

(a) TEST #1 - Writes at every sector address and reads the information to check for errors.
(b) DATASAVE DA, DATALOAD DA from 1 to 10 variables.
(c) ALPHANUMERIC VARIABLE
(d) ALPHANUMERIC ARRAYS
(e) DATASAVE BA, DATALOAD BA using numeric and alphanumeric sector addressing.
(f) Read after write at 260 random locations.

Tests b, c, d, and e run five loops per disk drive. It is advisable to skip TEST #1 the first time because of the length of time required to complete TEST #1. After tests b, c, d, e, and f are completed, the program automatically rewinds the tape and runs TEST #1.

NOTE:
MODEL 2240 DIAGNOSTIC ERRORS DOCUMENTED ON NEXT PAGE.

The last program of the Hardware Diagnostic contains an error (2240 Read after Write at Random Locations).

Statement 60 reads: L = 1024* C-1

Change statement 60 to read: L = 512* C-1

To correct the tape, key the following:

1) CLEAR EXECUTE
2) SKIP 6F: LOAD EXECUTE
3) 60 L=512* C-1 EXECUTE
4) BACKSPACE 1F
5) SAVE (Insure tape protect is closed)
6) Remove tape and open tape protect.

MODEL 2240 PROGRAMMING PROBLEM

The following sample program illustrates how an error code 25 is generated.

```
 10  SELECT #1 310, #2 B10
 20  S = 200
 30  D = 2
 40  GOSUB' 100
 50  PRINT S
 60  STOP
 99  DEFFN' 100
100  DATASAVE DA #D, (S,S) END
110  RETURN
```

Because an end of file is written on the disk and a return is executed for the GOSUB' 100, and error 25 will result at statement 110. If the DATASAVE DA #D (S,S) END was used for saving array or data, no error would occur.

7.5.11 *MODEL 2241 DIAGNOSTIC*

Check the 2241 with the 2231 diagnostic contained in the "2200 Output Writer System Tape".

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

1) Turn on all pertinent units.

2) Insert tape into tape drive, depress RFWIND.

3) Key CLEAR EXECUTE
LOAD EXECUTE The Tape drive loads several blocks and stops
RUN EXECUTE The CRT is displaying instructions for running diagnostics for various devices.

If no acknowledge pulse is supplied to the 2250 from the external device, the device can reset $\overline{RBI}$ from a low (busy condition) to a high (ready condition) This L→H transition from the device will result in L34-8 being clocked L→H, so that $\overline{RB}$ goes low (L36-5 enabled high) indicating to the CPU that the device is ready.

7.12 *MODEL 2250 DIAGNOSTIC*

Minimum Equipment Needed

(a) Diagnostic Test Tape
(b) Two Diagnostic Connectors (See pages 34,35)
(c) 2200/2250 System

1) Before inserting 2250 into the CPU, set 2250 address switch to HEX 3E.
2) Turn 2200 system off and insert 2250 into CPU I/O slot. (DO NOT FORCE PC BOARD).
3) Turn 2200 system on.

The 2250 diagnostic test occupies one block of a multiblock system diagnostic tape, and is run as follows

4) LOAD, EXECUTE
5) RUN, EXECUTE
6) KEY SPECIAL FUNCTION 14

At this point the 2250 test will be loaded:

```
THERE ARE TWO CONNECTORS FOR 2250 DIAG.
BOTH DIAGNOSTICS MUST BE RUN
****************
KEY SPECIAL FUNCTION KEY 00 FOR CONN. #1
KEY SPECIAL FUNCTION KEY 01 FOR CONN. #2
JUMP L7 PINS 8 AND 12 FOR CONN. #2 DIAG.
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

KEY RESET TO STOP TEST
****************
* SET SWITCHES TO 3E FOR THESE DIAGNOSTICS
********************
```

FIGURE 7-30

A good diagnostic run appears as follows:

```
PASS #          XX
                          Pass Count
```

FIGURE 7-31

A failure appears as:

```
                ERROR-TEST FAILED
STOP
  :_
```

FIGURE 7-32

The test connectors are constructed as follows:

CONNECTOR #1

Put jumpers between Pin # (output) and Pin # (input) as listed on the next page for Amphenol connector.

OUTPUT SIGNAL TERM	PIN # OUTPUT	PIN # INPUT	INPUT SIGNAL TERM
$\overline{OBS}_0$	31	9,18,19	$\overline{IBS}$,$\overline{ACK}$,$\overline{RBI}$
$\overline{OB1}_0$	20	5	$\overline{IB1}_I$
$\overline{OB2}_0$	21	6	$\overline{IB2}_I$
$\overline{OB3}_0$	22	7	$\overline{IB3}_I$
$\overline{OB4}_0$	23	8	$\overline{IB4}_I$
$\overline{OB5}_0$	24	1	$\overline{IB5}_I$
$\overline{OB6}_0$	25	2	$\overline{IB6}_I$
$\overline{OB7}_0$	26		$\overline{IB7}_I$
$\overline{OB8}_0$	27	4	$\overline{IB8}_I$

PARTS REQUIRED:

36 Pin Amphenol connector (male). WL #350-2049 or 350-2051.

USE:

Attach this connector to 2250 controller card and run 2250 diagnostic for connector #1.

CONNECTOR #2

Put jumpers between Pin # (output) and Pin # (input) as listed below for Amphenol connector.

OUTPUT SIGNAL TERM	PIN # OUTPUT	PIN # INPUT	INPUT SIGNAL TERM
$\overline{CBS}_0$	16	9,18,19	$\overline{IBS}$,$\overline{ACK}$, $\overline{RBI}$
$\overline{COB}_1$	12	5	$\overline{IB1}_I$
$\overline{COB}_2$	13	6	$\overline{IB2}_I$
$\overline{COB}_4$	14	7	$\overline{IB3}_I$
$\overline{COB}_8$	15	8	$\overline{IB4}_I$
$\overline{CPB}_0$	32	1	$\overline{IB5}_I$
$\overline{PRMS}_0$	10	2	$\overline{IB6}_I$
$\overline{IRB}$	17	3	$\overline{IB7}_I$
$\overline{DORB}$	28	4	$\overline{IB8}_I$
0 V	34	11	$\overline{ENDI}$

PARTS REQUIRED:

36 Pin amphenol connector (male). WL #350-2049 or 350-2051.

USE:

Attach this connector to 2250 controller card and run 2250 diagnostic for connector #2.

7.5.13 *MODEL 2252 DIAGNOSTIC*

Equipment Required: 2200B, 2252 diagnostic connector*, 2252 diagnostic test cassette.

Instructions:

1) Set address switch bank to HEX 5A.

2) Attach diagnostic connector to 2250 controller card.

3) Load diagnostic tape.

4) Run, Execute.

5) Press special function key 15.

6) All switches on 2252 controller card mounting bracket should be in the UP position.

7) Press special function key 00 (Display: +??????????).

8) Run diagnostic for several loops.

9) Reset 2200.

10) All 2252 mounting bracket switches should be in the DOWN position.

11) Press special function key 01 (Display: -.0000000000).

12) Run diagnostic for several loops.

Some diagnostic failures are due to an improperly wired diagnostic connector. It has been found that when 40 pins are tied together to the ground pin, some of the connections remain open. Threading a bus wire through the hole in the center of the pins will help solve this problem. To check which pins are still open, the procedure below should be followed.

(a) Attach connector to board

(b) All switches up

(c) 10 SELECT INPUT 25A
    20 INPUT A$
    30 GO TO 10

(d) Display should appear as:
    +??????????
    (? = HEXC3F)

(e) If any pin is open on any one or more digits, that digit will drop bits. From display and hex codes it can be determined which bit is dropping.

The following procedure is also recommended as a quick checkout for board along with diagnostic.

(a) Do not attach any connector or cable to 2252

(b) All switches up

(c) 10 SELECT INPUT 25A
    20 INPUT A$
    30 GO TO 10

(d) Run

(e) Execute

(f) Display should look like this:
    +0000000000

(g) With sign and Data switch down, display should look like this when the above program is run:

    -??????????

2252 MICRO INTERFACE DIAGNOSTIC CONNECTOR

Bus together the following pin numbers on 50 pin connector:

PINS BUSSED:

1 through 16,19,20,21,22,23,24,25,26,27,28,29,30,32,33,34,37,38,39,40, 41,42,43,44,45,46,47, and 48.

Also connect pins 18 and 31 to each other, but not to the above pins.

PARTS REQUIRED:

50 Pin Amphenol Connector (male), WL #350-2027.

USE:

Attach this connector to 2252 controller card to run diagnostic.

7.5.14 *MODEL 2261 DIAGNOSTIC*

The 2261 uses the 2221 diagnostic contained in the "2200 Output Writer System Tape". All output is identical except for HEX codes 5E and 5F, and the expand function.

Operating Instructions:

1) The 2261 I/O controller board must be set to address 15_{16}.

2) Turn on all pertinent units; select the 2261.

3) Insert tape into tape drive, depress REWIND.

4) Key: CLEAR, EXECUTE.
   LOAD, EXECUTE. The tape drive loads several blocks and stops.
   RUN, EXECUTE. The CRT is displaying instructions for running diagnostics for various devices.

5) Key: Special Function 02. The tape drive loads the 2221 diagnostic and displays instructions.

7.5.15 *MODEL 2262 DIAGNOSTIC*

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS:

1) Plug cursor into digitizer and place near center of tablet.

2) Select the $\overline{\text{Switch}}$ Stream Mode on the control panel.

3) Load the 2262 diagnostic. RESET, RUN, EXECUTE. The following is displayed on the CRT:

2262 TEST			
SIGN BIT (NEG-NO BUTTONS)	FLAG SWITCH (0,1,2,4)	X-VALUE	Y-VALUE
-	0	XXXX	YYYY
		X LIMITS	Y LIMITS
20 x 20 In. Tablet		0000-1999	0001-2001
30 x 40 In. Tablet		0000-3999	0001-3001
36 x 48 In. Tablet		0000-4799	0001-3601

WHEN TEST IS COMPLETE HIT RESET & SPECIAL FUNCTION KEY 15.

4) The 2200 should be reading coordinates, the 2200 ready light on the digitizer should be flashing and the proximity light should be on.

5) Depress the Z-axis button. Insure that the sign changes from minus to plus and a set of coordinates is constantly being displayed. Release Z-axis button.

6) Depress Flag #1. Check for sign change and that flag bit changes to 1. Release Flag #1 button.

7) Depress Flag #2. Check for sign change and that flag bit changes to 2. Release Flag #2 button.

8) Depress Flag #3. Check for sign change and that flag bit changes to 4. Release Flag #3 button.

9) Place cursor at left margin approximately in the center of the tablet.

10) Select the High Stream Rate. Move the cursor very slowly from left to right checking that X begins at coordinate 0000 and counts in units up to 0009. Check all digits from tens to thousands by continuing to move the cursor toward the right margin. The last count in the X direction is 1999 for a 2262-1.

11) Place the cursor at the bottom margin near the center of the tablet. Move the cursor very slowly from the bottom of the tablet to the top checking that the Y begins at coordinate 0001 and counts in units up to 0009. Check all digits from tens to thousands by continuing to move the cursor up the tablet. The last count in the Y direction is 2001 for a 2262-1.

12) Select the Single Point Mode. Digitize approximately 5 random points on the tablet by depressing the Z axis and Flag Switches while moving the cursor. Ensure that the Flag bit and coordinates change each time the appropriate switch is depressed. The SIGN bit should change only the first time a button is depressed.

13) Select the Switch Stream Mode. While depressing the Z-axis switch, move the Stream Rate Slider Switch from low to high range, checking that the number of points being digitized increases as the slider is moved to the high range.

14) Remove the cursor and connect the stylus to the front control panel.

15) Select the $\overline{\text{Switch}}$ Stream Mode. Check that the sign bit changes from minus to plus when the stylus is depressed on the tablet. Check that coordinates are being read by the 2200.

LIST PROGRAM LIST:

```
10 REM 2226 DIAGNOSTIC TEST
20 REM 01/20/75
30 REM WANG CUSTOMER ENGINEERING DIVISION
40 DIM A$12
50 SELECT PRINT 205,INPUT 65A,CO 65A
60 PRINT HEX(020A0A0A)," 2262  TEST"
70 PRINT HEX(0A0A)," SIGN BIT  FLAG SWITCH  X-VALUE  Y-VALUE"
80 PRINT HEX(0A),  " (NEG-NO BUTTONS)  (0,1,2,4) "
90 PRINT HEX(0A0A0A),  "  X-LIMITS  Y-LIMITS"
100 PRINT HEX(0A),  "  20 X 20 IN  TABLET  0000-1999  0001-2001"
110 PRINT HEX(0A),  "  30 X 40 IN  TABLET  0000-2999  0001-4001"
120 PRINT HEX(0A),  "  36 X 48 IN  TABLET  0000-3599  0001-4801"
130 PRINT HEX(0A0A)
140 PRINT HEX(0A)," WHEN TEST IS COMPLETE HIT RESET & SPECIAL FUNCTION KEY 15 "
150 INPUT A$
160 PRINT HEX(010A0A0A0A0A0A0A)
170 PRINTUSING 180,STR(A$,1,1),STR(A$,2,1),STR(A$,4,4),STR(A$,8,4)
180              %      #              #          ####       ####
190 GOTO 150
200 DEFFN'15
210 SELECT PRINT 005,TAPE 10A
220 PRINT HEX(030A0A)
230 SELECT INPUT 001,CO 005
240 STOP " END OF PROGRAM"
250 REM $
```

7.5.16 *MODEL 2209 DIAGNOSTIC*

PART 1

This diagnostic contains four files:

#1 Dynamic Write

#2 Sequential Read

#3 Random Read

#4 Results (Tables showing errors accumulated)

Operation

1) Put diagnostic Part I into the system 2200 tape drive.

2) Push the REWIND pushbutton.

3) Key CLEAR EXECUTE.

4) Key LOAD, RETURN/EXEC.

5) When loading is completed, key RUN, RETURN/EXEC. (Leave the cassette in the system 2200 tape drive.)

From this point on the test (files 1, 2 and 3) operates automatically. The test requires approximately 10 minutes per pass; there are 10 passes in the test requiring 100 minutes. When all 10 passes are completed, END OF TEST is displayed on the CRT.

If less than 10 passes are desired and file 4 is to be displayed (file 4 tabulates all accumulated errors):

1) Key RESET.

2) Rewind tape cassette.

3) Key CLEAR P (clear program).

4) Key SKIP 3F: LOAD (this loads file 4).

5) Key:

SF 01 prints Table 1 on the CRT, table 1 includes the error results of file #1.
SF 02 prints Table 2 on the CRT, table 2 includes the error results of file #2.
SF 03 prints Table 3 on the CRT, table 3 includes the error results of file #3.

Error Information

The error information is interpreted on the separate tables. Any printout within the table area indicates the number, and the types of errors that occurred when the specified operation was executed.

DIAGNOSTIC ABBREVIATIONS

ERROR CODE ABBREVIATIONS

RDY - Tape Ready
PRT - Tape Protected
EOF - End of File
EOT - End of Tape
BOT - Beginning of Tape
RER - Recoverable Error
NER - Non Recoverable Error
DTE - Data Transfer Error
BOF - Buffer Overflow
IVC - Invalid Command
CNT - Count Not Equal

OPERATION ABBREVIATIONS

WRT - Write
WGP - Write Gap
BWT - Backspace Write
WFM - Write File Mark
RDR - Read A Record
RDF - Read A File Mark
RD - Read
RRD - Reread
FSF - Forward Space A File
FSR - Forward Space A Record
BSF - Backspace A File
BSR - Backspace A Record
CLN - Clean

DATA (FILE #) indicates the file number in which the error occurred. ERROR # indicates the number of errors that occurred in a given data file.

PART 2

This diagnostic contains five files; the first file contains the menu. File 2 contains the General Diagnostic which provides a quick check of all functions and operations. File 3 contains the Error Verify Diagnostic which checks for all error conditions but does not utilize all commands used in the General Diagnostic. File 4 contains the Function Diagnostic which checks individual functions as displayed on the CRT. File 5 contains the End of Tape Diagnostic which verifies the fact that the 2209 can recognize the EOT marker.

To load the menu of Part 2:

1) Insert diagnostic Part 2 into the tape drive. REWIND.

2) Key CLEAR EXECUTE.

3) LOAD EXECUTE.

4) When loading is completed, key RUN EXECUTE. The menu is now displayed.

The General, Error Verify and Function Diagnostics can be run by keying the appropriate special function key. To run the End of Tape Mark Diagnostic, place the 2209 tape at BOT by depressing the RESET and REWIND pushbuttons on the 2209. When the tape is at BOT, depress the ON LINE pushbutton. Place an EOT marker on tape between the file reel and the file reel fixed roller guide; key special function key 19.

7.5.17 *WCS 20/30 DIAGNOSTIC PROGRAMS*

The WCS diagnostics are versatile and powerful tests contained on a single diskette. The tests consist of a:

Memory Test
CPU Test
Printer Test (2201, 2221, 2221W, 2231 and 2261)
Platter Verify Test (all disks)
Disk Instruction (CPU/Disk Microcode Test) (all disks)
WCS/Disk (Disk Hardware Test) (all disks)
An allocation has been made for future peripheral tests.

During each test, any errors that occurred are displayed momentarily or printed on the printer if a hard copy output was selected. At the end of all tests selected, an "OK" or "NG" message is displayed and printed (if selected) for each test.

1) Memory Test - Approximate running time is 5 min. for each 4K.

The memory test checks all RAM locations except those used by the CPU for housekeeping. The test uses high speed matrix verbs to exercise the RAM. This method detects errors in marginal RAM chips that could not be detected with earlier memory tests.

2) CPU Test - Approximate running time is 13 min.

This test checks most of the BASIC verbs used in programming including the Matrix, GIO and Sort verbs.

3) Printer Test - Approximate running time is 6 min.

Models 2201, 2221, 2221W, 2231 or 2261 are able to be tested. Six unique tests are run to check all printer functions.

4) Platter Verify Test - Approximate running time is 5 min. (for diskette).

The platter test verifies all sectors on a hard or flexible disk platter by utilizing write and read commands. This test can be used to check any number of platters.

5) Disk Instruction (CPU/Disk Microcode Test) - Approximate running time is 3 min. for each disk.

The disk microcode test checks all disk verbs. Whenever this test is selected, ensure that disk platters containing no useful information are used.

6) WCS/Disk (Disk Hardware Test) - Approximate running time is 40 min.

This test checks the operation of hard and flexible disk drives used in the system. One or two drives may be tested, however, only one of each type may be tested (a dual and triple flexible disk drive or a 2230-1 and a 2260 may not be tested at the same time, but a combination of 2230 or 2260 and flexible drive may be tested). Whenever this test is selected, ensure that disk platters containing no useful information are used.

7) Peripheral Tests

When available, the peripheral tests will be selected by the user and tested after all other tests have been run.

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

NOTE:
Do not write protect the diagnostic diskette.

1. Insert the Diagnostic Diskette into the Shugart Flexible Disk Drive. Key LOAD DCF "START". The drive used must be set to address 310 or 320. Key RUN EXECUTE.

2. An input for a hard copy test result output is requested. If a hard copy is desired, an input for the type of printer is requested. A "1" is for a 2201 and a "0" is for either the 2221, 2221W, 2231 or 2261 high speed printer. An input for the address of the primary diskette drive (the drive from which the diagnostic is to be run) is requested next. If an address other than 310 or 320 is keyed, a reenter message is displayed.

3. The next input request is for a hard disk (2230 or 2260). If a hard disk is to be tested, input "Y". The address for this disk is then requested. If no hard disk is to be tested, enter "N".

4. After this preliminary information is entered, SEARCH THE INDEX PROGRAM is momentarily displayed. All system programs are displayed and the tests to be run are requested. The tests are performed in the order displayed. Any or all tests may be performed by keying the test number when requested. As each test is requested, an asterisk is displayed next to the test name. When all tests desired have been keyed, key "0" to stop the request. The tests chosen are then displayed, requesting a "0" for acceptance or a "1" to change the tests.

5. Information for each test is now requested. For the memory test, the memory size and the type of test (system or burn-in) is requested. The system test runs 300 times while the burn-in test runs 65,000 times. As before, after the information is keyed, a "0" for acceptance or a "1" to change the data is requested.

6. The printer test requests the type of printer to be tested and then an acceptance input.

7. The platter verify test requests the address of the platter to be verified, the type of disk drive the platter is in and then an acceptance. Other platters may be verified at the end of test.

8. The Disk Instruction (CPU/Disk microcode) test requires no input information if it is being used with other disk tests. If it is the only disk test, the disk type (single, dual or triple) is requested prior to the test.

9. The WCS/Disk (disk hardware) test first requests the number of disk drives to be tested (1 or 2). If two units are chosen, one may be a hard disk unit (2230 or 2260) and the other a flexible disk unit (single, dual or triple), but two of the same type may not be tested. When the flexible disk units are chosen, all drives in the unit are tested (i.e., requesting a triple flexible disk unit will test all three drives in that unit). A system or burn in test is then requested, and finally an acceptance.

10. As each test is performed, a pass/fail message is displayed and printed (if requested). When all tests have been completed, a pass/fail message for all test results is displayed. When the message after each test is displayed, an error message is printed for each portion of the test that failed. When the end of the system tests message is displayed, only a pass/fail for the particular test is printed, without a description of the particular failure.

11. When using the Diagnostic Test, the test platter must not be write protected. The reason for this is all information requested at the beginning of the test is written on the diskette in order to clear this information and all variables from memory and test as much memory as possible during the memory test. Because the diskette is not write protected, BE SURE to remove the diskette when instructed during the disk tests.

12. In all tests except the memory test, SF Key '15 will return the user to the beginning of the diagnostic tests.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

NOTES:

SECTION 8

MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

FOR

USER TERMINALS, POWER SUPPLIES & CPU'S

8.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

The 2200 System must be properly maintained for trouble-free operation. This requires periodic cleaning and visual and electrical checks.

8.1.1 *CLEANING*

Thorough cleaning should be performed periodically. Cleaning intervals are determined by the amount of use and environmental conditions. Under normal use and conditions, cleaning should be once every nine to twelve months. In areas of excessive air contamination (smoke, dust, etc.), more frequent cleaning is required.

8.1.1.1 Central Processing Unit

Clean the CPU as follows:

(a) Remove the top and bottom covers from the CPU.

(b) Remove the I/O Controllers.

(c) Use a small soft-bristle brush or an air gun (if available) to remove dust from the inside of the CPU.

(d) Remove each printed circuit board from the CPU and clean the finger connectors using an eraser.

(e) Clean the finger connectors on each I/O controller in a similar manner and replace them into the CPU.

(f) Use a mild detergent and a soft cloth or sponge to remove dirt and grime from the outside of the CPU. Do not use abrasive or corrosive chemicals.

(g) Return the top and bottom covers to the CPU and tighten securely.

8.1.1.2 Video Display/Tape Drive Unit

Clean the Video Display/Tape Drive Unit in the following manner:

(a) Remove the top cover from the unit.

(b) Use a small, soft-bristle brush (or air gun) to remove dust and dirt from inside the unit.

(c) Use a soft cloth and a mild detergent to clean the face of the CRT. Do not use an abrasive cleanser.

(d) Clean the outside covers of the unit with a soft cloth or sponge and a mild detergent.

(e) Return the top cover and tighten securely.

8.1.1.3 Power Supply (2200 A, B, C Systems)

Clean the power supply in the following manner:

(a) Remove the power cord from the AC outlet.

(b) Remove the top cover.

(c) Use a small, soft-bristle paintbrush (or air gun) to remove dust and dirt from inside the power supply.

(d) Use a soft cloth or sponge and a detergent to clean the blades of the cooling fan.

(e) Clean the outside covers with a soft cloth or sponge and detergent.

(f) Replace top cover and insert power cord into AC outlet.

8.1.2 *LUBRICATION*

No lubrication is required in 2200 System *preventive maintenance*.

8.2 TROUBLESHOOTING

This subsection provides troubleshooting aids. Not all troubles can be located with these aids; however, they will identify more common faults.

Observe the symptoms carefully to isolate the problem by logical deduction.

8.2.1 *VIDEO DISPLAY*

SAFETY WARNING

1) A good practice, when working inside any electronic chassis, is to use only one hand. This will avoid the possibility of carelessly putting one hand on chassis or ground and the other on an electrical connection, causing severe electrical shock.

2) Extreme care should be used in handling the Cathode Ray Tube; rough handling may cause implosion, due to atmospheric pressure. Do not nick or scratch the CRT or subject it to any undue pressure.

3) When video display removals/replacements are necessary, follow instructions in paragraph 8.5.2.

4) Avoid prolonged exposure at close range to unshielded areas of the cathode ray tube. Possible danger of personal injury from unnecessary exposure to X-ray radiation may result.

VIDEO DISPLAY TROUBLESHOOTING FLOW CHART

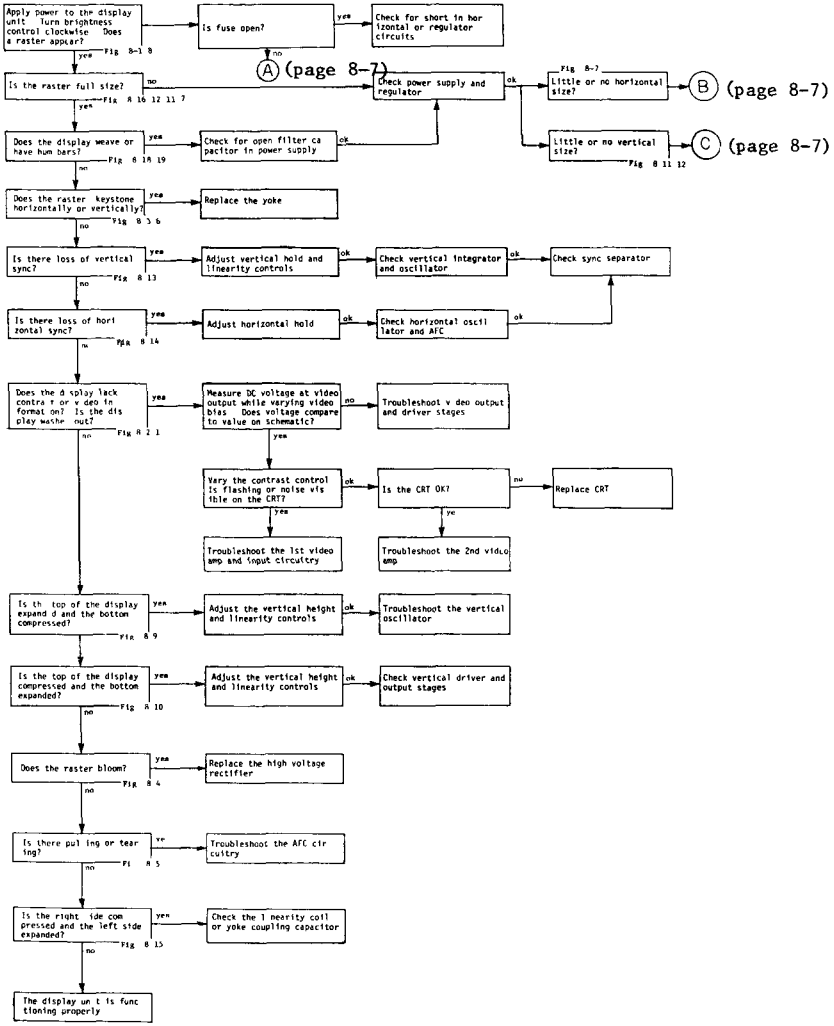
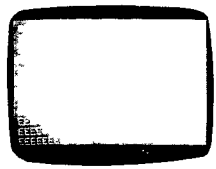


FIGURE 8-1

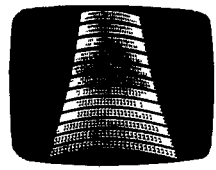
NO PICTURE (VIDEO)
RASTER OK

FIGURE 8-2



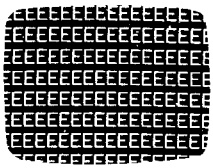
NO CONTRAST WEAK
OR WASHED OUT PICTURE

FIGURE 8-3



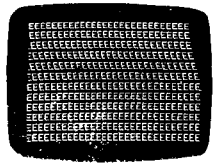
RASTER KEYSTONED

FIGURE 8-4



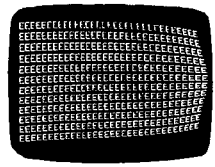
RASTER BLOOM
(LOW HIGH VOLTAGE)

FIGURE 8-5



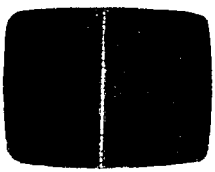
PULLING OR TEARING

FIGURE 8-6



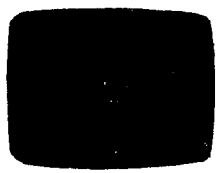
RASTER KEYSTONED

FIGURE 8-7



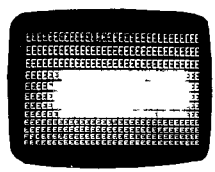
REDUCED HORIZONTAL
SIZE OR A VERTICAL
LINE IN CRT CENTER

FIGURE 8-8



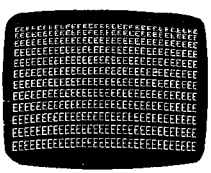
NO RASTER

FIGURE 8-9



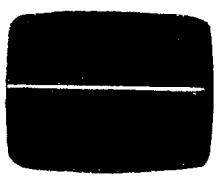
TOP EXPANDED BOTTOM
COMPRESSED, VERT
HOLD CONTROL ON END
OR WILL NOT HOLD

FIGURE 8-10



TOP COMPRESSED BOTTOM
EXPANDED, COLLECTOR
VOLTS DC NORMAL ON
OUTPUT AND DRIVER
STAGE

FIGURE 8-11

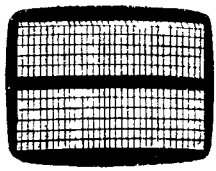


NO VERTICAL SWEEP

FIGURE 8-12

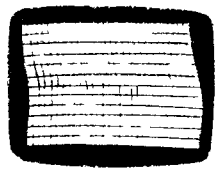
REDUCED HEIGHT

FIGURE 8-13



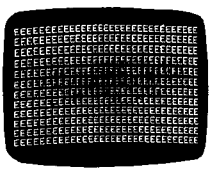
LOSS OF VERTICAL SYNC

FIGURE 8-14



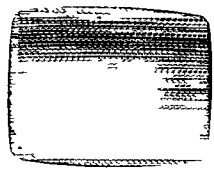
LOSS OF HORIZONTAL SYNC

FIGURE 8-15



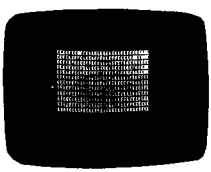
RIGHT SIDE COMPRESSED
LEFT SIDE EXPANDED

FIGURE 8-16



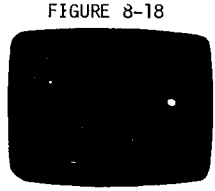
LOSS OF BOTH VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL SYNC

FIGURE 8-17



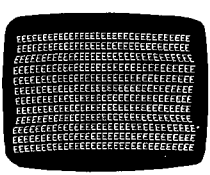
REDUCED SIZE BOTH HORIZONTALLY AND VERTICALLY

FIGURE 8-18



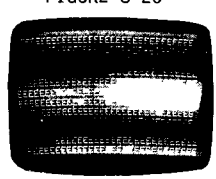
NO RASTER

FIGURE 8-19



WEAVE

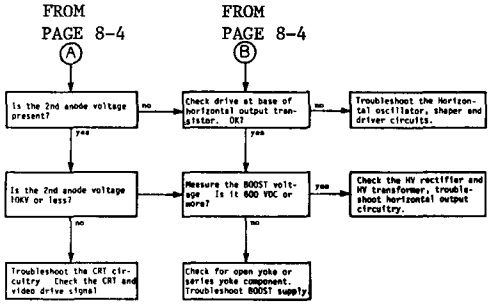
FIGURE 8-20

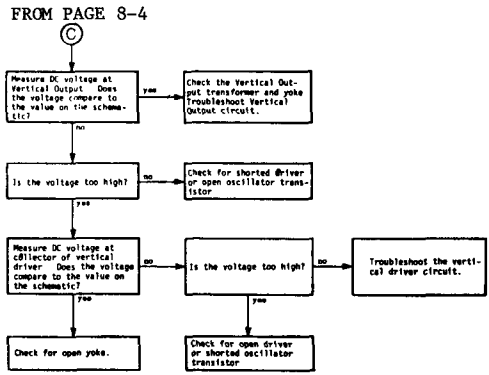


HUM

VIDEO DISPLAY TROUBLESHOOTING FLOW CHART

(Continued)





8.2.2 *THE TAPE DRIVE UNIT*

A digital tape is a very high quality tape. Just as important as the tape's recording qualities, is the atmosphere in which it is used, the drive mechanism it is used in, and how tape and tape drive mechanism is cared for day to day. Even with all these subjects at perfection, a digital tape will fail eventually.

Oxide coated materials such as magnetic tape cassettes are extremely durable but require certain environmental control for long life and proper operation.

All storage material manufactured in the United States conforms to specifications set forth by the American National Standards Inst. (ANSI). Not only do U.S. manufacturers meet ANSI specifications, but in most instances surpass them.

Oxide wear is probably the single most contributing factor to data destruction. It is caused by excessive tape to head or disk to head contact, dirt, humidity, and storage care.

Tape to head contact is a mechanical function of the tape drive. Drives should be checked periodically for excessive oxide wear and defects corrected immediately.

Humidity and temperature are important factors to consider not only in operation but also during storage. Tapes are tested by manufacturers at four hour temperature and humidity cycles of 50° to 113°F and 20% to 80% relative humidity continuously for fifteen days. These tests exercise the material for more than 1.5 million passes during which time data must be written and read without error. For tape, low humidity (between 5% and 10% R.H.) normally does not cause tape or data degradation during operation. During storage, however, low humidity can cause the oxide binders to dry out, causing oxide shed, and can also cause cinching problems when the tape is used.

Static discharges generally do affect recorded data. The level of the recorded data is not sufficient and will be destroyed by a static discharge.

The following recommendations are made:

1. If tapes are subjected to environmental extremities during storage or transportation, they should be normalized at the operating environment for at least 24 hours.

2. Stored tapes should be loaded and rewound at least once a month to prevent tape distortion caused by tension.

3. Head lubricants should never be used. They cause oxide degradation.

4. Only tapes made to ANSI specifications should be used to insure long life and quality data reproduction. Tapes manufactured in foreign countries sometimes do not meet these requirements and result in data being lost after repeated use.

Below are listed several ways to lengthen the life of digital tapes.

1. The magnetic head of the tape drive should be cleaned at least once a week by the customer. Even if the tape drive is used only once a day, the fan in the user console will draw dust onto the head. A dust buildup can scrape tape and head surfaces when the tape movement occurs. Remove the cassette door (two thumb screws) to reach the magnetic head surface; taking care not to damage this surface, gently wipe the tape head using alcohol cleaning pads that may be obtained locally at audio supply firms or may be ordered from Wang Labs (WLI #660-0130). Some people recommend using a head cleaning tape because it is fast and simple; however, these cleaning tapes are abrasive and will eventually wear down the TD-24 head.

2. The atmosphere in which a digital tape is used in will affect its performance. The tape is recorded magnetically, and of course, can be destroyed magnetically. The user terminal emits magnetic fields that can eventually weaken or change data on cassettes if they are left on top of or close proximity to the user terminal when not in use. The amplitude of the signal from the tape decreases with age because of such environmental conditions, and will eventually degrade digital information stored on tape to the point where an error occurs during LOAD.

   To minimize such problems it is recommended to immediately remove the cassette from the user terminal after use, return the tape to its case, and store it in a desk or cassette file somewhere a few feet from the user terminal or any other equipment suspected of generating a magnetic field.

If tapes are used to the extent that they need to be re-recorded every month then they should be replaced. Re-recording and excessive use tends to deform and stretch the tape.

3. Rerecording the tapes monthly is a wise idea, but *cleaning the tape magnetically* prior to rerecording also helps. To do this, simply LOAD the program into the system, erase the tape with a bulk tape eraser and then rerecord the program.

4. It is further recommended that two identical tape libraries (work library, reference library) be maintained to ensure that a tape damaged by a tape drive or heavy use can be rerecorded on a new replacement tape drive.

5. If your tapes have only one block of data on them, record the block several times on the same tape.

6. The Wang tape drive is designed for a specific mechanical "drag". The tape is pulled past the read/record head by a capstan and pinch roller at a relatively stable speed; however, the spool of tape which it is pulling could snap or jerk as it's being pulled, or a worn bearing may cause a varying pulling torque. These items would cause jitter or speed changes while reading or recording. To overcome jitter, a drag torque is applied constantly to the right hand spool during a tape read or write. The amount of force compensates for bearing fluctuations and prevents the reverse spool (right) from a free-wheeling. The friction of the cassette itself (which is determined by tape cassette length, thickness, and packaging) adds to mechanical drag.

   Using the incorrect length or thickness of tape will change the drag torque. Cassettes sold by Wang Labs are within the correct specifications.

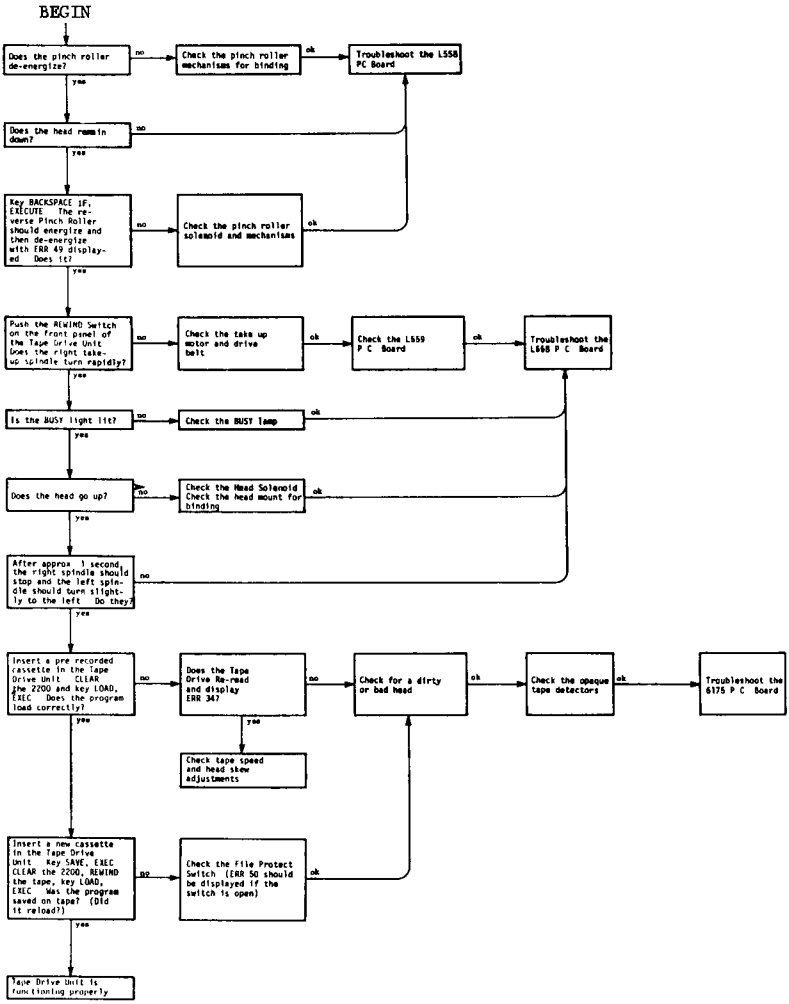
7. A tape drive will wear in various ways. If the mechanism which stabilizes the magnetic head wears, head skew may change and an amplitude drop will occur during a tape read. If tapes are re-recorded, even though skew position has changed, the newly recorded data will become as high in quality as the original tape. (The head skew problem would still exist, and rerecording would be only a temporary corrective measure in this case.)

8. If an error does occur, in most cases, a program which might otherwise be non-retrievable may possibly be rerecorded as follows:

   a) With cassette door removed, apply slight fingertip pressure to the right spool of the cassette drive as the tape loads. This may help stabilize any jitter.

   b) *Rerecord the saved program on a substitute tape drive unit.*

TAPE DRIVE TROUBLESHOOTING FLOW CHART



8.2.3 *THE CENTRAL PROCESSING UNIT*

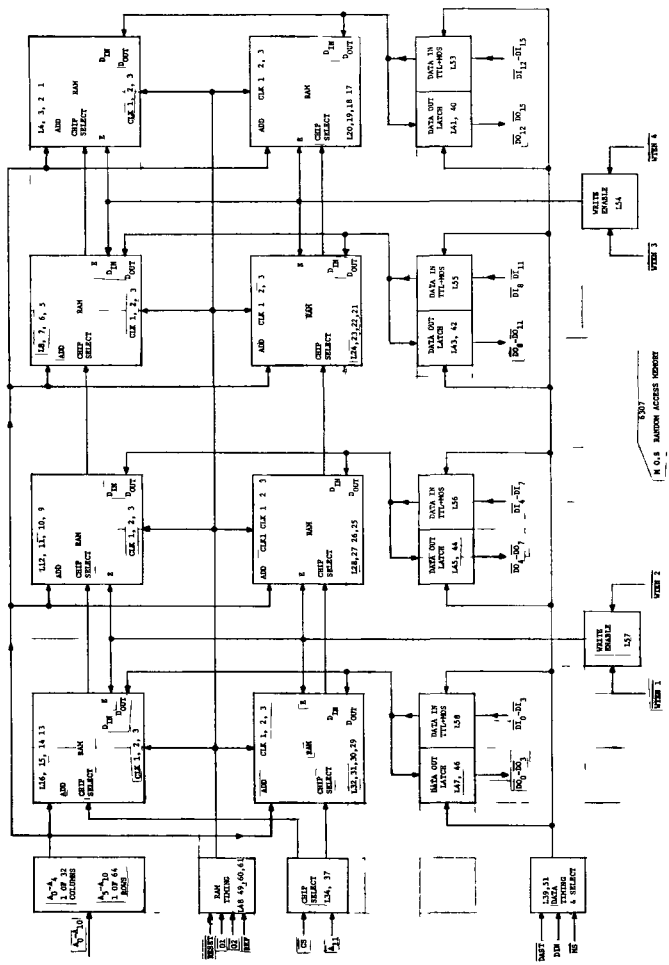
Troubleshooting a CPU should be a relatively simple procedure from a systems standpoint. Perform the following steps:

1) Remove all peripheral controllers from CPU and check address switch settings (replace display, keyboard, and cassette controllers).
2) Check RAM size selection switches per Section 2 of this manual and check CPU voltages per paragraph 8.3.2.
3) If system diagnostics cannot be run (system "dead" or "locked up"), replace boards presently in CPU until the problem disappears.
4) Run all diagnostics appropriate for that CPU and all associated software options.
5) If a "bad" run of any CPU-only diagnostic occurs, and assuming the user console to be functioning properly, substitute known good processor circuit boards until the diagnostic error no longer occurs.
6) If error still occurs, the system problem may be associated with I/O controllers. Replace I/O controllers into CPU chassis, recheck voltages, and run appropriate peripheral diagnostics (refer to Section 7).
7) Ensure that peripheral connections to controllers are secure.
8) Assuming peripherals themselves are functioning properly, substitute a known good peripheral controller for a suspected bad controller. (Set address switch on new board.)
9) If the system problem appears to be in a peripheral, troubleshoot that peripheral according to Service Bulletin procedures.

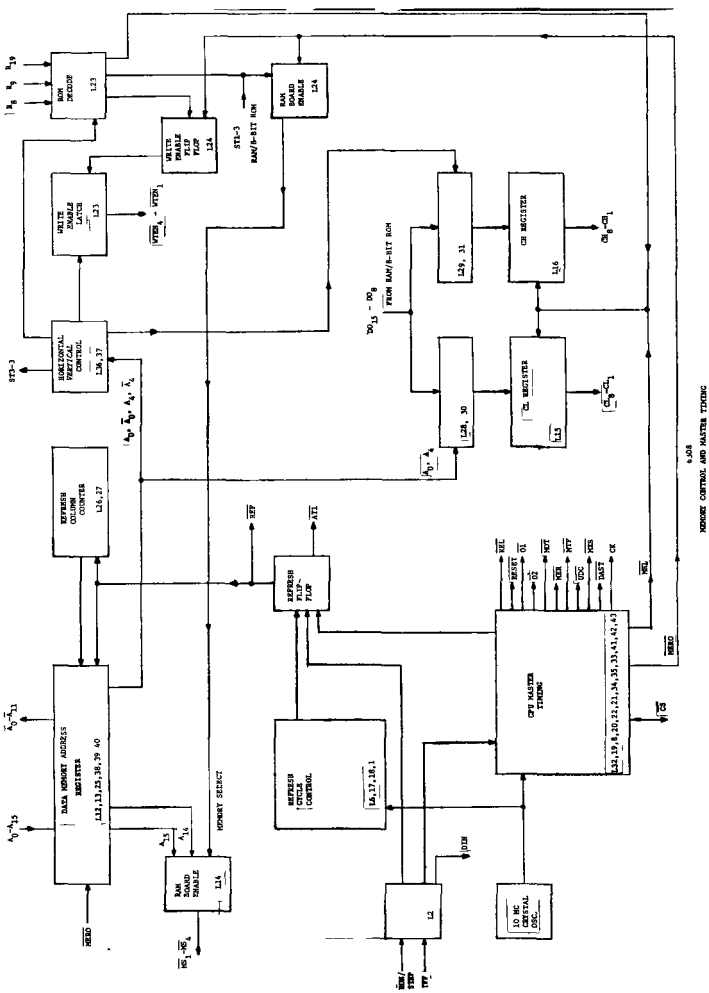
Beginning on page 8-13, block diagrams for central processor boards (2200 A, B, C, S*, T*) are presented to aid in comprehension of CPU hardware.

*NOTE
Block diagrams for 2200S/T CPU's will be forthcoming in subsequent updates to this manual.

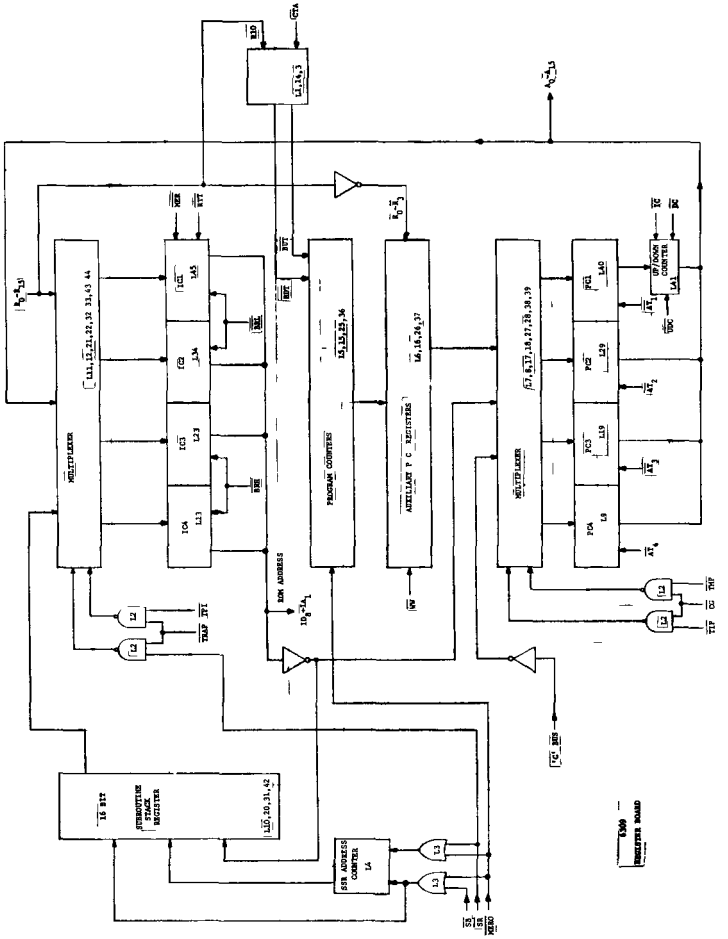
6307 CIRCUIT BOARD - BLOCK DIAGRAM



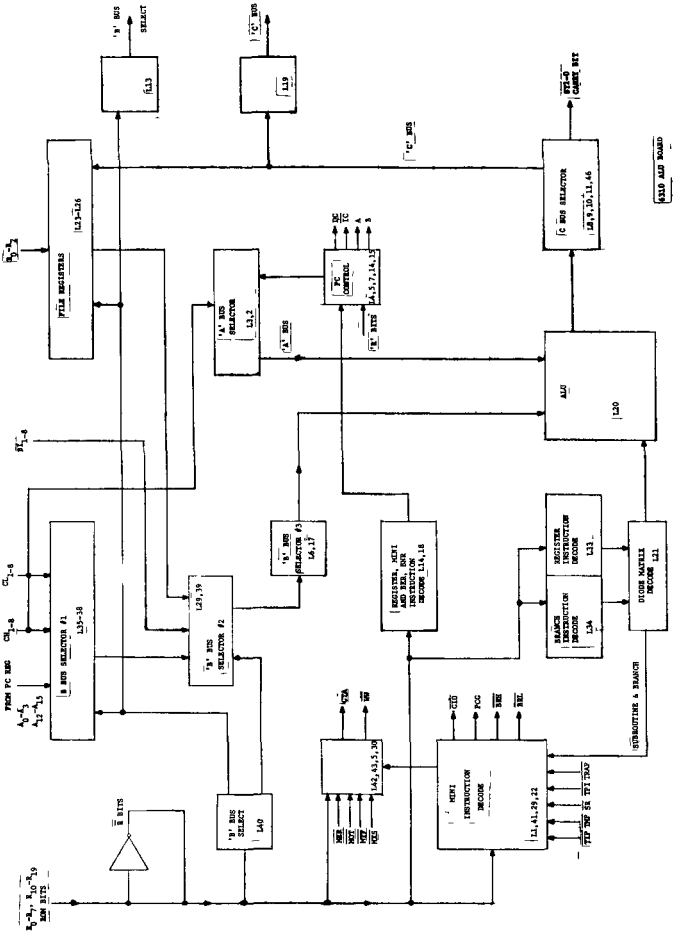
6308 CIRCUIT BOARD - BLOCK DIAGRAM



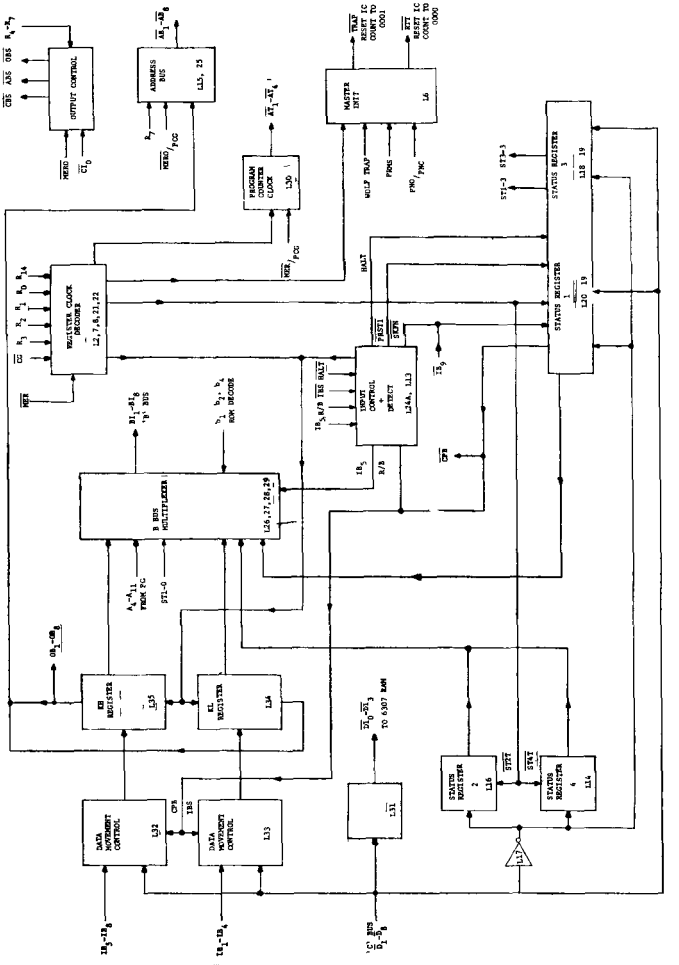
6309 CIRCUIT BOARD - BLOCK DIAGRAM

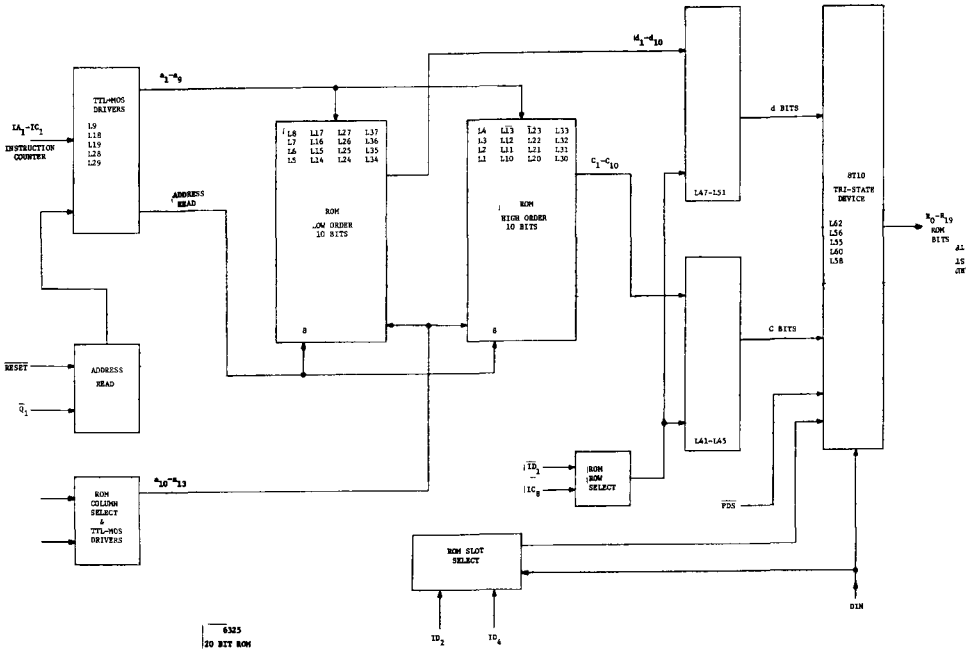


6310 CIRCUIT BOARD - BLOCK DIAGRAM

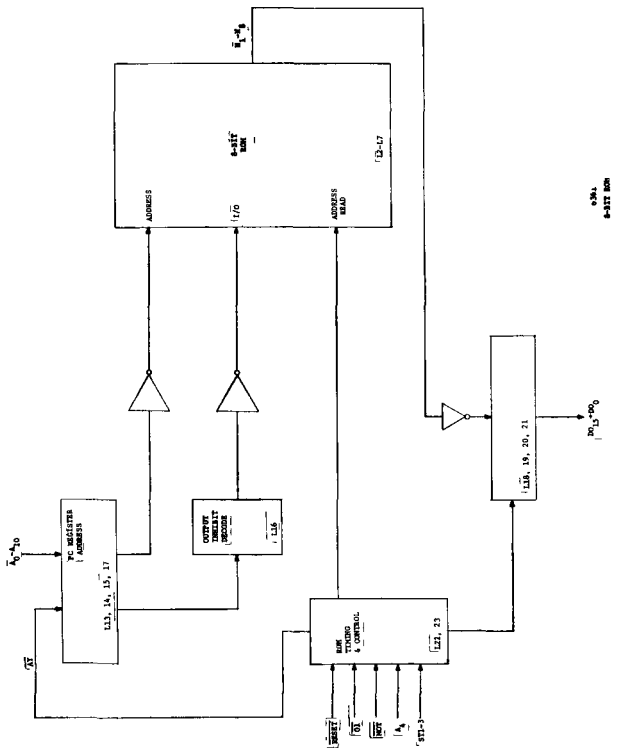


6311 CIRCUIT BOARD - BLOCK DIAGRAM

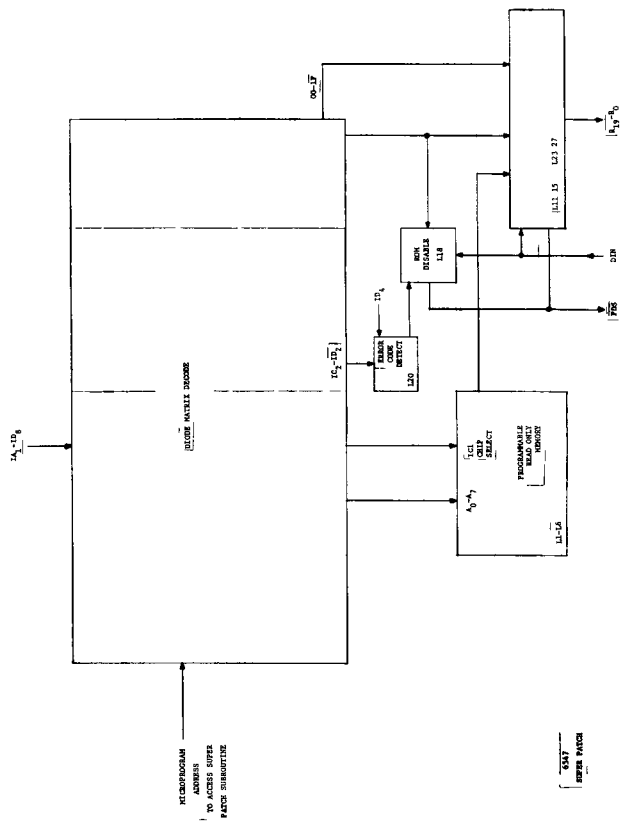



TTL-MOS DRIVERS
L9
L18
L19
L28
L29
INSTRUCTION COUNTER
ADDRESS HEAD
ROM LOW ORDER 10 BITS
ROM HIGH ORDER 10 BITS
L47-L51
L41-L45
d BITS
C BITS
8T10 TRI-STATE DEVICE
L62
L56
L55
L60
L58
ROM BITS
RESET
ADDRESS HEAD
ROM COLUMN SELECT & TTL-MOS DRIVERS
ROM ROM SELECT
ROM SLOT SELECT
DIN
6325
20 BIT ROM

6361 CIRCUIT BOARD - BLOCK DIAGRAM



6547 CIRCUIT BOARD - BLOCK DIAGRAM



8.3 ADJUSTMENTS

Adjustments, particularly electrical adjustments, should be performed *only when the parameter measured proves to be out of tolerance.* Do not make either electrical or mechanical adjustments indescriminately. Be certain that measurement devices are properly calibrated and are utilized for optimum results.

8.3.1 *RECOMMENDED TEST EQUIPMENT/TOOL LIST*

a) *Digital Voltmeter*, with an accuracy of at least ±.1% of full scale and 1 mv. resolution factor. Multimeter/VTVM accuracy and resolution factors are unacceptable for certain critical measurements.

Acceptable Type/Equivalent: FLUKE #8000A

b) *Multimeter*, 20,000 Ω/v (min.): 2% or greater full scale accuracy for less critical measurements.

Acceptable Type/Equivalent: TRIPLETT VOM #630NA

c) *Oscilloscope*, with two x 1 probes and two x 10 probes.

Acceptable Type/Equivalent: TEKTRONIX #465

d) *Electronic Counter*

Acceptable Type/Equivalent: HP #5381A

e) *Test Cassette*

Acceptable Type/Equivalent: INFORMATION TERMINALS X-1000-800FCI

f) *Allen Wrench Set*

g) *Plastic Alignment Screwdriver* for video display adjustments.

h) *Torque Driver* (Utica TS-100)

i) *Hex Nut Driver* set.

j) *Thickness Gauge* (J.C. Chestman 5811/20)

k) *Gap Gauge* (Wang D-22-118)

l) *Solenoid Gap Gauge* (Wang D-22-035)

m) *Penetration Gauge* (Wang D-22-056)

n) *Heavy Duty Screwdriver* with heavily insulated handle and shaft, for discharge of video display anode voltage.

o) *Insulated Heavy-Gauge Ground Wire* with insulated Aligator clips (for use with item (n), above.

p) *Small Screwdriver* with insulated shaft, used mostly for voltage adjustments.

8.3.2 *CPU - VOLTAGE ADJUST PROCEDURE*

a) Remove top cover of 2200 PS (A, B or C system).

b) Remove top cover of CPU and, with the exception of the 2200 S,T L567 pc, remove all plug-in CPU circuit boards.

c) Place L567 circuit board on an extender pcb.

d) Turn Supply/CPU power ON.

e) Check voltages for specified value(s), as listed in Table 8-1. Adjust L567 pc trimpots where indicated in figures 8-28A and 8-28B to obtain correct voltage levels *only* where necessary. Never allow the -15VR power supply to exceed -17 vdc, otherwise permanent damage to the CPU will result.

f) With an oscilloscope and a X1 probe, measure the ripple at the points indicated in Table 8-1. AC ripple should not exceed the limits specified. If any voltage or ripple measurement is out of specification, troubleshoot the CPU power supply.

Connect a *Digital voltmeter* between the point indicated and ± 0V. If necessary, adjust the voltage to coincide within limits the specified limits.

TABLE 8-1

LOCATION	VOLTAGE	LIMITS	ADJ	RIPPLE
L567 Pin 1_1	+5VRM	+4.90 vdc to +5.10 vdc	R17	15 mvp-p
L567 Pin 2_1	+5VRL	+4.80 vdc to +5.20 vdc	R2	15 mvp-p
L567 Pin 12_1	+8VR	+8.50 vdc to +8.80 vdc	R13	20 mvp-p
L567 Pin 15_1	+12VR	+11.80 vdc to +12.60 vdc	R30	15 mvp-p
L567 Pin 5_2	-12VR	-11.80 vdc to -12.60 vdc	R34	35 mvp-p
L567 Pin 6_2	-15VR	-14.80 vdc to -15.30 vdc	R40	25 mvp-p

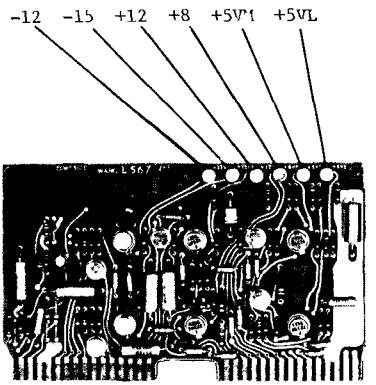


FIGURE 8-29A

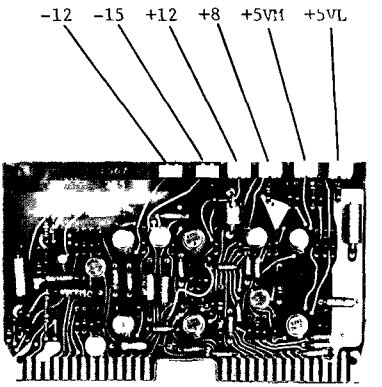


FIGURE 8-29B

f) Note that when increasing RAM capacity by conversion, adding options which require addition of ROM IC's, or adding extra I/O capabilities to the CPU, all LOAD-CONDITION voltages should be rechecked and, if necessary, readjusted on the L567 pc.

g) A similar procedure should be followed for any peripheral unit with a self-contained power supply; some of these procedures are documented in subsequent text on "Electrical Adjustments".

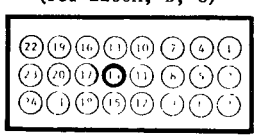
h) Replace unit covers when these procedures have been successfully completed.

TABLE 8-2
POWER SUPPLY/CPU MOTHERBOARD CONNECTIONS

2200 PS — TERMINALS

CONN. PIN NO.	GAUGE	COLOR	2200 A/B/C MOTHERBOARD	SIGNAL NAME
1	18	RED	1	+5VLR
2	18	RED	2	+5VLR
3	18	RED	3	+5VLR
4	18	RED	4	+5VLR
5	18	ORN	5	+5VRM
6	18	ORN	6	+5VRM
7	18	YEL	7	+9VU
8	18	VIO	8	-15VU
9	18	WHT/BRN	9	+12VU
10	18	BLK (2)	10,11	+0V
11	18	BLK (2)	12,16	+0V
12	18	BLK (2)	17,18	+0V
13	18	WHT/BLK	13	115 VAC
14	18	GRN/YEL	15	CHA. GND
15	18	WHT	14	AC NEUT.
16	24	WHT/GRN	9,(6311)	PNC
17	24	WHT/YEL	10,(6311)	PNO
18				
19	24	WHT/ORN	14,(6311)	WIR
20				
21	18	BLU	21	+12VR
22	18	BRN	22	+8VR
23	18	WHT/BLU	23	-12VR
24	18	GRY	24	-15VR

FRONT VIEW OF 2200PS CPU CONNECTOR
(For 2200A, B, C)



8.3.3 *VIDEO DISPLAY UNIT*

> CAUTION:
> No work should be attempted on an exposed Video Display Chassis by anyone not familiar with servicing procedures and precautions. See Video Display Safety Warning in paragraph 8.2.1.

Perform the following adjustments on the Video Display Chassis; refer to Figures 8-30, 8-31, and 8-59.

(a) Remove the Video Display Chassis from the Video Display/Tape Drive Unit.

(b) Connect a voltmeter to pin 22 of the video PCB and adjust Regulator, R74*, for a meter reading of +73.0 vdc ±1.0 vdc. For systems using the 9 inch Video Display Chassis, connect the voltmeter to pin 18 and adjust R103 for +12.0 VDC ±0.5 VDC.

> *CAUTION:
> Do not "run" the regulator control through its range or damage to the display unit may result.

(c) Remove the video input cable from the display chassis. Connect a jumper from chassis ground to the center conductor of the input connector.

(d) Connect a X10 oscilloscope probe to Q3 collector and adjust Video Bias, R10 (R14 on 9 inch model), for +30 vdc. If Q3 oscillates while adjusting R10, temporarily connect a 0.05 µf to 0.68 µf 25V capacitor between Q2 base and ground.

(e) Remove the shorting jumper and reconnect the video cable.

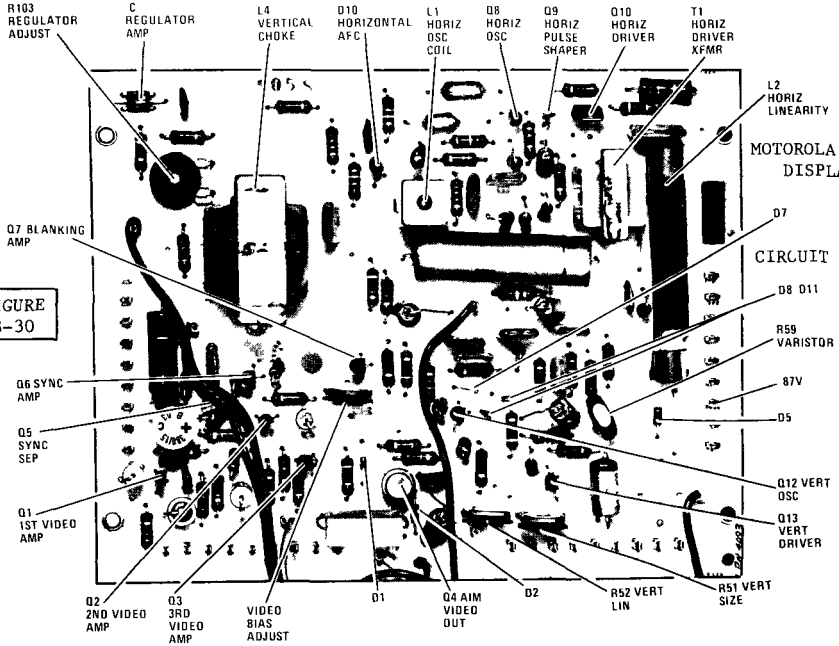


FIGURE 8-30

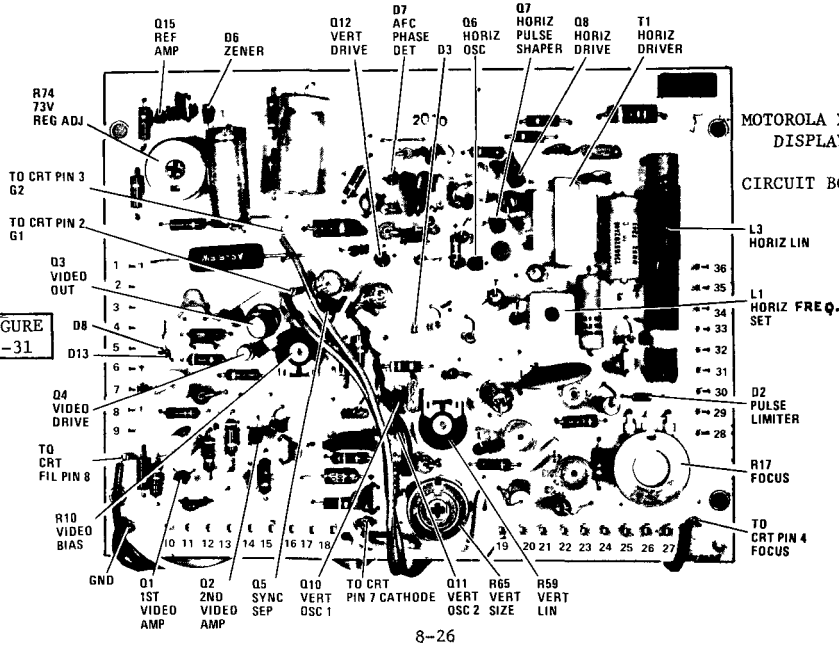


FIGURE 8-31

8127

8128

(f) Enter the following program in the 2200:

```
1 PRINT "HO";
2 GO TO 1
RUN
EXECUTE
```

The display should fill with alternate HO.

(g) Set Horizontal Hold and Vertical Hold controls to midrange (see Figures 8-59 and 8-71).

(h) Adjust Horizontal Freq. Adjust, L1, for horizontal sync (see Figures 8-30 and 8-31).

(i) Adjust Vertical Size, R65 (R51 on the SM-227 diaplay). (See Figures 8-30 and 8-31), for a vertical height of 8.5 inches (21.6 cm) or 4.5 inches (11.4 cm) on the SM-227.

(j) Adjust Width, L4, for 10 inches (25.4 cm) horizontal deflection (see Figures 8-30 and 8-31) or 6.5 inches (16.5 cm) on the SM-227.

(k) Adjust Vertical Linearity, R52 (R59 on the XM-227 display), for characters of equal height.

(l) Adjust the centering tabs (Figure 8-60) on the CRT yoke for a centered display. Be sure the tabs are at least 90° from each other.

(m) Repeat steps (h) through (l) until proper horizontal deflection, vertical deflection, and centering raster are achieved.

(n) Adjust Focus, R17, for best overall focus (Figure 31). This adjustment is not on the XM-227 display.

8.3.4 *TAPE DRIVE UNIT*

Perform the following adjustments on the tape drive power supply chassis:

(a) Remove the top cover from the Video Display/Tape Drive Unit.

(b) Place the L559 PCB on an extender.

(c) Refer to Table 8-3. Connect a voltmeter between the point indicated and ±0V and measure the voltage.

TABLE 8-3

CASSETTE DRIVE CHASSIS POWER SUPPLY TEST POINTS

LOCATION	VOLTAGE	LIMITS	ADJUST	RIPPLE
L559 Pin B.1	+5VR	+4.80 vdc to +5.20 vdc	6324R10	35 mvp-p
L559 Pin A.1	+9V	+8.5 vdc to +11.0 vdc	-	0.6 v p-p
L559 Pin D.1	-9V	-8.8 vdc to -11.5 vdc	-	0.8 v p-p
L559 Pin H.2	CP+	+25 vdc to +37 vdc	-	1 v p-p
L559 Pin K.2	CP-	-25 vdc to -37 vdc	-	1 v p-p

(d) With an oscilloscope and a X1 probe, measure the AC ripple at the points indicated in Table 8-3. AC ripple should not exceed the limits specified.

(e) If any voltage or ripple measurement is out of specification, troubleshoot the tape drive power supply.

Forward Speed Check/Adjustment

(a) Connect oscilloscope or frequency counter to L7 pin 6 (6175 pc).

(b) Insert an IT 800 FCI Standard Test Tape into the tape drive. Key LOAD, EXECUTE.

(c) The frequency indicated should be 3000 ± 50 Hz frequency or 333 µs ± 5 µs (period of one cycle).

(d) If the frequency is not within specifications, change the capstan drive belt as described in paragraph 8.5.3.

(e) If the frequency is not within specifications after the belt is changed, the capstan motor pulley must be changed. There are three different pulleys available. The pulleys for 60 Hz operation are color coded, *gold* the slowest, *silver* intermediate and *red* the fastest. For 50 Hz operation, the respective pulleys are *large silver, violet and black.*

Head Skew Adjustment

(a) Using X10 probes, connect channel 1 of an oscilloscope to L7 pin 6 and channel 2 to L8 pin 6 on the 6175 PC board. Set the oscilloscope control as follows:

Vertical Sense; Display Mode: . . . . . .1V/div.; chopped
Sweep Time: . . . . . 50 µsec/div.
Trigger Mode: . . . . . AC; Normal
Trigger Source: . . . . . Channel 1

(b) Insert an IT 800 FCI Standard Test Tape into the tape drive. Key LOAD, EXECUTE.

(c) Two sine waves should be observed. Use the vertical position controls to position the sine waves with equal swings above and below the zero reference line.

(d) Refer to Figure 8-35. The channel 2 trace should not deviate from the channel 1 trace by more than 20 µsec in either direction. If the deviation is greater than 20 µsec, perform steps (e) through (h).

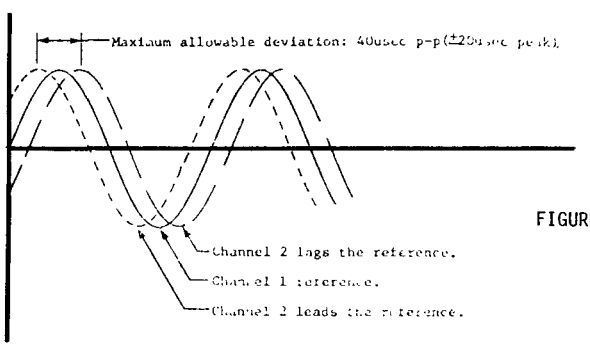


FIGURE 8-35

(e) Refer to Figure 8-36. Using a sharp instrument, scrape the glyptol from the adjusting screws.

> NOTE:
> When adjusting the skew, always loosen one screw first and then tighten the opposite one.

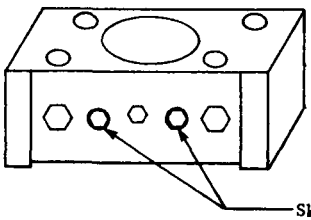


FIGURE 8-36

(f) If channel 2 trace lags channel 1 (to the right of channel 1) loosen the *left* screw approximately one-half turn.

> CAUTION:
> Never allow the torque on the adjustment screw to exceed 10 inch-ounces (.7 newton-cm.) or damage to the tape head will result.

(g) While observing the two traces on the oscilloscope, tighten the opposite screw until the skew specification can be met. If necessary, alternately loosen and tighten the two screws until the skew is correct. Finally, tighten both screws to 10 inch-ounces.

(h) If channel 2 trace leads channel 1 (to the left of channel 1), start the adjustment by loosening the *right* screw. Then proceed as described in step (g).

(i) Reapply glyptol to the screws when the adjustment is complete.

(j) The amplitude of both signals should be at least 6 volts p-p. If not, check the head and/or the 6175 PC board.

File Protect Switch Adjustment

(a) Insert an unprotected cassette (with tab) into the tape drive.

(b) Loosen the two screws holding the switch in place.

(c) Move the switch towards the cassette until it actuates, then move it an additional .050 inch (.127 cm) to .070 inch (.178 cm).

(d) Tighten the screws.

(e) Insert a protected cassette (tab removed) into the tape drive. The switch should not actuate. If it does, reposition the switch and repeat steps (a) through (e).

8.4 CHASSIS LAYOUT(S) & SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

8.4.1 *2200 CPU; MODELS A, B, C; 6 I/O SLOTS*

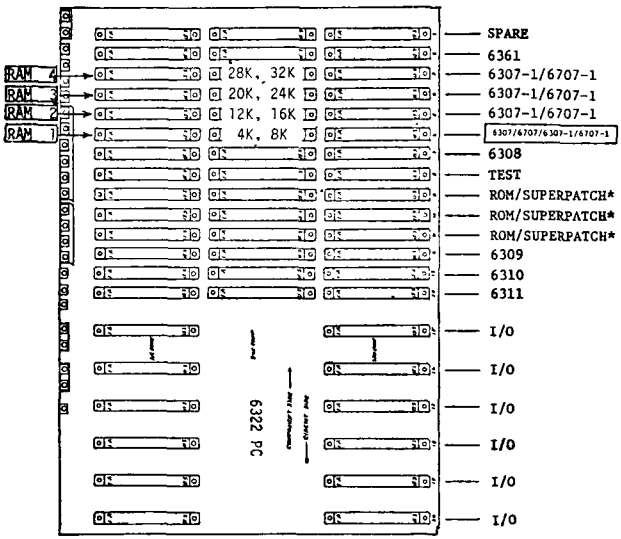


TABLE 8-4

	RAM SLOT#			
	RAM 1	RAM 2	RAM 3	RAM 4
4K	07	-	-	-
8K	07-1	-	-	-
12K	07-1	07	-	-
16K	07-1	07-1	-	-
20K	07-1	07-1	07	-
24K	07-1	07-1	07-1	-
28K	07-1	07-1	07-1	07
32K	07-1	07-1	07-1	07-1

07 = 4K 6307/6707 RAM
07-1 = 8K 6307-1/6707-1 RAM

* = 6325/6527/6547

FIGURE 8-37

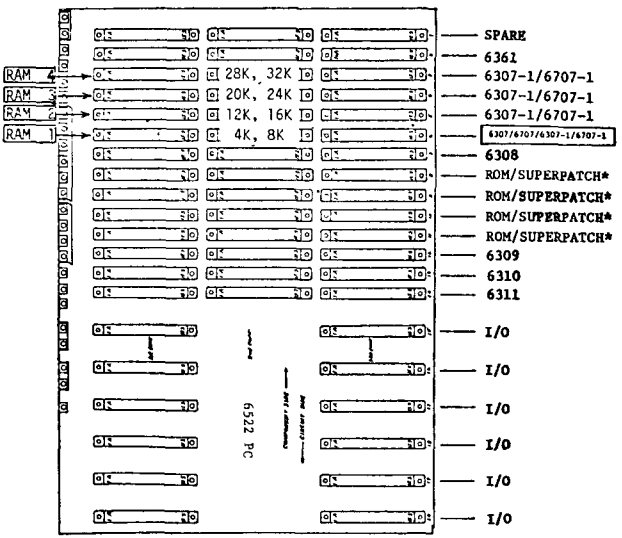


TABLE 8-5

	RAM SLOT#			
	RAM 1	RAM 2	RAM 3	RAM 4
4K	07	-	-	-
8K	07-1	-	-	-
12K	07-1	07	-	-
16K	07-1	07-1	-	-
20K	07-1	07-1	07	-
24K	07-1	07-1	07-1	-
28K	07-1	07-1	07-1	07
32K	07-1	07-1	07-1	07-1

07 = 4K 6307/6707 RAM
07-1 = 8K 6307-1/6707-1 RAM

* = 6325/6527/6547

FIGURE 8-38

2200 A/B/C, 6 I/O SLOT CPU MOTHERBOARD - WIRING SIDE

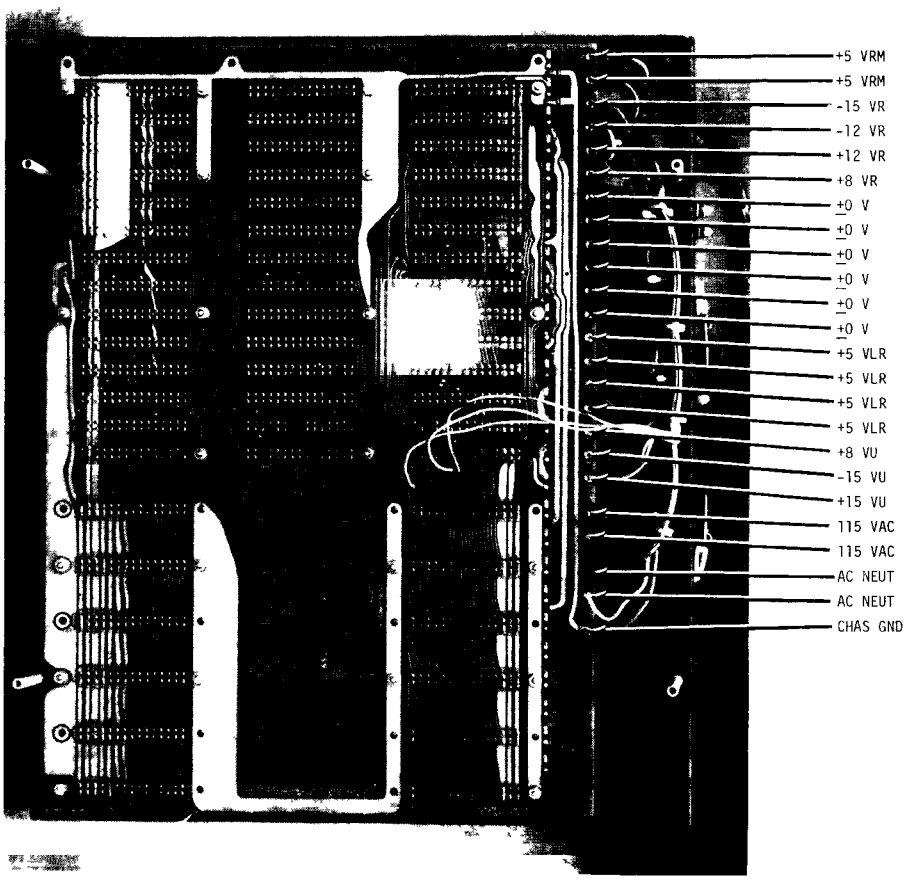


FIGURE 8-39

8.4.2 *2200 CPU; MODELS A, B, C; 11 I/O SLOTS (2219)*

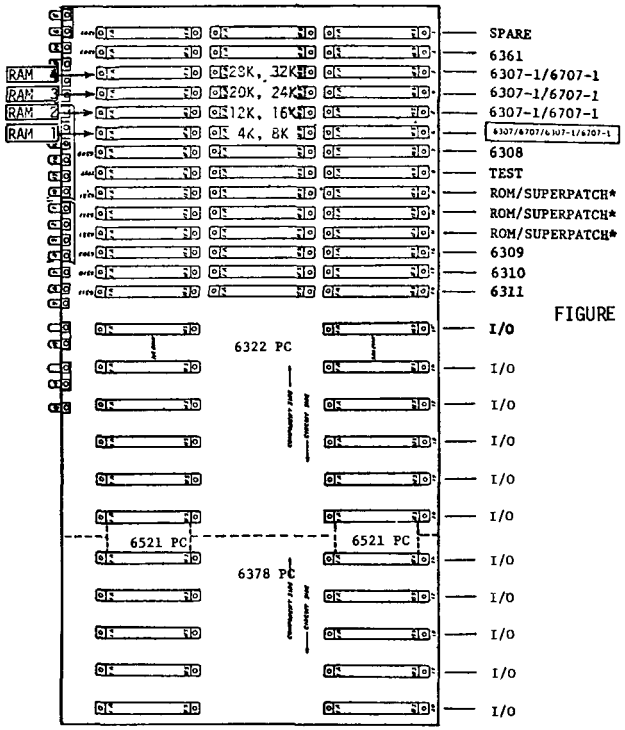


FIGURE 8-40

RAM SLOT#	RAM 1	RAM 2	RAM 3	RAM 4
4K	07	-	-	-
8K	07-1	-	-	-
12K	07-1	07	-	-
16K	07-1	07-1	-	-
20K	07-1	07-1	07	-
24K	07-1	07-1	07-1	-
28K	07-1	07-1	07-1	07
32K	07-1	07-1	07-1	07-1

TABLE 8-6

07 = 4K 6307/6707 RAM
07-1 = 8K 6307-1/6707-1 RAM

* = 6325/6527/6547

2200 A/B/C, 11 I/O SLOT CPU (2219) - 6322 MOTHERBOARD, WIRING SIDE

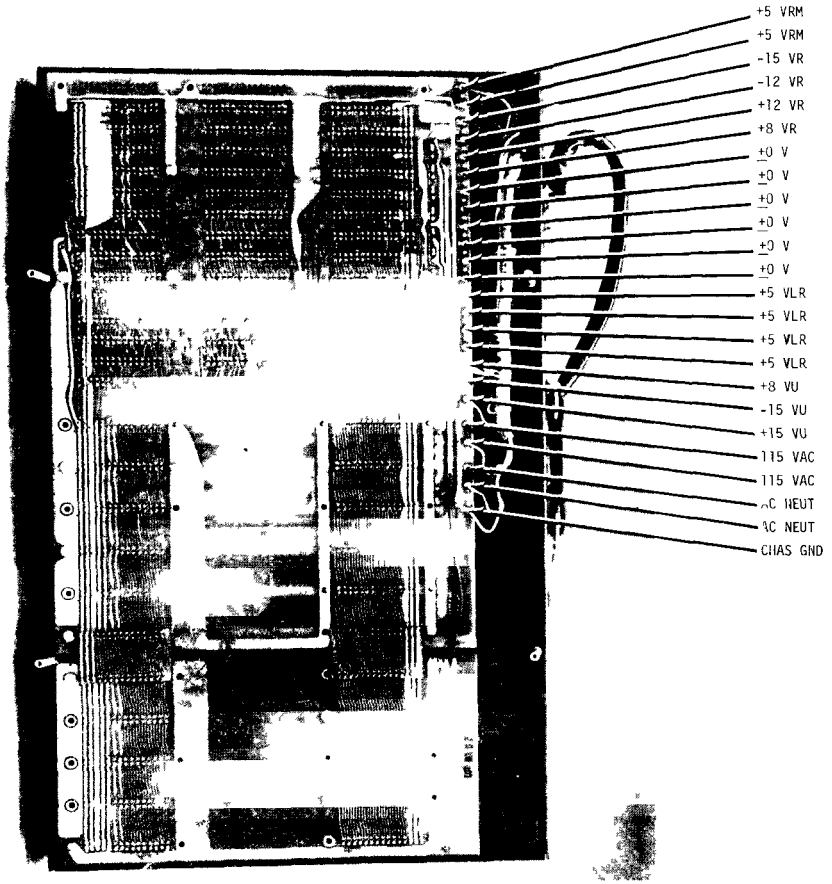


FIGURE 8-41

8.4.3 *6222 VERSION; 2219 CHASSIS*

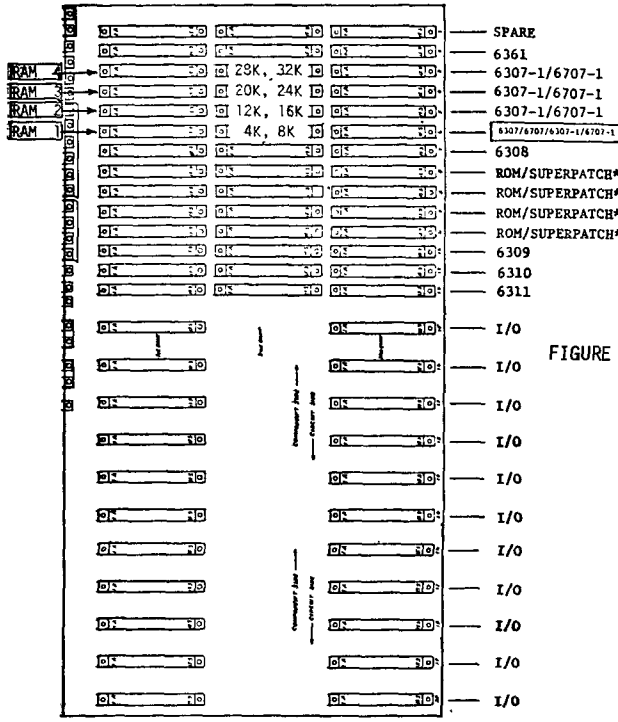


FIGURE 8-42

	RAM SLOT#			
	RAM 1	RAM 2	RAM 3	RAM 4
4K	07	-	-	-
8K	07-1	-	-	-
12K	07-1	07	-	-
16K	07-1	07-1	-	-
20K	07-1	07-1	07	-
24K	07-1	07-1	07-1	-
28K	07-1	07-1	07-1	07
32K	07-1	07-1	07-1	07-1

TABLE 8-7

07 = 4K 6307/6707 RAM
07-1 = 8K 6307-1/6707-1 RAM

* = 6325/6527/6547

2200 A/B/C, 11 I/O SLOT CPU (2219) - 6222 MOTHERBOARD, WIRING SIDE

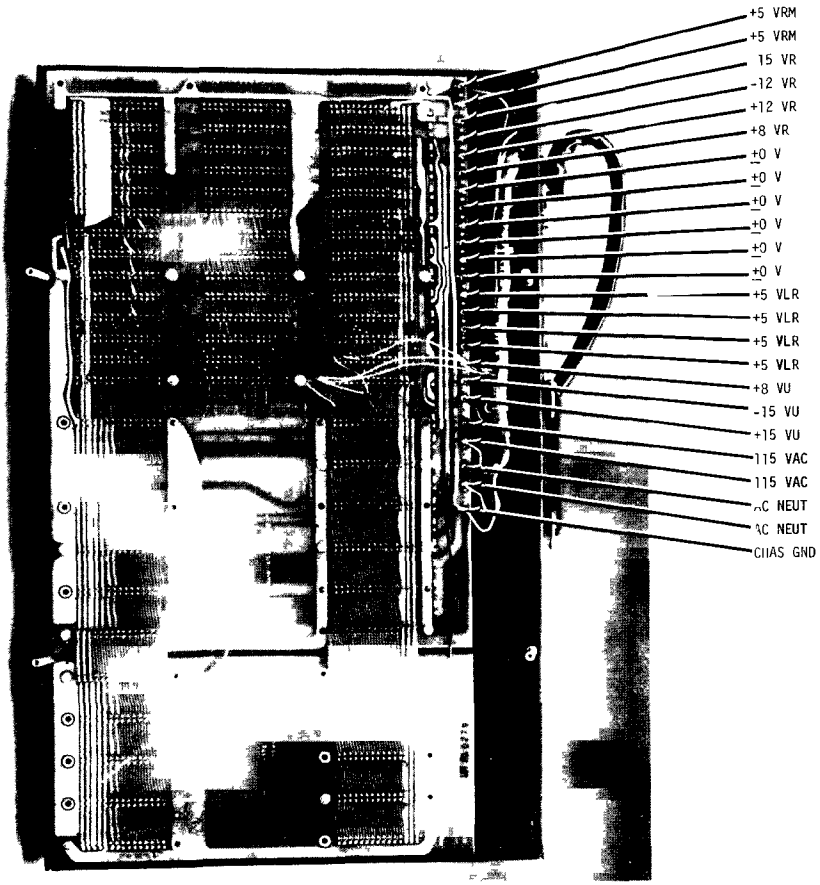


FIGURE 8-43

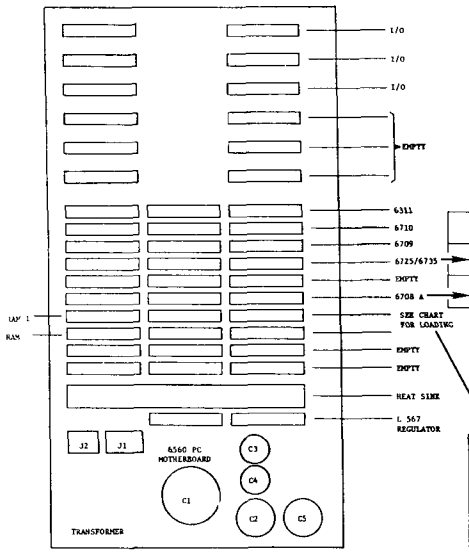


FIGURE 8-44

2200S/T; 3 SLOT I/O CHASSIS

TABLE 8-8

S/T with OPT 21	S/T with OPT 22	S/T with OPT 23	T (S with OPT 24)
6735 A	6735 B	6735 C	6735 D
6708 B	6708 C	6708 C	6708 D

Table 8-9 shows the various RAM configurations for the 6707 and 6717 MOS Memory Boards. The 6717 can only be used in 2200 CPUs where ECN 4795 has been implemented. The 6707, 6707-1, 6717 and 6717-1 are 4K, 8K, 8K and 16K MOS Memory Boards respectively.

MEMORY SIZE / RAM SLOT	4K	8K	12K	16K	24K	32K
1	6307 or 6707	6307-1 or 6707-1 or 6717	6307-1 or 6707-1 or 6717	6307-1 or 6707-1 or 6717-1	6717-1	6717-1
2	OPEN	OPEN	6307 or 6707	6307-1 or 6707-1 or	6717	6717-1

TABLE 8-9

OPEN WHEN USING 6717-1 IN SLOT#1

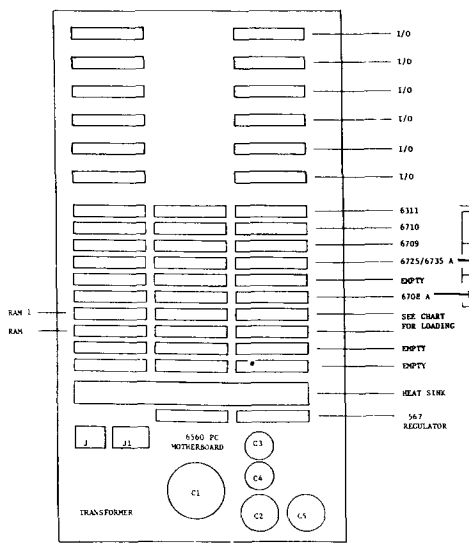


TABLE 8-10

S/T with OP-20, 21	S/T with OP-20,22	S/T with OP-20,23	T (S with OP-20,24)
6735 A	6735 B	6735 C	6735 D
6708 B	6708 C	6708 C	6708 D

2200S/T with OP-20
(6 I/O SLOTS)

FIGURE 8-45

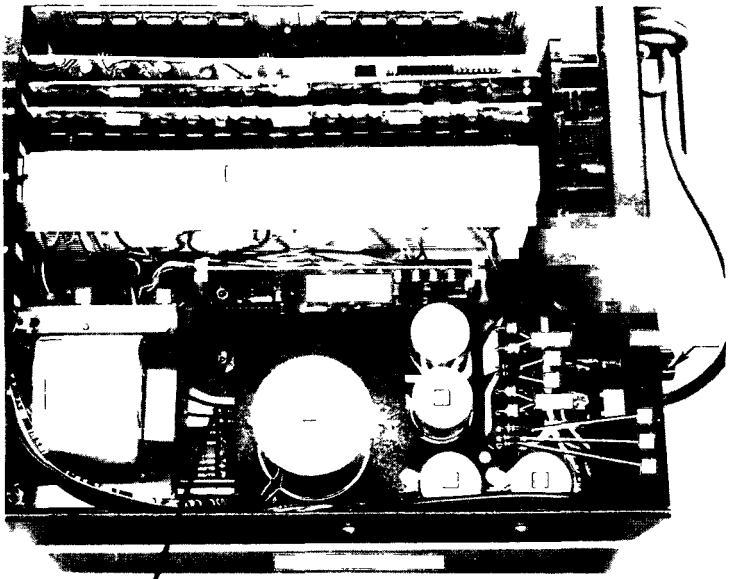
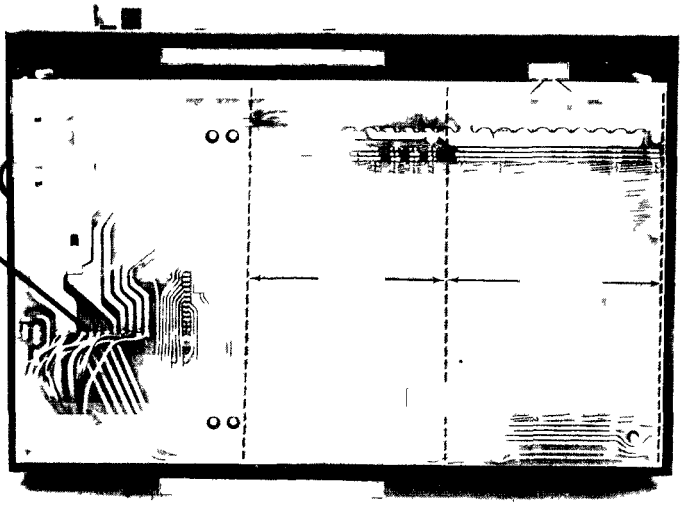


FIGURE 8-46

FIGURE 8-47



8.4.5 *2200 S/T - 9 SLOT (OP 20A)*

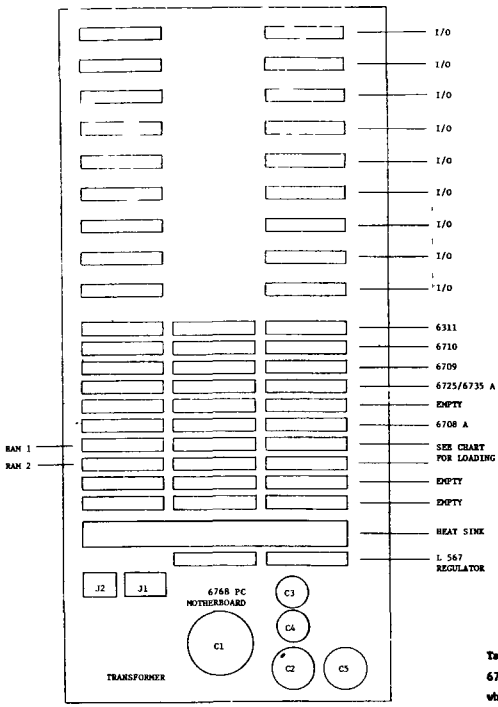


FIGURE 8-48

TABLE 8-11

S/T with OP-20A,21	S/T with OP-20A,22	S/T with OP-20A,23	T 9-slot (S with OP-20A,24)
6735 A	6735 B	6735 C	6735 D
6708 B	6708 C	6708 C	6708 D

TABLE 8-12

Table 8-12 shows the various RAM configurations for the 6707 and 6717 MOS Memory Boards. The 6717 can only be used in 2200 CPUs where ECN 4795 has been implemented. The 6707, 6707-1, 6717 and 6717-1 are 4K, 8K, 8K and 16K MOS Memory Boards respectively.

MEMORY SIZE / RAM SLOT	4K	8K	12K	16K	24K	32K
1	6307 or 6707	6307-1 or 6707-1 or 6717	6307-1 or 6707-1 or 6717	6307-1 or 6707-1 or 6717-1	6717-1	6717-1
2	OPEN	OPEN	6307 or 6707	6307-1 or 6707-1 or	6717	6717-1

OPEN WHEN USING 6717-1 IN SLOT#1

2200 S/T WITH OP-20A (9 I/O SLOTS)

6568 - WIRE SIDE

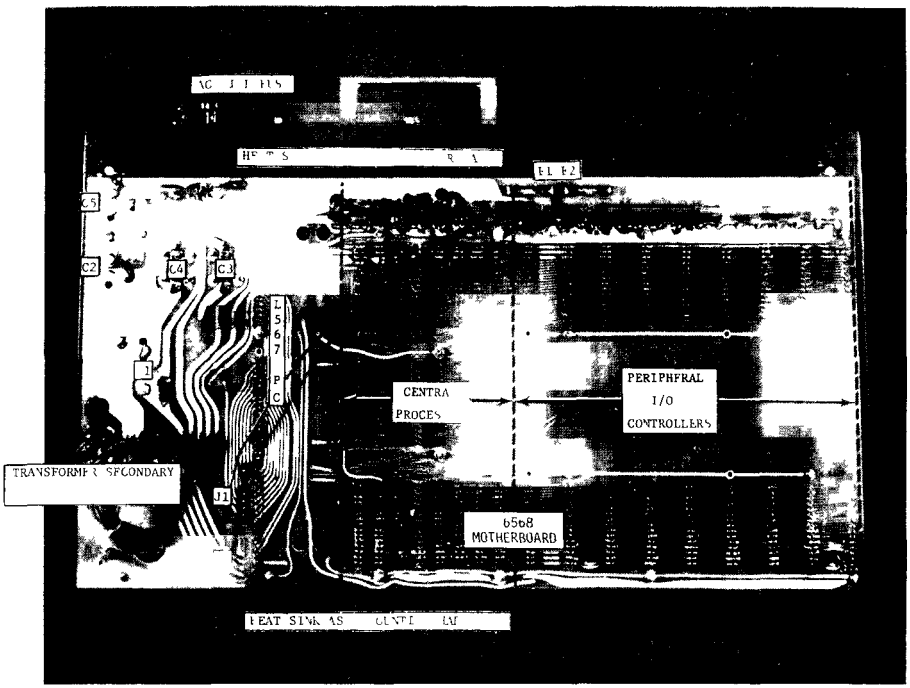


FIGURE 8-49

8.4.6 *2200 PS- POWER SUPPLY FOR CPU MODELS A, B and C*

FIGURE
8-50

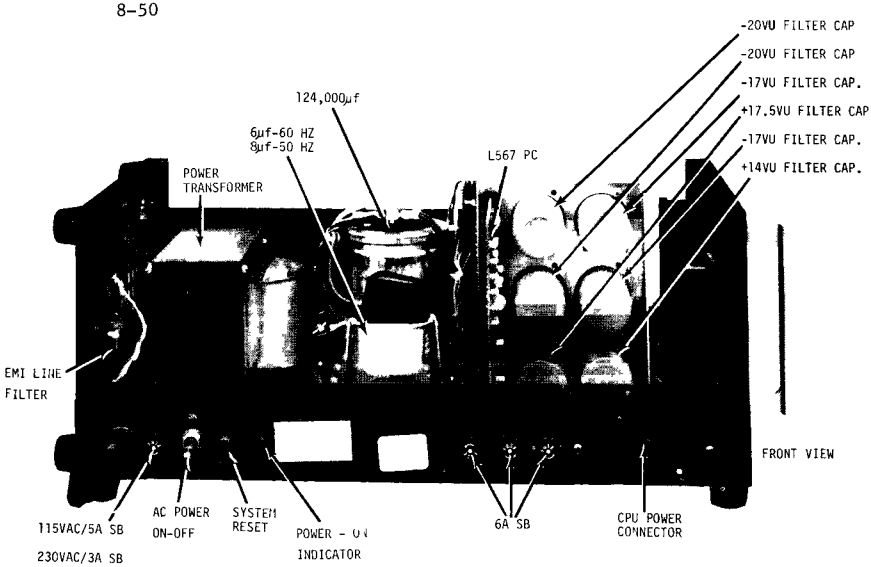
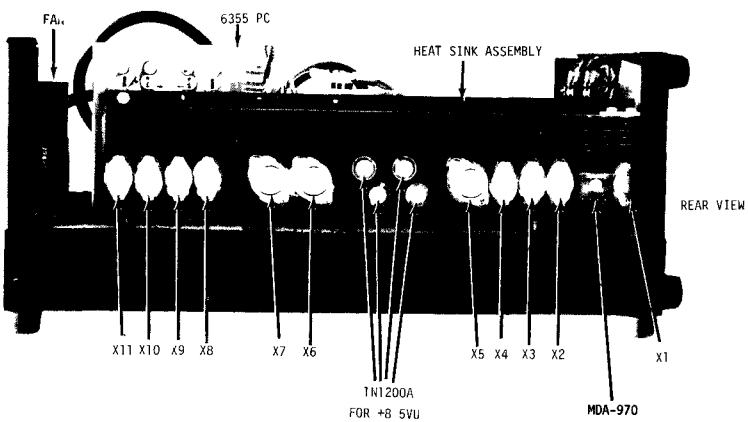


FIGURE
8-51

2200 PS (POWER SUPPLY
FOR 2200 A/B/C CPU s



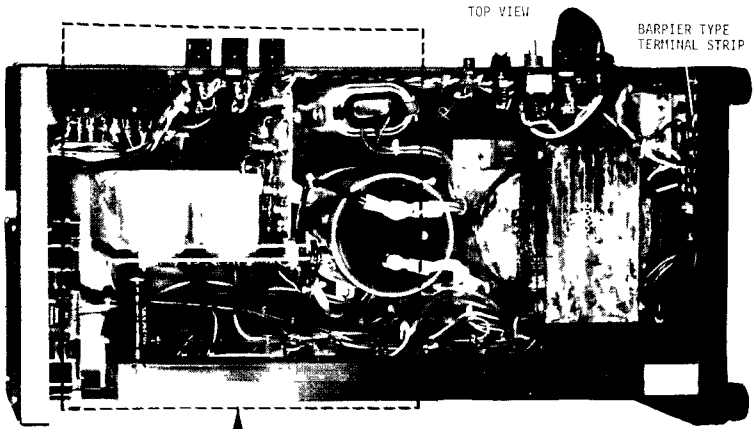
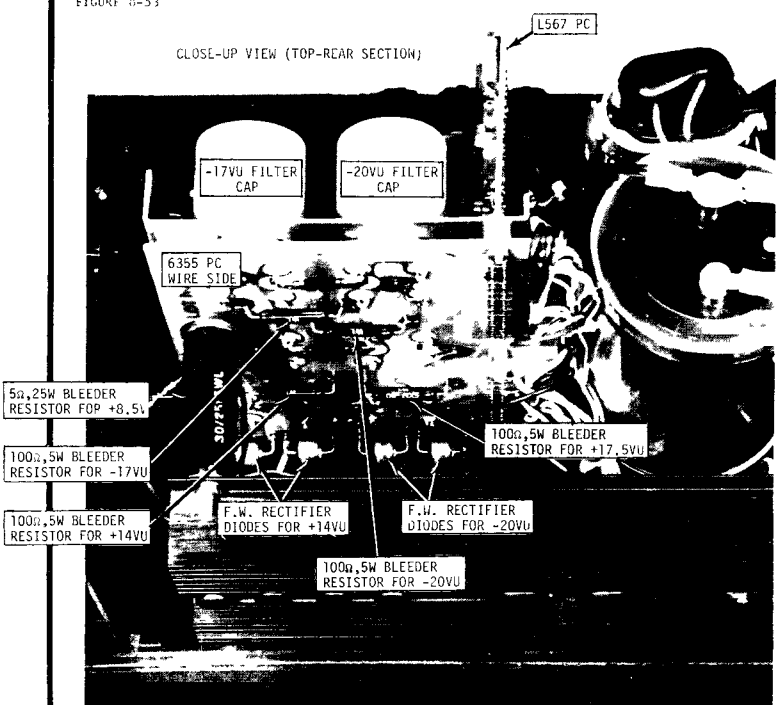

TOP VIEW
BARRIER TYPE
TERMINAL STRIP

FIGURE 8-53


CLOSE-UP VIEW (TOP-REAR SECTION)
L567 PC
-17VU FILTER CAP
-20VU FILTER CAP
6355 PC WIRE SIDE
5Ω,25W BLEEDER RESISTOR FOR +8.5V
100Ω,5W BLEEDER RESISTOR FOR -17VU
100Ω,5W BLEEDER RESISTOR FOR +14VU
F.W. RECTIFIER DIODES FOR +14VU
F.W. RECTIFIER DIODES FOR -20VU
100Ω,5W BLEEDER RESISTOR FOR -20VU
100Ω,5W BLEEDER RESISTOR FOR +17.5VU

8.4.7 *2215 BASIC KEYBOARD*

The 2215 keyboard is comprised of a 6348 circuit board with I/O cable (Ref: Schematic Manual), mounted in a metal chassis.

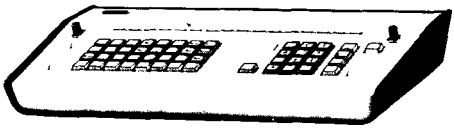


FIGURE 8-54

To disassemble, remove six mounting screws from base plate; reverse procedure for assembly.

The I/O controller for interfacing a 2215 keyboard with a CPU is the 6367 circuit board. This board is plugged into one of the CPU I/O slots, shown in the CPU chassis layout diagrams in this publication.

8.4.8 *2222 ALPHANUMERIC KEYBOARD*

The 2222 keyboard is comprised of a 6330 circuit board with I/O cable (Ref: Schematic Manual), mounted in a metal chassis.

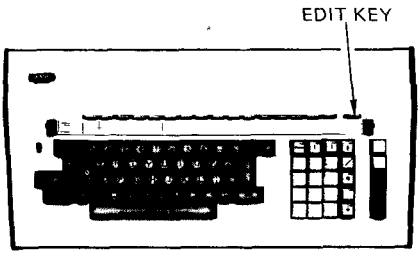


FIGURE 8-55

To disassemble, remove six mounting screws from base plate; reverse procedure for assembly.

The I/O controller for interfacing a 2222 keyboard with a CPU is the 6367 circuit board. This board is plugged into one of the CPU I/O slots, shown in the CPU chassis layout diagrams in this publication.

8.4.9 *2223 UPPER/LOWER CASE ALPHANUMERIC KEYWORD KEYBOARD*

The 2223 keyboard is comprised of a 6443 circuit board (also used as 2220 console keyboard) with the I/O cable (Ref: Schematic Manual), mounted in a metal chassis.

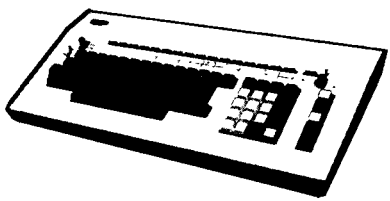


FIGURE 8-56

To disassemble, remove six mounting screws from base plate; reverse procedure for assembly.

The I/O controller for interfacing a 2223 keyboard with a CPU is either the 6367 (A, B, C systems) or the 6562 (S, T systems; 2220) circuit board. The controller is plugged into one of the CPU I/O slots, shown in the CPU chassis layout diagrams in this publication.

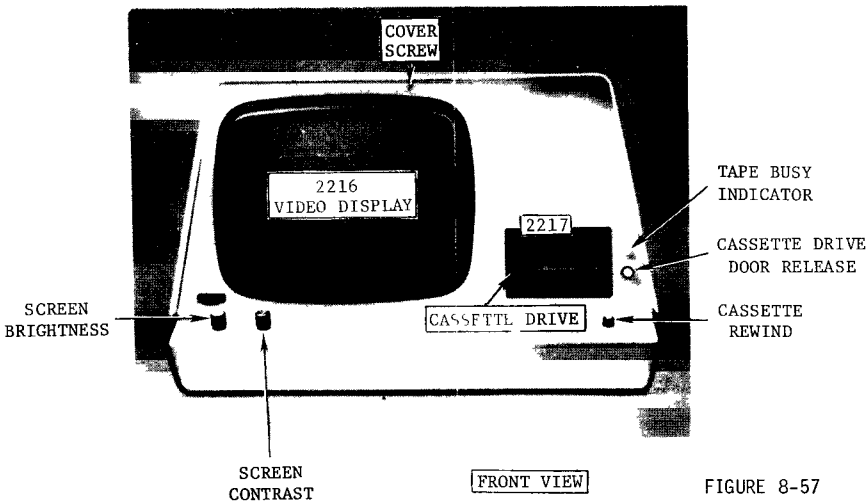
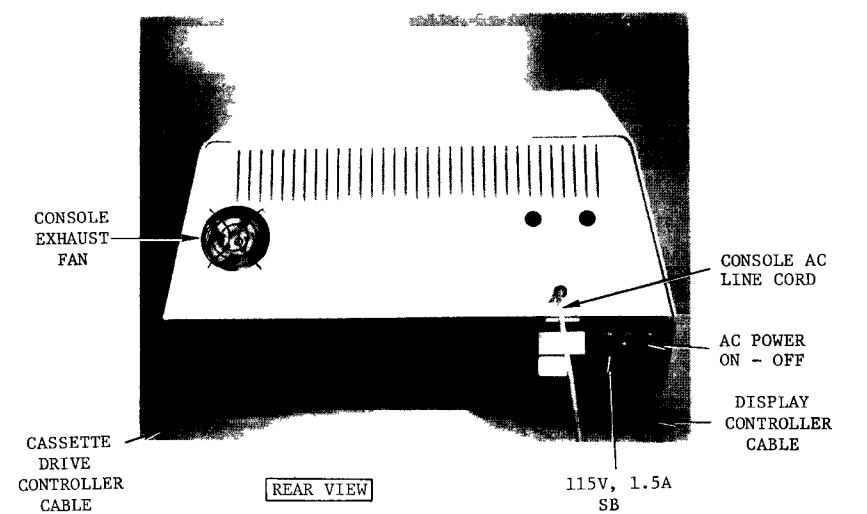


FIGURE 8-57

FIGURE 8-58



2216/2217 VIDEO DISPLAY AND CASSETTE DRIVE CONSOLE
REAR VIEW

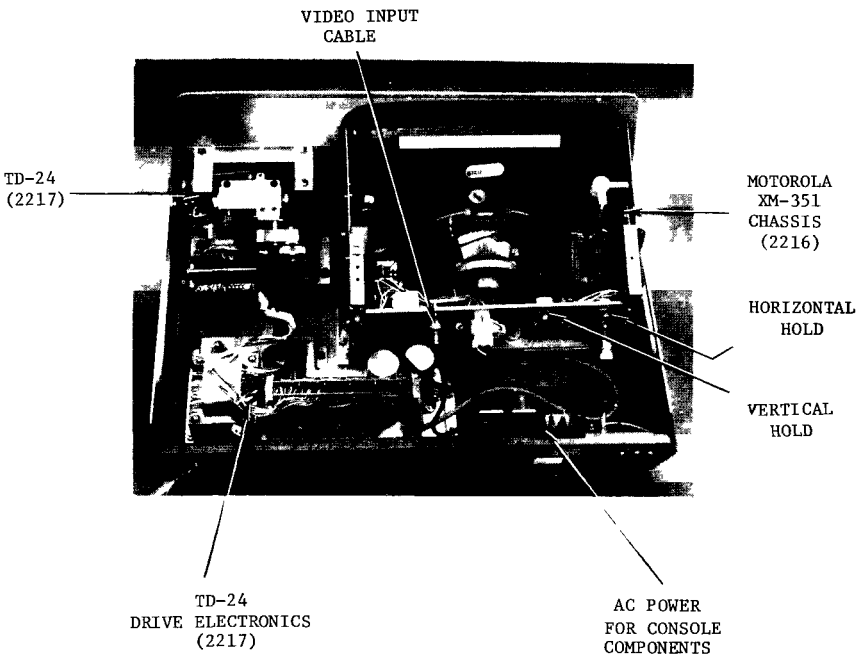
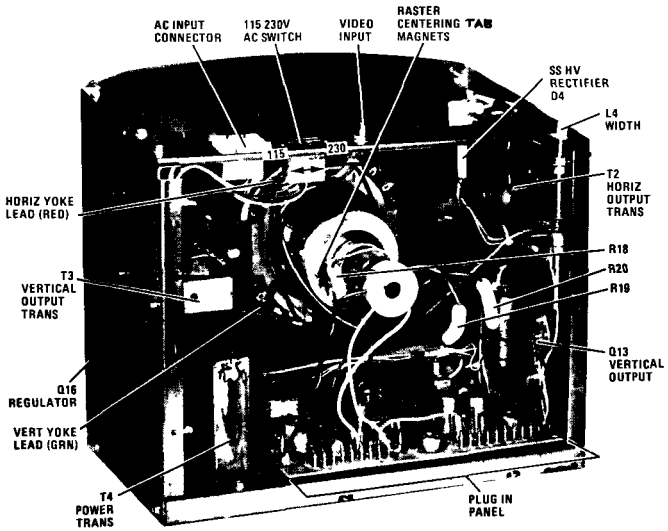


FIGURE 8-59

The 2216 Video Display is comprised of an 8" x 10.5" CRT mounted in a Motorola display chassis (Motorola #XM351). Also mounted within the Motorola chassis is the CRT electronics plug-in circuit board (Motorola #V13A).

FIGURE 8-60



MODEL XM351
CHASSIS REAR VIEW - COMPONENT LOCATION

MODEL 2216 VIDEO DISPLAY CHASSIS DIFFERENCES

Two versions of the WANG 2216 exist:

Version A (Figure 8-61) has one BNC connector and a 115/220 VAC line switch mounted on the rear panel. A 75 ohm termination resistor is mounted on the Motorola circuit board.

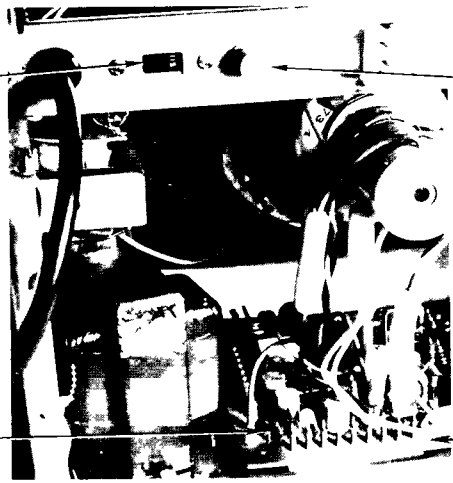


FIGURE 8-61

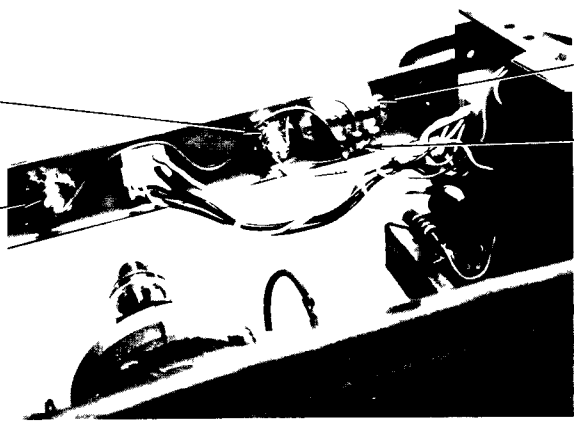


FIGURE 8-62

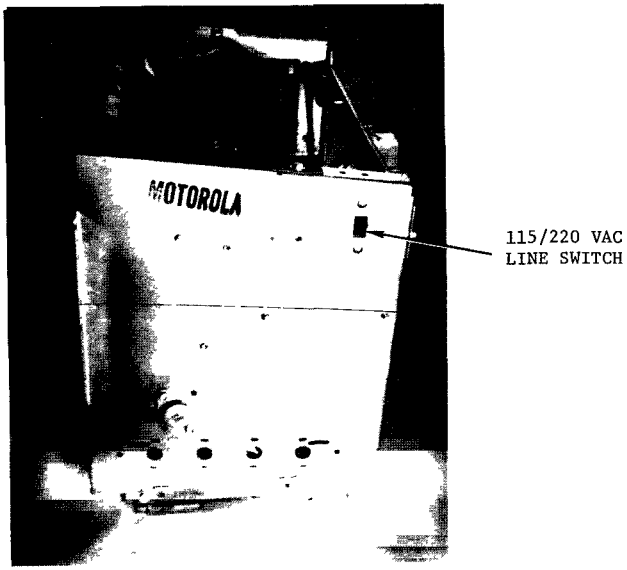
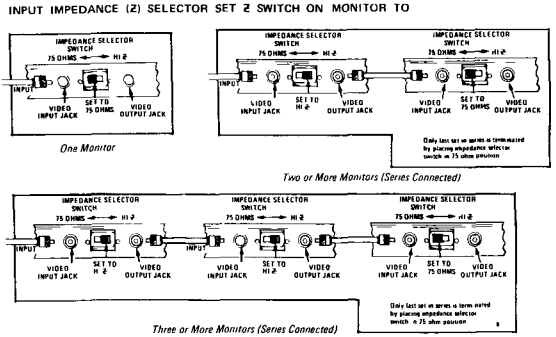


FIGURE 8-63

Version B (Figure 8-62) has two BNC connectors mounted on the rear panel. The 75 ohm termination resistor is mounted on a rear panel slide switch instead of being mounted on the Motorola circuit board as in Version A. The Version B rear panel slide switch is not to be confused with the 115/220 VAC line switch located on the Version A rear panel. The Version B 115/220 VAC line switch is relocated on the side of the chassis as shown in Figure 8-63.

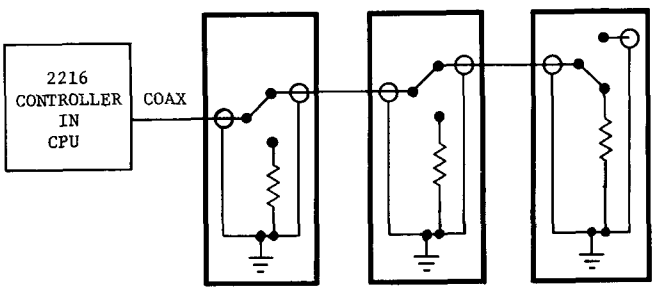
APPLICATION NOTE - Version B units may be cascaded by connecting a male-to-male coaxial cable from the output BNC of the first unit to the input BNC of the next unit. Only the last unit must have the 75 ohm termination resistor switched in; all other units must have the resistor switched out and the output BNC switched in. Viewing the Version B 2216 from the rear, sliding the switch to the left switches the termination resistor in and the output BNC out; sliding the switch to the right switches the termination resistor out and the output BNC in. See Figures 8-64 and 8-65 below.

FIGURE 8-64



Impedance Switch Arrangement

FIGURE 8-65



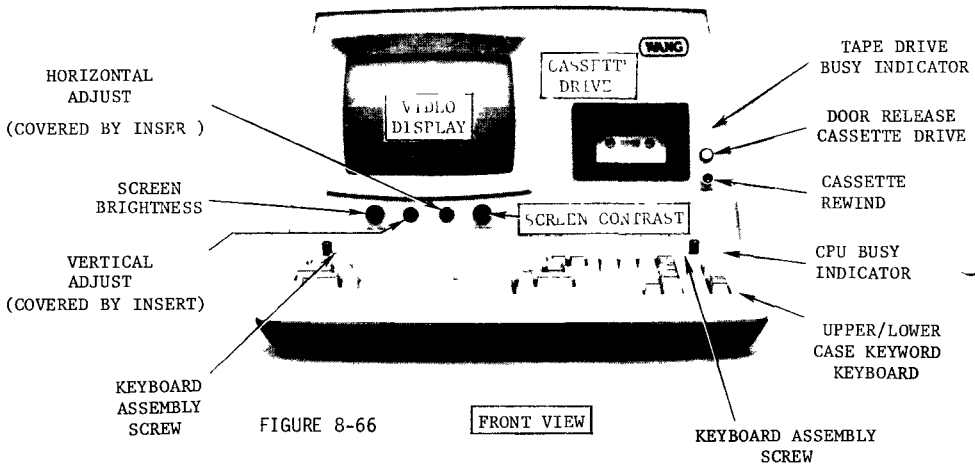
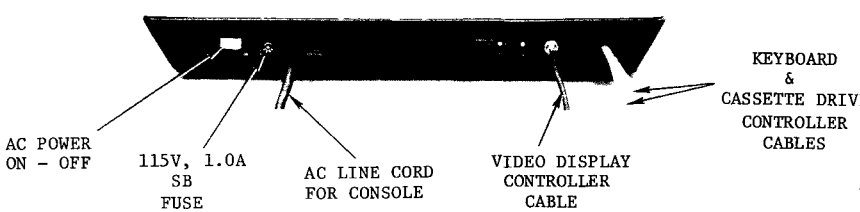


FIGURE 8-66 FRONT VIEW

FIGURE 8-67 REAR VIEW

COVER SCREWS



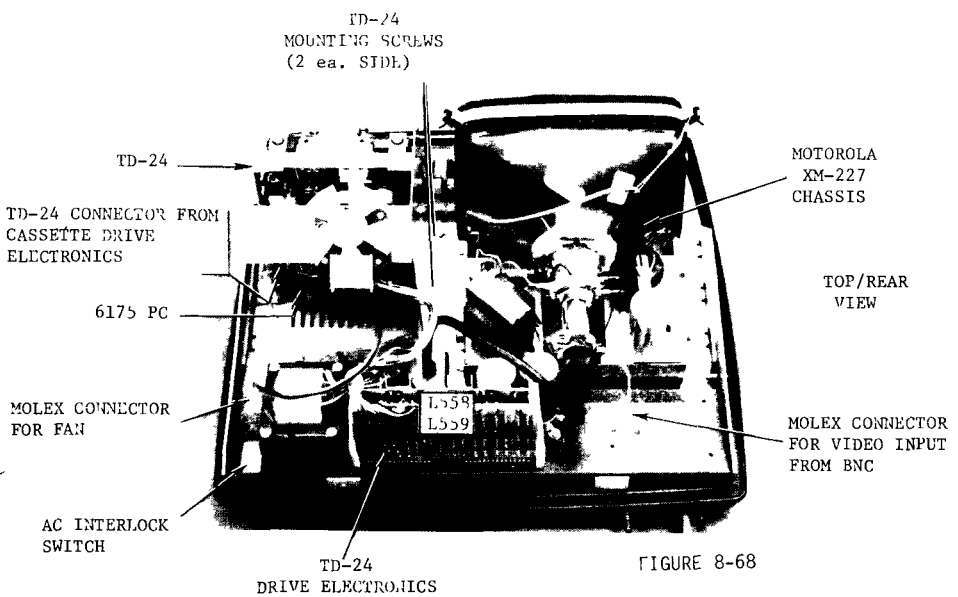


FIGURE 8-68

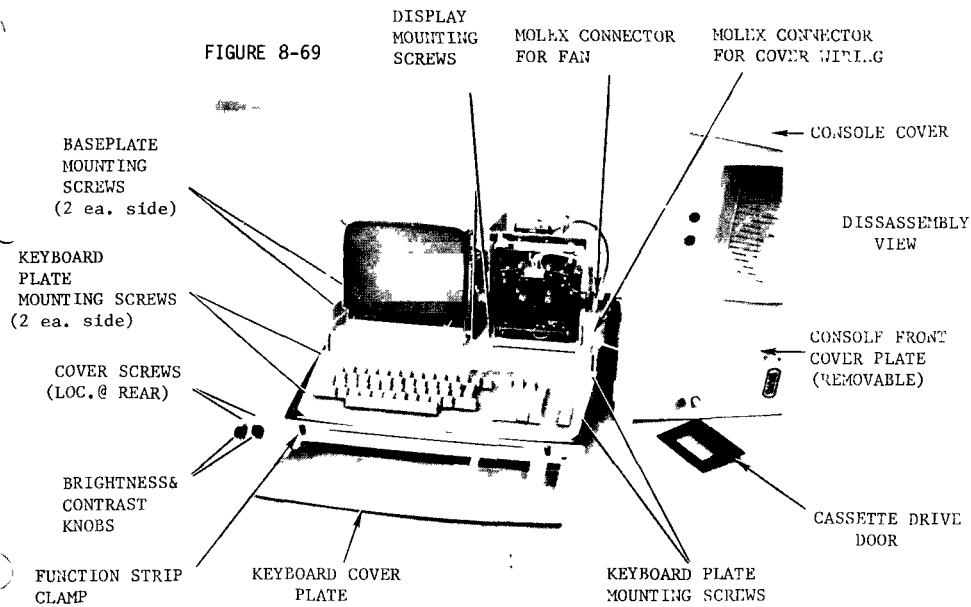


FIGURE 8-69

2220 CONSOLE - TOP VIEW

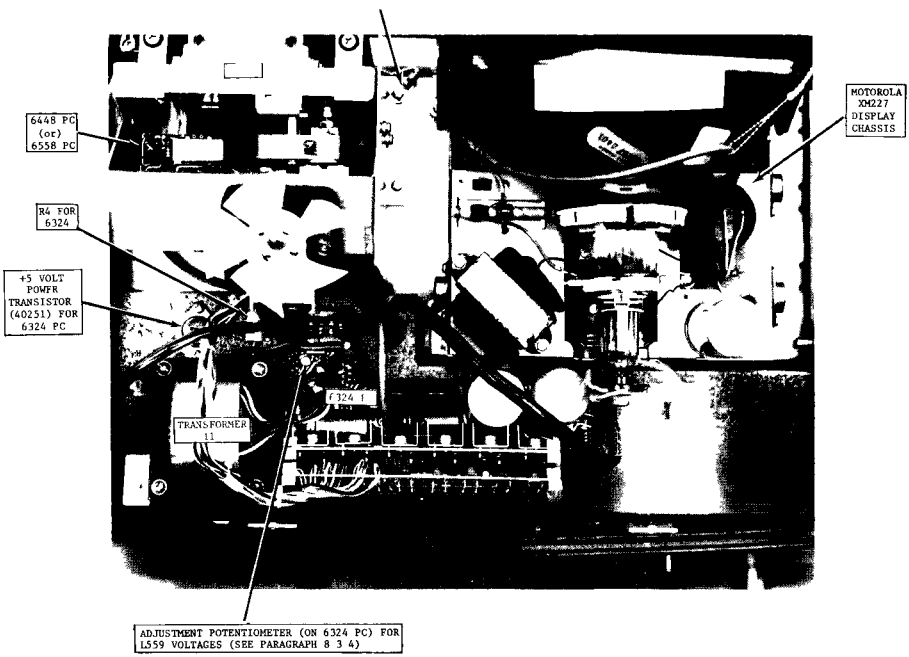


FIGURE 8-70

The 2220 video display is comprised of a 5.5" x 7.5" CRT, mounted in a Motorola display chassis (Motorola #XM227). Also mounted within the Motorola chassis is the CRT electronics circuit board (Motorola #V41A).

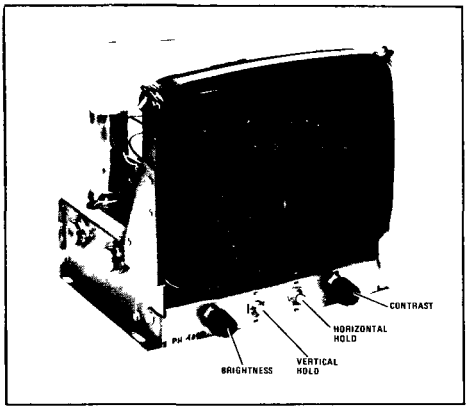
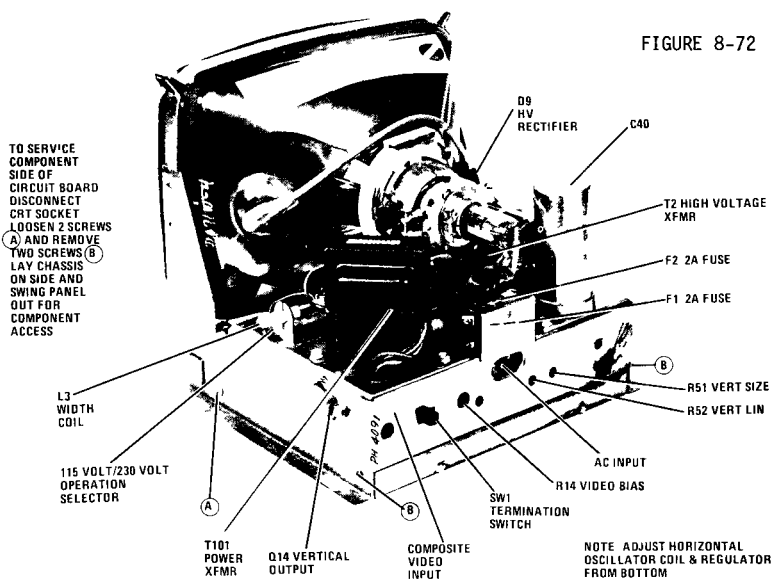
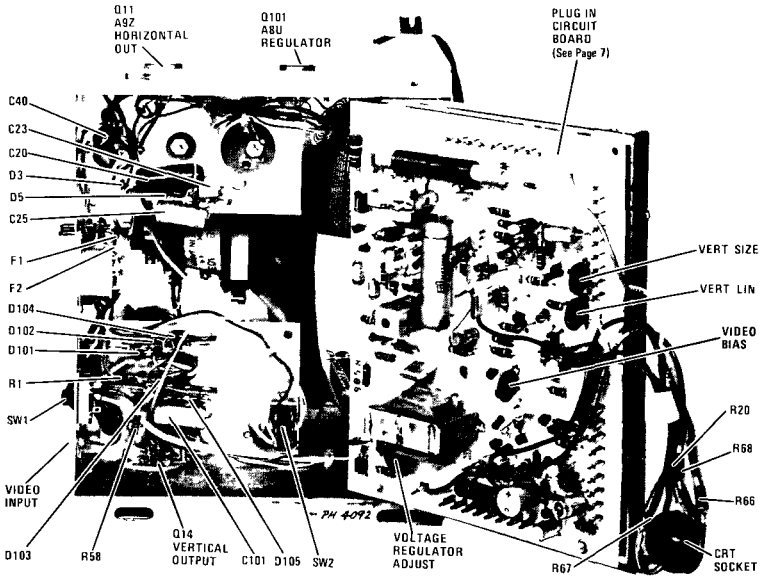


FIGURE 8-71

XM-227
MOTOROLA
DISPLAY
CHASSIS

FIGURE 8-72





PARTS LOCATION - BOTTOM VIEW

FIGURE 8-73

A coaxial cable with BNC connectors interface the display module to its I/O controller in the CPU.

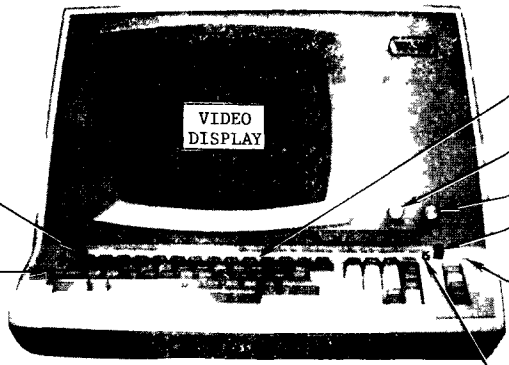
The primary I/O controllers for this video display are the 6312 plus 6313 piggyback configuration circuit boards for 60 Hz line operating frequency. For 50 Hz line frequency, the piggyback circuit board is a 6350 instead of a 6313 (Ref: Schematic Manual).

The keyword keyboard is identical to the model 2223 (a 6443 circuit board). The I/O controller can be either a 6367 (A, B, C systems) or a 6562 (S, T systems). Reference: Schematic Manual.

As with the 2223, an I/O cable connects cassette drive electronics to CPU I/O controller.

FRONT VIEW

FIGURE 8-74



FUNCTION STRIP

SCREEN BRIGHTNESS

SCREEN CONTRAST

FUNCTION STRIP CLAMP

CPU BUSY INDICATOR

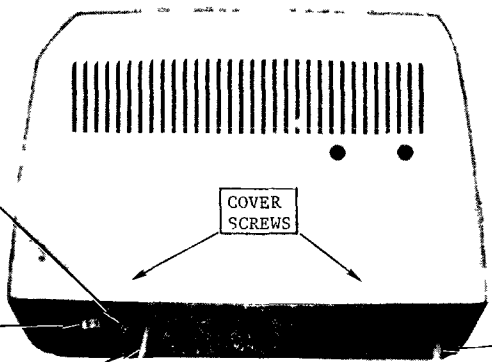
KEYBOARD ASSEMBLY SCREW

FUNCTION STRIP CLAMP

UPPER/LOWER CASE KEYWORD KEYBOARD

REAR VIEW

FIGURE 8-75

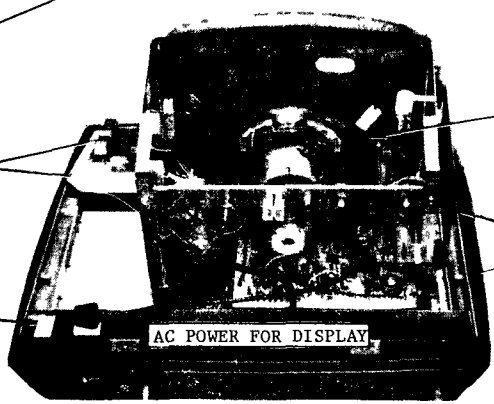


115V, 1.0A SB FUSE

AC POWER ON - OFF

KEYBOARD & VIDEO DISPLAY CONTROLLER CABLES

AC LINE CORD FOR CONSOLE



MOTOROLA XM351 DISPLAY CHASSIS

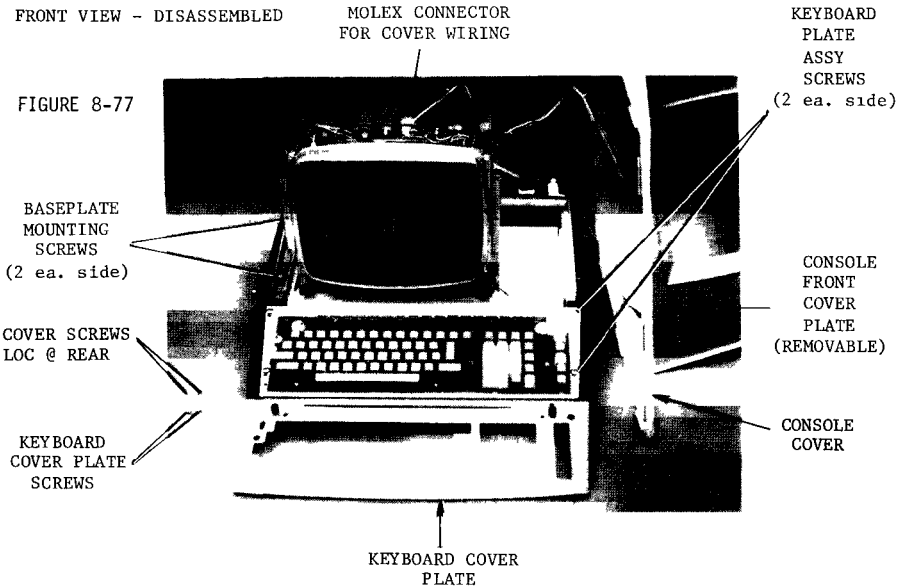
KEYBOARD PLATE ASSY SCREWS (2 ea. side)

BASEPLATE MOUNTING SCREWS (2 ea side)

AC INTERLOCK

FRONT VIEW - DISASSEMBLED

FIGURE 8-77



Note that for 2216/17, 2220, and 2226 consoles, a coaxial cable with BNC connectors interface all display modules to thin I/O controller in the CPU.

Although certain options exist for console display character sets, the primary I/O controllers for the Video Displays are the 6312 plus 6313 (piggyback configuration) circuit boards for 60 Hz line operating frequency. For 50 Hz line frequency, the controller board is a 6350, instead of the 6312 (Ref: Schematic Manual). For optional dual language (upper & lower case) character set, the 6529 piggyback circuit board is attached to either 6312 (60 HZ) or 6350 (50 Hz).

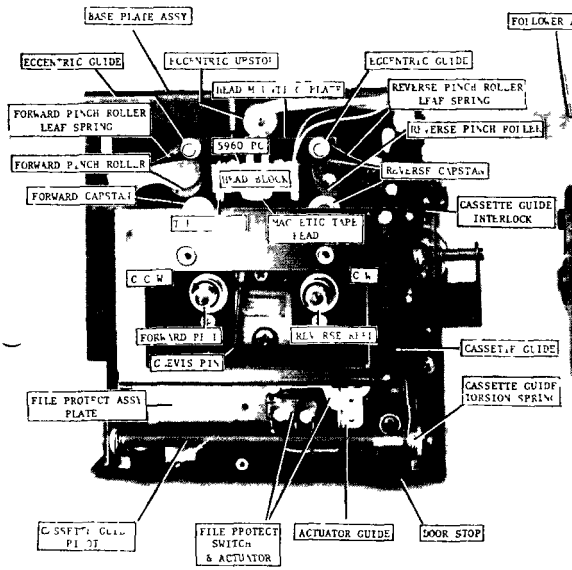
Front and rear panel controls plus Motorola circuit board adjustments are documented in the Electrical Adjustments section concerning the Video Displays (page, paragraph).

8.4.13 *2217 (TD-24) CASSETTE DRIVE*

The 2217 Cassette Drive is comprised of a TD-24 (60 Hz unit) or TD-24-1 (50 Hz unit) mechanical drive unit, interface circuit boards: 6175, L558 and L559, and an electronic subassembly chassis (6324 motherboard accommodates L558, L559) with self contained power supply (Ref: Schematic Manual).

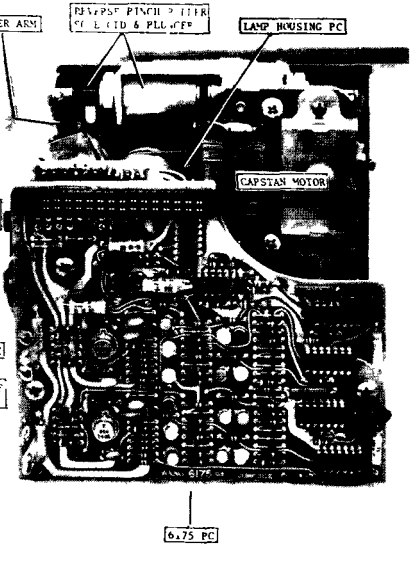
The I/O controller for interfacing the 2217 cassette drive can be either a 6316 (A, B, C systems) or 6562 (S, T systems). An I/O cable connects cassette drive electronics to CPU I/O controller.

FIGURE 8-78



FRONT VIEW

FIGURE 8-79



REAR VIEW

FIGURE 8-80

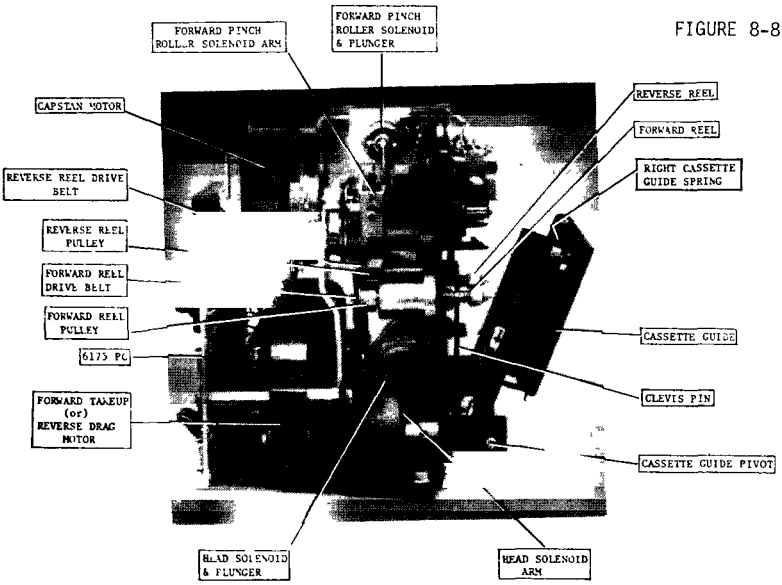
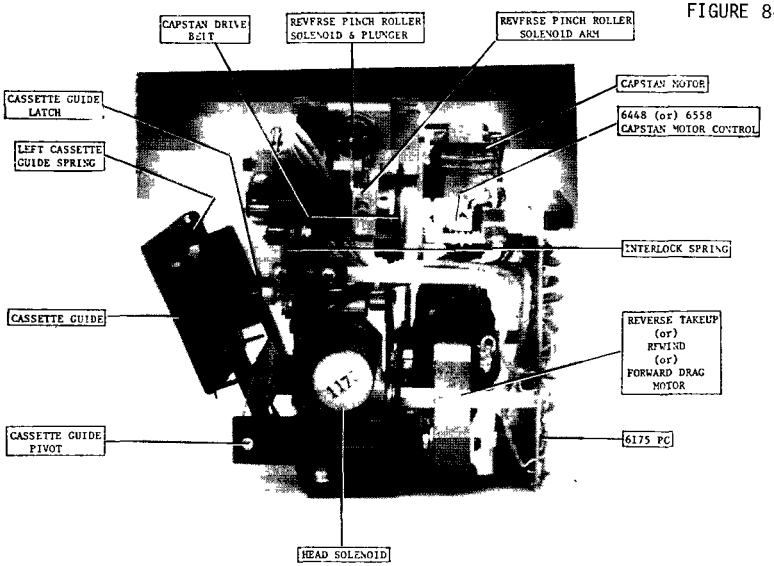


FIGURE 8-81



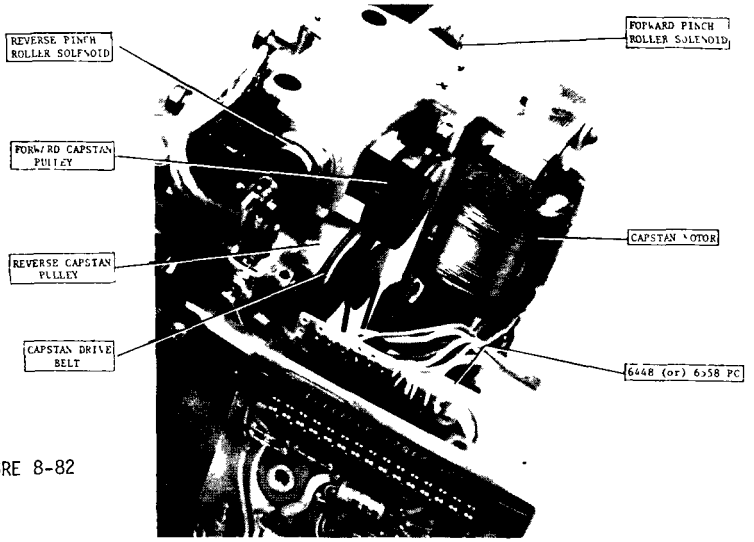


FIGURE 8-82

8.5 COMPONENT REPLACEMENTS

CAUTION:
Always disconnect the line cord from the power source before servicing any unit.

8.5.1 *CPU*

Printed Circuit Boards:

(a) Remove top cover.

(b) Remove the PC boards by pulling upwards.

Power Supply Components:

(a) Remove the four screws securing the top cover and remove cover.

(b) Remove the four screws securing the bottom cover and remove cover.

(c) Desolder the defective component from the bottom side of the motherboard.

8.5.2 *VIDEO DISPLAY UNIT*

Printed Circuit Board Removal:

(a) Carefully remove the socket from the CRT.

(b) Gently pry the circuit board from the chassis.

(c) Lift the circuit board up and out of chassis.

CRT Replacement:

> CAUTION:
> Use extreme care in handling the CRT as rough handling may cause it to implode. Do not nick or scratch glass or subject it to any undue pressure in removal or installation. Use goggles and heavy gloves for protection.

(a) Turn display unit power OFF.

(b) Disconnect CRT socket by applying a gentle, steady pull to the rear, as shown below.

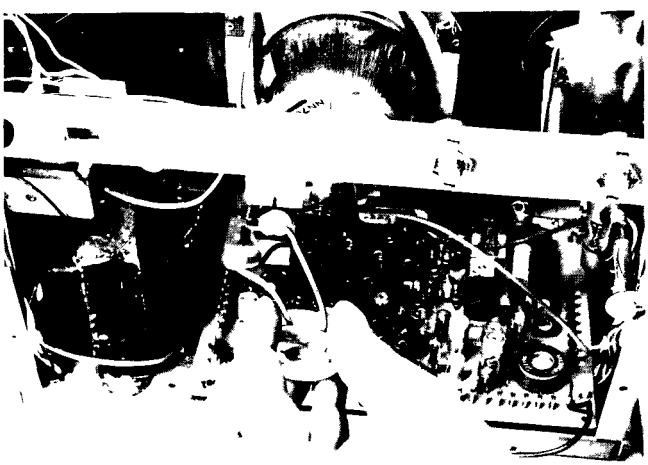


FIGURE 8-83

(c) Attach one end of a heavily insulated length of wire with insulated alligator clips to display chassis ground (not to ± 0 volt logic ground).

(d) Clip opposite end of ground wire to the metal shaft of a heavy duty plastic handle straight-slot screwdriver.

CAUTION:
SEE FIGURE FOR FOLLOWING PROCEDURE.

(e) Using a plastic-shaft alignment screwdriver, lift the rubber anode cap covering the CRT anode connection enough to allow insertion of the tip of the metal shaft screwdriver to be used to ground the CRT high voltage anode.

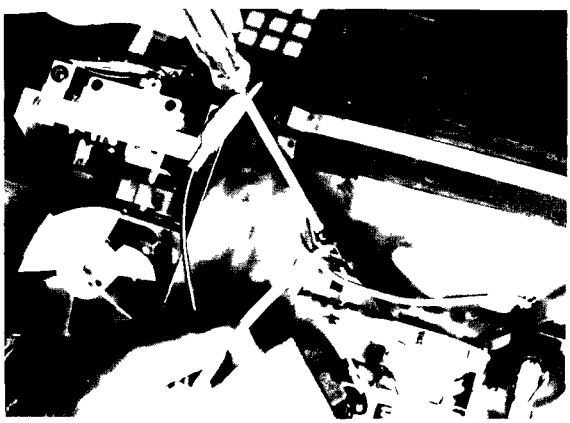


FIGURE 8-84

(f) Without scratching or nicking the CRT, and without touching the metal screwdriver shaft with your hands, discharge the CRT anode by touching the grounded screwdriver to the metal CRT anode clip while it is still connected to the CRT.

(g) Remove shorting wire hookup.

(h) Remove CRT from chassis by loosening screws at corners of CRT and sliding the CRT forward.

(i) Remove retaining band if present.

(j) Remove the deflection yoke from the CRT.

(k) Apply tape to the replacement CRT before installing. If new tape is not available, reuse the tape from the old tube.

(l) Mount the deflection yoke on the replacement CRT.

(m) Install the new CRT and secure the screws.

Power Transistor Replacement:

When replacing any "plug-in" transistor, i.e., the regulator, horizontal or vertical output, please observe the following precautions:

(a) The transistor sockets are not captive, that is, the transistor mounting screws also secure the socket. When installing the transistor, the socket must be held in its proper location. This location is indicated by flanges on the socket which fit into the heat sink.

(b) When replacing the regulator and output transistors, silicone grease should be applied evenly to both sides of the mica insulator.

(c) All transistor mounting screws must be tight before applying power to the display unit. This insures proper cooling and electrical connections.

NOTE:
Use caution when tightening transistor mounting screws. If the screw threads are stripped by excessive pressure, a poor electrical and mechanical connection can result. Non-compliance with these instructions can result in failure of the transistor and/or its related components.

8.5.3 *TAPE DRIVE UNIT*

6175 Printed Circuit Board Removal:

(a) Desolder the head cables from the 6175 PC board.

(b) Remove the finger connector from J2.

(c) Remove the three screws holding the PC board to the tape drive.

5960 Phototransistor Assembly Replacement:

(a) Remove the four wires from the tape head by pulling upwards.

(b) Remove the four screws holding the PC board in place, shown as "A" in Figure 8-85.

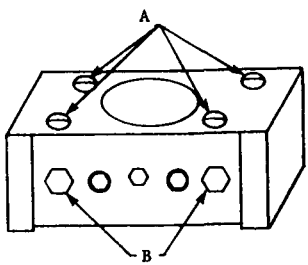


FIGURE 8-85

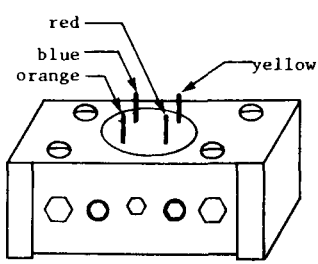


FIGURE 8-86

(c) Desolder the yellow and blue wires from the 5960 PC board.

(d) Install a new PC board in the reverse order. The correct placement of the head wires is shown in Figure 8-86.

Head Assembly Replacement:

(a) Remove the 5960 Phototransistor Assembly as described in steps (a) and (b) above.

(b) Remove the two large, outermost hex screws from the head assembly, shown as "B" in Figure 8-85.

(c) Install the new head assembly in the reverse order.

(d) Perform the Head Skew Adjustment as described in paragraph 8.3.4.

Capstan Drive Belt Replacement:

(a) Loosen the capstan motor pulley and push it toward the rear.

(b) Remove the defective drive belt.

(c) Install a new drive belt.

(d) Rotate the reverse capstan pulley until the capstan motor pulley is positioned correctly on the shaft.

(e) Tighten the capstan motor pulley.

Opaque-Detect Light Source Replacement:

(a) Remove the two knurled nuts from the rear of the 6179 PC board.

(b) Pull the board toward the rear.

(c) Desolder the two wires on the PC board.

(d) Install a new PC board in the reverse order.

SECTION 8

NOTES:

SECTION 9

2200 SYSTEM

OPTION CONVERSIONS & RETROFITS

This section describes 2200 system conversion and retrofit porcedures, with references called out for diagnostic tests and/or PROM/ROM loading of circuit boards where required.

The following software/hardware options are available for 2200 A, B, C, S and T systems:

TABLE 9-1

2200 OPTION #	WLI STOCK #	OPTION DESCRIPTION	ACCOMMODATING CPU - (USAGE)				
			2200A	2200B	2200C	2200S	2200T
OP-1	177-2200P1	Matrix ROM Mutually exclusive with OP-5	-	X	X	-	-
OP-2	177-2200P2	General I/O ROM	-	X	X	-	-
OP-3	177-2200P3	Edit ROM	X	X	Standard	Standard	Standard
OP-4	177-2200P4	Audio Alarm for 2216 Display	X	X	X	X	X
OP-5	177-2200P5	Commercial Matrix/ Sort ROM(Mutually exclusive with OP-1)	-	X	X	-	-
OP-20	177-2200-20	3 Extra I/O Slots	-	-	-	X	X
OP-20A	177-2200-20A	9 I/O Slot Chassis	-	-	-	X	X
OP-21	177-2200-21	Matrix ROM	-	-	-	X	Standard
OP-22	177-2200-22	Advanced Programmable ROM plus OP-21	-	-	-	X	Standard
OP-23	177-2200-23	General I/O ROM plus OP-22	-	-	-	X	Standard
OP-24	177-2200-24	Disk Capability plus OP-23	-	-	-	X	Standard
OP-30	177-2220-30	Upper/Lower case Display (for 2220, 2216A, or 2226)	X	X	X	X	X
OP-31	177-2220-31	Audio Alarm for 2220 and 2226 consoles	X	X	X	X	X
OP-32	177-2220-32	Keyboard Clicker	X	X	X	X	X

X = Option available

- = Option not available

9.1 2200 A/B/C ROM & SUPERPATCH OPTIONS - PREREQUISITE INFORMATION

An introductory explanation of ROM (6325) and Superpatch (6547, 6527) circuit board versions used in A, B, and C CPU's conversions follows:

9.1.1 *SUPER PATCH BOARDS*

The following patch/superpatch boards exist:

(a) 6327 - First revision patchboard, now obsolete.

(b) 6527 - First "superpatch", supercedes the 6327 PC. See ROM and SUPERPATCH chart, page 9-5.

(c) 6547 - Latest version of 2200 A/B/C superpatch PC board. Many intermittent software problems and problems associated with 2200 disk systems can be eliminated by substituting a 6547 version in place of a 6527 superpatch. See ROM and SUPERPATCH chart, page 9-5.

The 6547 was initially installed on a customer complaint basis, with priority to 2200B systems incorporating disk units (2230, 40, 42, 43, 60). The 6547 *must* be used in all 2200C systems and will be used in all existing 2200 A and B systems.

Use 6527 PC boards *as is* in all existing 2200 systems, except for the limitations stated above and in the ROM and SUPERPATCH chart, on page 7-5.

9.1.2 *MARKING OF ROM AND SUPERPATCH PC BOARDS*

Suffix identification of software (ROM/PROM) circuit board loading is as follows:

A - 2200 A CPU
B - 2200 B CPU

C - 2200 C CPU

X - Software extension for 6325-B or -C; packaged on separate PC board labeled 6325-BX or -CX.

M - Matrix Option (Option 1) for 2200B/C

GIO - General I/O (Option 2) for 2200B/C

E - Edit (Option 3) for 2200 A/B/C/S.

SORT - Sort (Commerical Matrix) Option (Option 5) for 2200B/C

K - Katakana; Japanese (mutually exclusive with Edit)

Numbers appearing in a PC board suffix identification indicates a software update.

Example: Improvements made in the microprogram for 6325-BX1 ROM ICs resulted in a "new" PC board, 6325-BX2 (replaces -BX1). The only physical differences between BX1 and BX2 are that L5, L11, L15, L21, L25, and L35 (ROM ICs) have updated patterns (different WL #377-XXXX stock numbers).

9.2 MODELS 2200S and 2200T ROM BOARDS

The original ROM board, the 6725, with 12K capability was phased out of production and replaced by the 6735 24K ROM board. The 6725 can only be used in 2200S and -SE units without software variations. All future units will contain the 7025 or 6735 ROM board. See 6735/7025 loading charts in this section.

Microcode bugs were discovered involving three ROM chips on the 6735, however the bugs do not interfere with the basic 2200S system. If a software option is added, the three chips noted below must be checked and changed as a group if necessary:

IC LOCATION	FROM	TO
L26	377-0238	377-0292
L23	377-0239	377-0293
L2	377-0240	377-0294

The Model 2200T is equivalent to the software capability of a 2200C with Options 1, 2 and 5 (Matrix ROM, General I/O and Commercial Matrix respectively). The loading of the 6735 board contains the integrated circuits for Option 24 plus five additional ICs for disk capability.

9.3 ROM AND SUPERPATCH CHART - 2200 A/B/C/S/T CPU's

This chart (Figure 9-1) provides a cross reference between 2200A, B, C, S and T ROM options and the required software versions of 6325 (2200A/B/C) or 6725 (2200S) or 6735/7025 (2200S/T) 20-bit ROMs, 6527 or 6547 Superpatch (2200A/B/C), 6361 8-bit ROM (2200A/B/C), and 6708 Memory Control (2200S/T).

Identification of ROM options is as follows:

OPTION #	DESCRIPTION
1, 21	Matrix ROM
2, 23	General I/O + OP 22
3	Edit ROM
5	Sort/Commercial Matrix ROM
22	Advanced Programmable + OP 21
24	Disk ROM + OP 23
Japanese Option	Katakana ROM

To find which versions of ROM and Superpatch boards are required:

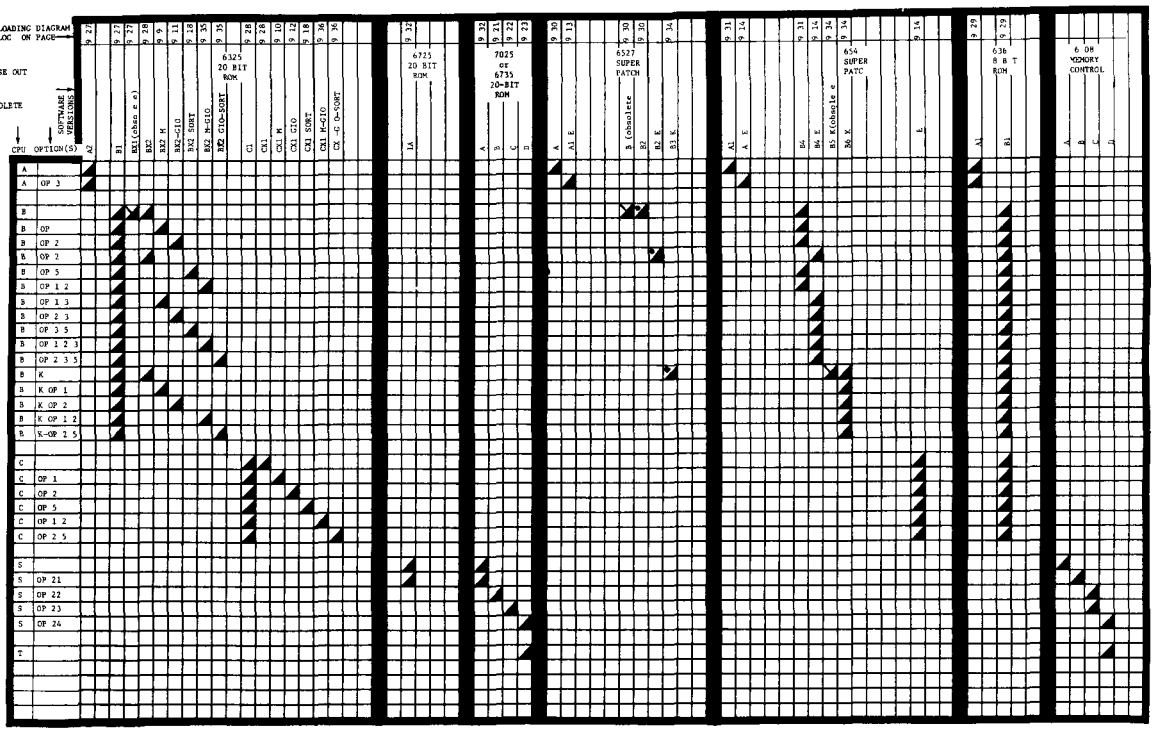
1) Locate the CPU version A, B, C, S, or T.

2) Locate option(s) being used.

3) Place straight edge (ruler, etc.) so that it underlines the desired CPU and option(s) combination.

4) Read across (left-to-right) and up at each mark on that horizontal line.
For example: A 2200B CPU with options 2 and 3 require a 6325-B1, 6325-BX2-GIO, 6547-B4-E, and a 6361-B.

FIGURE 9-1; ROM AND SUPERPATCH CHART



Across the top of the ROM and Superpatch table is a list of page numbers in this section where the loading diagram for each software version of the boards can be found. For instance, the loading diagrams for the boards called out in the example above would be found on the following pages:

PC #	PAGE #	FIGURE #
6325-B1	9-27	9-19
6325-BX2-GIO	9-11	9-4
6547-B4-E	9-14	9-9
6361-B	9-29	9-25

Be aware that certain options use *either* a 6527 version *or* a 6547 version Superpatch; the final determination is based on the facts stated in paragraph 9.1.1. As a general guideline, the 6547 is required in systems with disks or in systems with intermittent software problems; also,

6547-A1	replaces	6527-A1
6547-A1E	replaces	6527-A1E
6547-B4	replaces	6527-B2
6547-B4E	replaces	6527-B2E
6547-B6K	replaces	6527-B3K and 6547-B5K

Before installing any 6547 or 6527 Superpatch 2200 A, B and C Option boards, it is imperative that the following circuit boards be checked (and updated if necessary; Ref: *Technical Procedures Manual*) for proper "Electronic Level" marking (Ref: Service Newsletter Vol 3 #5) as indicated on page 9-7.

CIRCUIT BOARD	ELEC. LEVEL
L558	3
6311R1	4
6316	1

Since the 6527 and 6547 superpatch boards are software extensions for EA ROM 6325 boards, they may be plugged into any one of three ROM board slots (6322 motherboard), or into any one of four ROM board slots (6522 or 6222 motherboards).

After installation of an updated ROM or Superpatch circuit board has been completed, a possibility exists that re-recording of customer tapes may be necessary, due to a change on the DATA RESAVE function.

To determine the likelihood of the above situation, instruct the customer to load all Data tapes into the system and verify their integrity. If ERROR 43 is generated during verification, note which block(s) produced the error. Any tapes with invalid blocks must be reconstructed by the technique described below (it is imperative that this procedure be carried out promptly):

(a) Request one 2217 on loan from Home Office.

(b) Insert loaned 2217 controller (device address switches set to HEX 0B) into CPU I/O slot.

(c) Load one block of customer's tape into the system via console tape drive, checking again for errors.

(d) Record that block on the external 2217.

(e) When an erroneous block is encountered, that block must be manually re-entered, then recorded on the external 2217.

(f) This procedure should be repeated for all blocks, until all tapes are correct.

(g) Return loaned 2217 to Home Office.

(h) Any further problems should be referred to the Home Office for resolution.

THIS SPACE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

9.4 OPTION CONVERSIONS

9.4.1 *OPTION 1 (MATRIX OPTION) - CONVERSION PROCEDURE (Kit, WL #177-2200 P1)*

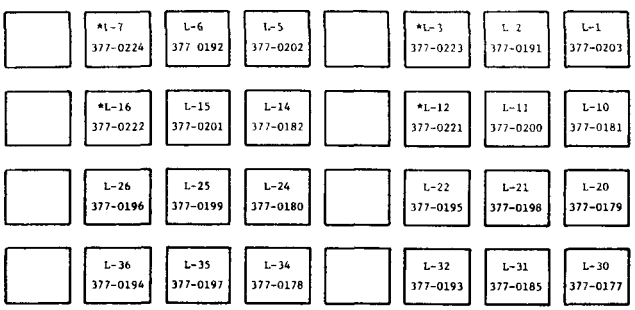
Option 1 is available only for 2200B or 2200C systems; parts required are as follows:

	2200B SYSTEM	2200C SYSTEM
(a)	6325-B1	6325-C1
(b)	6325-BX2	6325-CX1
(c)	6547-B4	6547-C1E
(d)	Four EA ROM ICs:	Four EA ROM ICs:
	WLI #377-0223 (L3)	WLI #377-0223 (L3)
	WLI #377-0224 (L7)	WLI #377-0224 (L7)
	WLI #377-0221 (L12)	WLI #377-0221 (L12)
	WLI #377-0222 (L16)	WLI #377-0222 (L16)

INSTRUCTIONS:

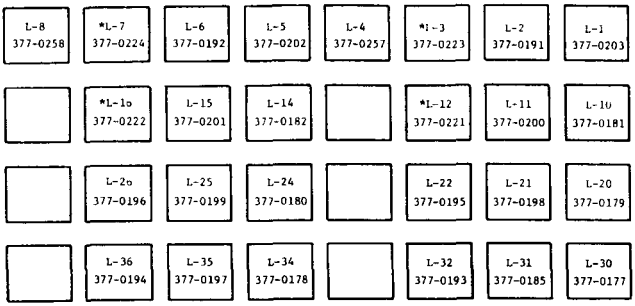
The above four EA ROMs (item *d*) must be loaded on either the 6325-BX2 (for 2200B system) or on the 6325-CX1 (for the 2200C system). Loading diagrams are provided as follows:

FIGURE 9-2



6325-BX2/M

NOTE: *(Asterisk) denotes IC's added for Matrix Option (Option 1)



6325-CX1/M

NOTE: *(Asterisk) denotes 4 IC's added for Matrix Option

(Option 1)

FIGURE 9-3

After EA ROMs have been loaded on the 6325-BX2 (2200B) or 6325-CX1 (2200C), change the white sticker-label on the wiring side of that PC board as follows:

		LABEL CHANGE	
SYSTEM	PC #	FROM	TO
2200B	6325-BX2	BX2	BX2/M
2200C	6325-CX1	CX1	CX1/M

This label reflects the specific option which has been added, for future identification.

Refer to Section 7 for OP-1 Diagnostic test.

9.4.2 *OPTION 2 (GENERAL I/O) - CONVERSION PROCEDURE (Kit, WL #177-2200 P2)*

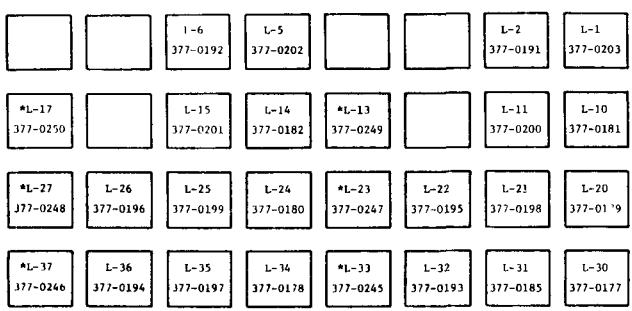
Option 2 is available only for 2200B or 2200C systems; parts required are as follows:

	2200B SYSTEM	2200C SYSTEM
(a)	6325-B1	6325-C1
(b)	6325-BX2	6325-CX1
(c)	6547-B4	6547-C1E
(d)	Six EA ROM ICs:	Six EA ROM ICs:
	WLI #377-0249 (L13)	WLI #377-0249 (L13)
	WLI #377-0250 (L17)	WLI #377-0250 (L17)
	WLI #377-0247 (L23)	WLI #377-0247 (L23)
	WLI #377-0248 (L27)	WLI #377-0248 (L27)
	WLI #377-0245 (L33)	WLI #377-0245 (L33)
	WLI #377-0246 (L37)	WLI #377-0246 (L37)

INSTRUCTIONS:

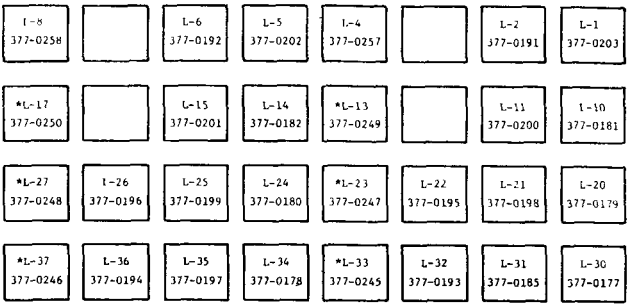
The above six EA ROMs (item d) must be loaded on either the 6325-BX2 (for 2200B system) or on the 6325-CX1 (for 2200C system). Loading diagrams are provided as follows:

FIGURE 9-4



6325-BX2/C1C

Note *(Asterisk) denotes 6 IC's added for General I/O (Option 2)



6325-CX1/GIO

NOTE: *(Asterisk) denotes 6 IC's added for General I/O (Option 2)

FIGURE 9-5

After EA ROMs have been loaded on 6325-BX2 (2200B) or 6325-CX1 (2200C), change the white sticker-label on the wire side of that board as follows:

		LABEL CHANGE	
SYSTEM	PC #	FROM	TO
2200B	6325-BX2	BX2	BX2-GIO
2200C	6325-CX1	CX1	CX1-GIO

This label reflects the specific option which has been added; for future identification.

Refer to Section 7 for OP-2 Diagnostic test.

9.4.3 *OPTION 3 (EDIT OPTION) - CONVERSION PROCEDURE (Kit, WL #177-2200 P3)*

Option 3 conversion is available for 2200A and 2200B systems; option 3 is standard software in 2200C, 2200S and 2200T systems.

Option 3 allows the user to modify program statements with minimal programming. Three new debugging commands are introduced: INSERT, DELETE, and ERASE.

Parts required are as follows:

	2200A SYSTEM	2200B SYSTEM
(a)	6325-A2	6325-B1
(b)	6527-A1 (or) 6547-A1	6527-B2 (or) 6547-B4
(c)	Six PROM ICs:	Six PROM ICs:

For either 6527-A1 or 6547-A1:

- WLI #378-0256 (L1)
- WLI #378-0255 (L2)
- WLI #378-0257 (L3)
- WLI #378-0253 (L4)
- WLI #378-0252 (L5)
- WLI #378-0254 (L6)

For 6527-B2 *only*:

- WLI #378-0262 (L1)
- WLI #378-0261 (L2)
- WLI #378-0263 (L3)
- WLI #378-0259 (L4)
- WLI #378-0258 (L5)
- WLI #378-0260 (L6)

(OR)

For 6547-B4 *only*:

- WLI #378-0294 (L1)
- WLI #378-0293 (L2)
- WLI #378-0295 (L3)
- WLI #378-0291 (L4)
- WLI #378-0290 (L5)
- WLI #378-0292 (L6)

Six PROMs in item (c) must be loaded on either the 6527/6547-A1 (for 2200A system) or on the 6527-B2/6547-B4 (for 2200B system). Loading diagrams are provided as follows:

FIGURE 9-6

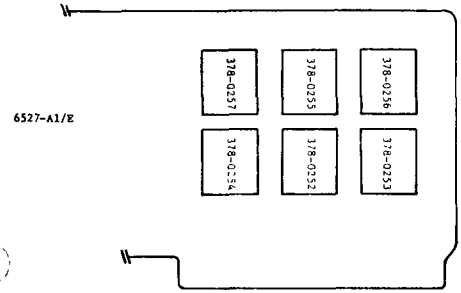
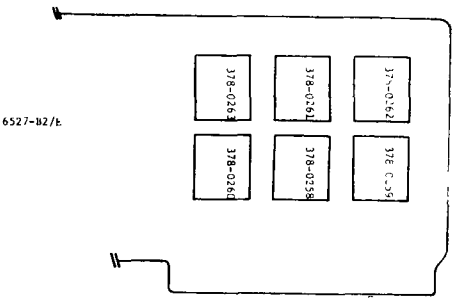


FIGURE 9-7



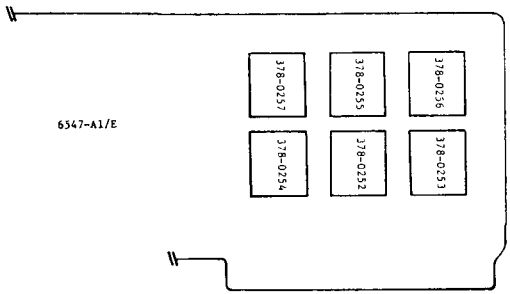


FIGURE
9-8

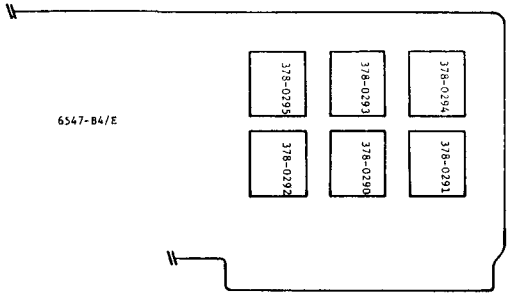


FIGURE
9-9

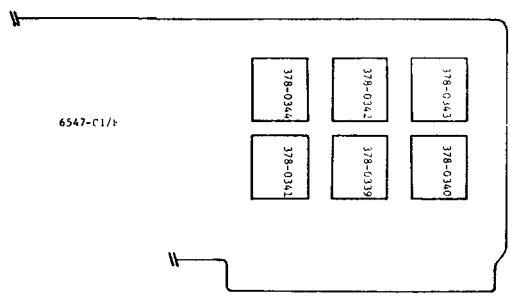


FIGURE
9-10

After PROMs have been loaded on the 6527/47-A1 (2200A) or the 6527-B2/6547-B4 (2200B), change the white sticker-label on the wiring side of the superpatch (just upgraded) as follows:

		LABEL CHANGE	
SYSTEM	PC #	FROM	TO
2200A	6527-A1	A1	A1/E
2200A	6547-A1	A1	A1/E
2200B	6527-B2	B2	B2/E
2200B	6547-B4	B4	B4/E

This label reflects the specific option which has been added, for future identification.

	2200A SYSTEM	2200B SYSTEM
(d)	Edit Keyboard:	Edit Keyboard:
	2215E (6348/E PC)	2215E (6348/E PC)
	2222E (6330/E PC)	2222E (6330/E PC)
	2223 (6443 PC)	2223 (6443 PC)

(e) Keyboard Controller:

6367 - Ensure that ECN's 4090 and 4525 have been performed (Ref: Technical Procedures Manual).
L22 = WL #377-0225, for 2215E and 2222E *only*.
L22 = WL #377-0260, for 2223 *only*.

6317 - Ensure that ECN 4090 has been performed (Ref: Technical Procedures Manual).
L21 = WL #378-0249 for 2215E *only*.
L21 = WL #378-0250R1 for 2222E *only*.

6528 - L23 = WL #378-0249 for 2215E *only*.
L23 = WL #378-0250R1 for 2222E *only*.

(f) Edit option Special Function strip:
WL #615-0359

Refer to Section 7 for OP-3 Diagnostic test.

9.4.4 *OPTION 4 & OPTION 31 (AUDIO ALARM) - CONVERSION PROCEDURE (Kit, WL #177-2200 P4)*

The Speaker Option allows the user to program an audible alarm which can be used as a warning device, error detector, or timer.

PARTS NEEDED:

1 - Speaker with hardware to mount on 2216/17 (or 2220) rear panel.
1 - Speaker cable.
1 - 6312A/6313 (or 6312A/6529) 2216 controller with speaker socket for 60 Hz units or 6350A/6313 for 50 Hz units.

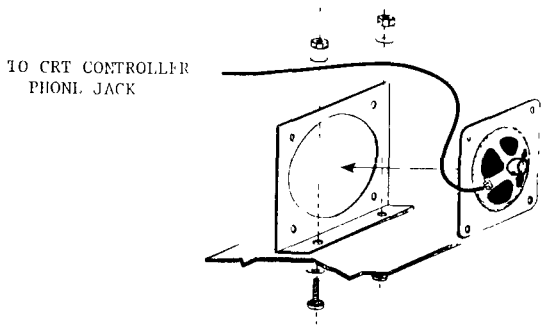
PROCEDURE:

(a) Replace the 2216 controller (6312) with a 6312A PC for 60 Hz units or 6350 with a 6350A pc for 50 Hz units.

(b) Mount speaker on bracket provided in conversion kit.

(c) Install cable to speaker.

FIGURE 9-11



(d) Route speaker cable out via CRT cable hole in 2216 or 2220 chassis and plug this cable into the 2216/2220 CRT controller board (6312A) or 6350A).

Refer to Section 7 for OP-4/31 Diagnostic test.

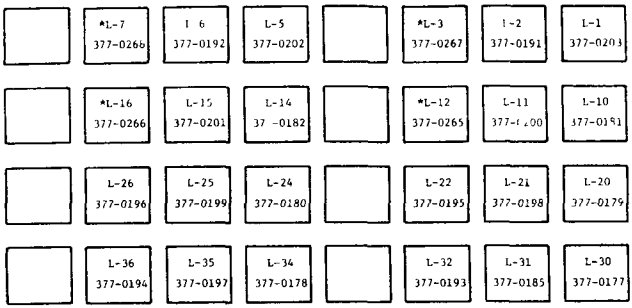
9.4.5 *OPTION 5 (SORT ROM) - CONVERSION PROCEDURE (Kit, WL #177-2200 P5)*

Option 5 is available only for 2200B or 2200C systems; parts required are as follows:

> NOTE:
> Options 1 and 5 cannot be incorporated into the same 2200 system simultaneously; i.e., they are mutually exclusive.

	2200B SYSTEM	2200C SYSTEM
(a)	6325-B1	6325-C1
(b)	6325-BX2	6325-CX1
(c)	6547-B4	6547-C1E
(c)	Four EA ROM ICs:	Four EA ROM ICs:
	WLI #377-0267 (L3)	WLI #377-0267 (L3)
	WLI #377-0268 (L7)	WLI #377-0268 (L7)
	WLI #377-0265 (L12)	WLI #377-0265 (L12)
	WLI #377-0266 (L16)	WLI #377-0266 (L16)

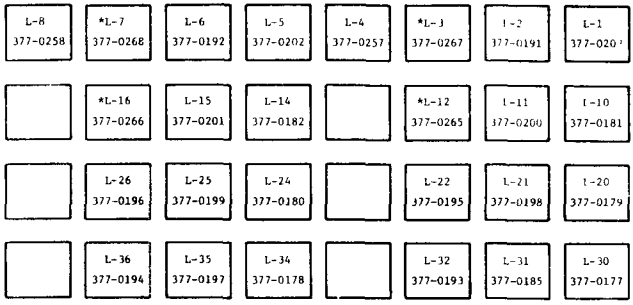
The above four EA ROMs (item d) must be loaded on either the 6325-BX2 (for the 2200B system) or on the 6325-CX1 (for the 2200C system). Loading diagrams are provided as follows:



6325-BX2/SORT

NOTE: *(Asterisk) denotes IC's added for SORT Option

FIGURE 9-12



6325-CX1/SORT

NOTE: *(Asterisk) denotes IC's added for SORT Option.

FIGURE 9-13

After EA ROMs have been loaded on the 6325-BX2 (2200B) or 6325-CX1 (2200C), change the white sticker-label on the wiring side of that PC board as follows:

		LABEL CHANGE	
SYSTEM	PC #	FROM	TO
2200B	6325-BX2	BX2	BX2/SORT
2200C	6325-CX1	CX1	CX1/SORT

This label reflects the specific option which has been added, for future identification.

Refer to Section 7 for OP-5 Diagnostic test.

9.4.6 *OPTION 20 (THREE EXTRA I/O SLOTS FOR 2200S CPU) CONVERSION PROCEDURE (Kit, WL #177-2200-20)*

To add Option 20, the following parts are required:

QTY	DESCRIPTION
1	CPU Cover, WL #451-2101
6	Connectors, WL #350-0011
2	Blank Face Plate, WL #449-0096
4	Screws, WL #650-4165

(a) Unplug unit from outlet.

(b) Remove the top and bottom covers and all PC boards.

(c) Starting with the first I/O board, remove all hex nuts and hardware up to, but not including, the L567 board. Be sure to mark the location of the nylon insulating washers (8) to be sure of correct replacement. Put the hardware in a safe place.

(d) Remove the two hex spacers from under the fourth I/O space. Discard the spacers but retain the screws.

(e) Gently pull the right side of the motherboard away from the chassis. Slip the six connectors between the chassis and motherboard.

(f) Push the motherboard back into position while guiding the connectors through the slots in the chassis. Replace all hardware and tighten securely.

(g) Install three I/O controllers in the connectors installed in Step (e).

(h) Solder all pins of the six connectors installed in step (e).

(i) Be sure to follow the above procedure to insure proper connector alignment.

(j) Check for solder bridges and cold solder joints on all pins.

(k) Replace covers. Top cover is replaced with new cover allowing access to all I/O connectors.

(l) Install I/O controllers and connect the I/O cables from the respective peripheral device.

(m) Plug unit into outlet and apply power. Check power supply voltages and readjust if necessary, due to the increased load.

(n) Return CPU cover #451-2105 to Home Office.

9.4.7 *OPTION 20A (9 SLOT I/O) - CONVERSION PROCEDURE (Kit WL #177-2200-20A)*

Request a 9-slot I/O 2200S or 2200T chassis and return previous chassis to Home Office when 9-slot I/O CPU arrives.

9.4.8 *OPTION 21 (MATRIX ROM) - CONVERSION PROCEDURE (Kit, WL #177-2200-21)*

This is the software equivalent to Option 1 (2200A/B/C); Option 21 is for 2200S *only* (automatically included in 2200T software).

INSTRUCTIONS:

After changing L1 on the 6708A from WL #377-0259 (without Option 21) to WL #377-0244 (with Option 21), change the sticker label to 6708B on the wiring side of the 6708 PC board.

Testing Option 21:

Use Option 1 Matrix Diagnostic in Section 7.

9.4.9 *OPTION 22 - ADVANCED PROGRAMMING AND MATRIX ROMS*

A conversion kit, consisting of 6735 ROM board, ICs L2 (377-0294), L4 (377-0297), L21 (377-0296), L23 (377-0293), L26 (377-0292), L28 (377-0295) and an additional ROM IC, 377-0283 (for the 6708 pc), is supplied.

Remove the 6725 or 6735 ROM board from the CPU. Insert the new IC's (L3, L10-L15, L22, L25 and L27) on the 6735 ROM board. Change the 6735 sticker label from 6735A to 6735B and reinstall the upgraded 6735 ROM board into the CPU.

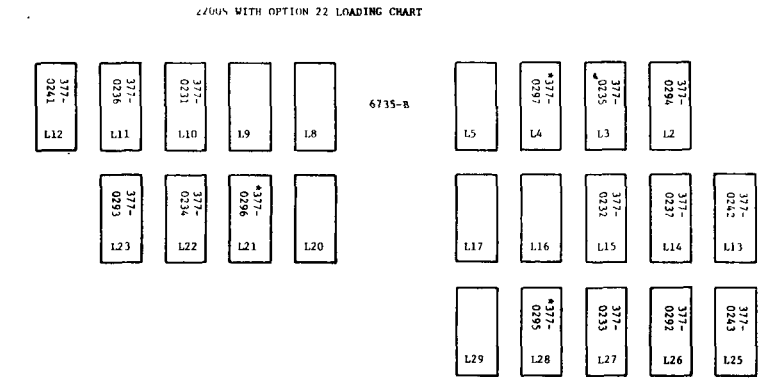


FIGURE 9-14

Remove the 6708 PC board. Remove L1 and replace it with ROM IC 377-0283. Change the sticker label from 6708A or B to 6708C, and reinstall the 6708 pc board into the CPU.

> NOTE:
> The 377-0283 ROM used on the 6708 PC BOARD requires that the single key command LIST be disabled. To initiate a LIST, the word must be spelled out.

To test Option 22, use the 2200B, 2200S and Matrix Diagnostic Programs as described Section 7.

9.4.10 *OPTION 23 - GENERAL I/O, ADVANCED PROGRAMMING AND MATRIX ROMS*

A conversion kit consisting of a 6735 ROM board IC's L2 (377-0294), L4 (377-0297), L9 (377-0284), L16 (377-0285), L21 (377-0296), L23 (377-0293), L26 (377-0292), L28 (377-0295) and an additional ROM, 377-0283 for the 6708 pc is supplied.

Remove the 6725 or 6735 ROM board from the CPU. Insert the new IC's (L3, L10-L15, L22, L25 and L27) on a 6735A or B ROM board. Change the 6735A or B sticker label to 6735C and reinstall the upgraded 6735 ROM board in the CPU.

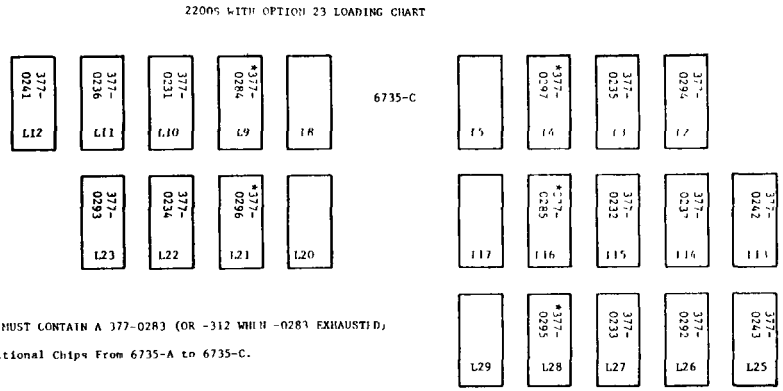


FIGURE 9-15

Remove the 6708 board. Check ROM IC L1; if not a 377-0283, install the 377-0283 ROM IC. Change the 6708A or B sticker label to 6708C and reinstall the upgraded 6708 board into the CPU.

> NOTE:
> The 377-0283 ROM used on the 6708 PC board requires that the single key command LIST be disabled. To initiate a LIST, the word must be spelled out.

Return 6725 ROM board for credit.

To test Option 23, use the 2200B, 2200S and Matrix and GI/O Diagnostic programs as described in Section 7.

9.4.11 *OPTION 24 - DISK ROM*

Upgrading any 2200S to OP-24 is equivalent to converting to a 2200T CPU. A conversion kit consisting of all ICs in the OP-23 kit, plus five new ICs (L5 = 377-0307, L8 = 377-0303, L17 = 377-0304, L20 = 377-0306, and L29 = 377-0305) for disk capabilities.

Follow directions for OP-23 (except for label changes) and add the 5 new IC's as indicated on the 6735 loading diagram for 2200T (6735D) below:

2200T LOADING CHART
(OR)
2200S WITH OP-24
LOADING CHART

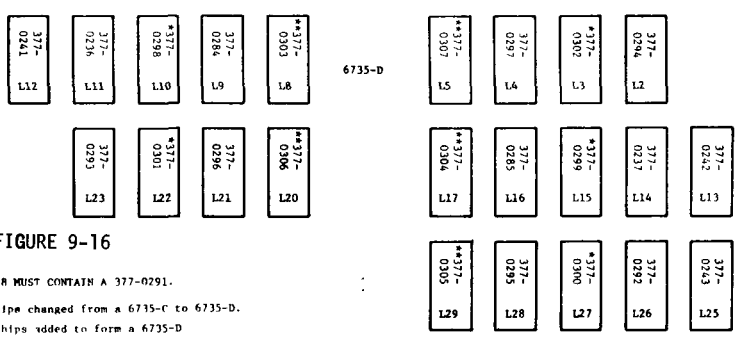


FIGURE 9-16

6708 MUST CONTAIN A 377-0291.

*Chips changed from a 6735-C to 6735-D.

**Chips added to form a 6735-D

Change labels on 6735 (A, B, or C) and 6708 (A, B, or C) to 6735D and 6708D respectively.

Use 2200T diagnostics in Section 7 to test Option 24.

9.4.12 *OPTION 30 (UPPER/LOWER CASE DISPLAY) - CONVERSION PROCEDURE*

1) Remove CRT Controller (6312/6313) from CPU I/O slot.

2) Remove the nylon hardware holding the 6313 PC board to the 6312/6312A controller chassis.

3) Replace the 6313 PC board with a 6529 PC board.

4) Replace all hardware and tighten 6529 and 6312/12A securely.

5) Reinsert converted controller into the CPU I/O slot.

6) Test for upper and lower case characters on the CRT screen. (Be sure the keyboard switch is in the A/a position.)

7) Change sticker on controller face plate from "2216" to "2216A".

8) Return 6313 to Home Office for credit.

9.4.13 *OPTION 32 (KEYBOARD CLICKER) - CONVERSION PROCEDURE (Kit, WL #200-0036)*

CONVERSION KIT

1. Two 1" spacers (462-0019)
2. Two 1 1/2" 4-40 screws (650-2480)
3. Three 1/8" spacers (462-0110)
4. Three 1/2" 4-40 screws (650-2160)
5. Two 5/16" 5-40 screws (650-2902)
6. Two #4 lock washers (653-2002)

7. Two #4 flat washers (653-2000)
8. 210-6771 PCB
9. Coil (320-0049)
10. Right angle bracket (451-4379)

B. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. Parts and tools required:
   (a) Conversion kit
   (b) Soldering iron and solder
   (c) Approximately 30" of 28 gauge wire
   (d) Approximately 6" of tubing
   (e) Straight edge and Phillips screwdrivers

2. Mount right angle bracket to the coil using 5/16" screws and flat washers so that screws do not touch the coil.

3. MODEL 2220 AND 2226 - Mount the 6771 board to the 6443 keyboard using the 1" spacers and 1 1/2" screws. The wire side of the 6771 must face the wire side of the 6443.
   MODEL 2215, 2222 AND 2223 - Mount the 6771 board to the 6443, 6330 or 6348 using the 1/8" spacers and 1/2" screws. The wire side of the 6771 must face the wire side of the 6443 or 6330.

4. Use 1/8" spacers and 1/2" screw to mount coil as shown.

5. Connect four wires as shown in diagram:

   (a) Wire #1 is connected to +15VR.
   (b) Wire #2 is connected to $\pm$0V.
   (c) Wire #3 is connected to pin 27 of the 50-pin male connector (+5V).
   (d) Wire #4 is connected to pin 29 of the 50-pin male connector ($\overline{\text{KST}}$).

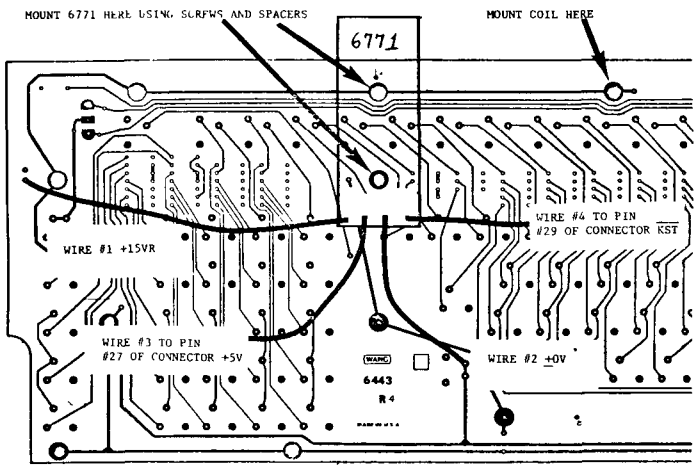
6. Check the keyboard controller in the system:

(a) If the keyboard controller is a 6741 or 6742, the installation is complete.

(b) If the keyboard controller is a 6367, check for ECN #4849; this ECN must be incorporated. ECN 4849: Add a jumper from pin B_1 (+5V) to J1-27. Add a jumper wire form L24-8 to L20-9. Add a jumper wire from L20-8 to J1-29.

(c) If the keyboard controller is a 6562, check for ECN #4850; this ECN must be incorporated. ECN 4850: Add a jumper wire from pin B_1 (+5V) to J1-27. Add a jumper wire from L31-8 to L27-9. Add a jumper wire from L27-8 to J1-29.

FIGURE 9-17



If the option does not work, follow these steps:

(a) Verify +15VR on the 6771 board with power on.

(b) Verify ±0V on the 6771 board.

(c) Insure that wire #3 is connected to pin 27 of the male connector (+5V).

(d) Insure that wire #4 is connected to pin 29 of the male connector ($\overline{KST}$).

(e) Using a scope, check for a $\overline{KST}$ pulse when a key is depressed.

(f) Verify that ECN's are incorporated correctly.

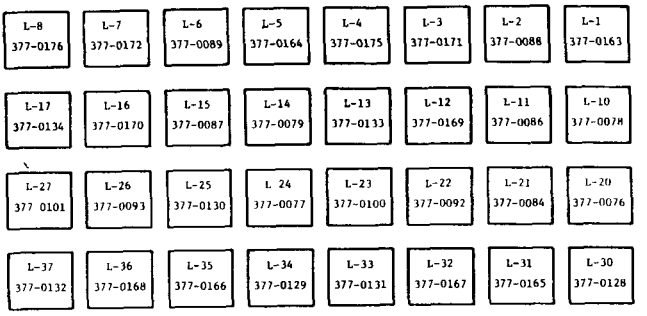


FIGURE 9-18

6325-A2

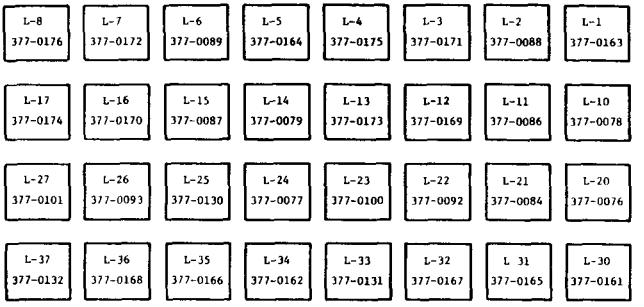


FIGURE 9-19

6325-B1

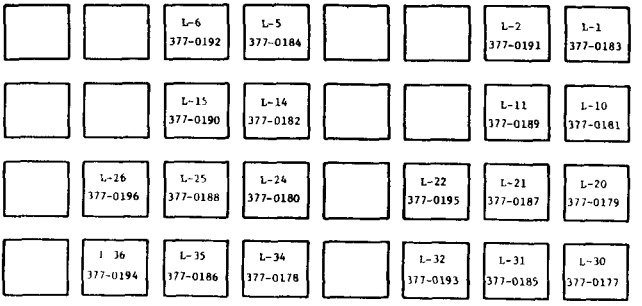


FIGURE 9-20

6325-BX1

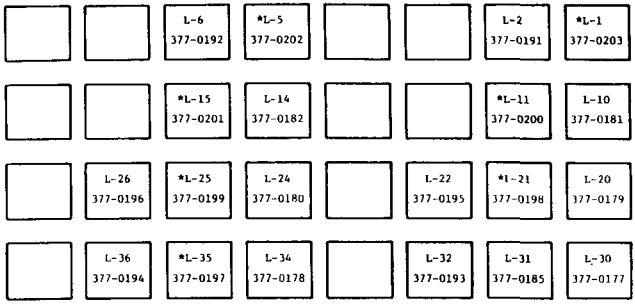


FIGURE 9-21

6325-BX2

NOTE. *(Asterisk) denotes IC's that differ from 6325-BX1 P.C. board

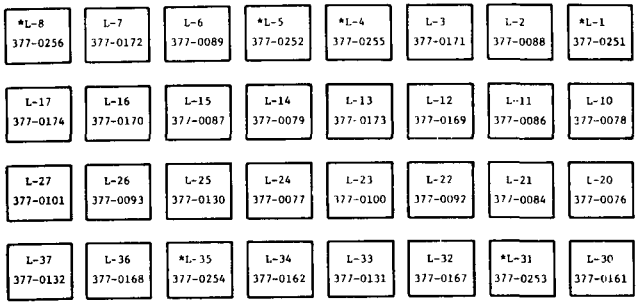


FIGURE 9-22

6325-C1

NOTE: *(Asterisk) denotes the IC's that differ from the 6325-B1 P.C board

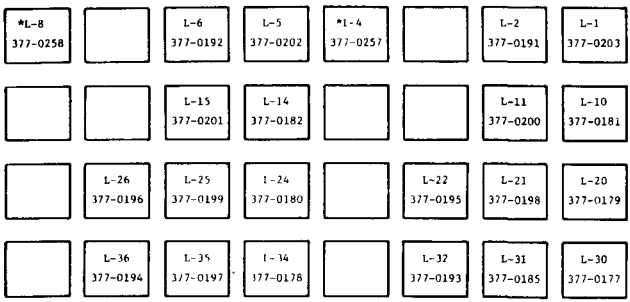


FIGURE 9-23

6325-CX1

NOTE: *(Aertisk) denotes 2 IC's that differ from the 6325-BX2 P C board

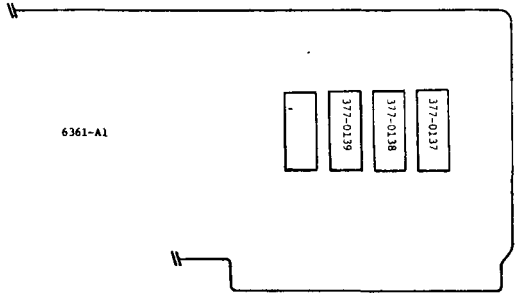


FIGURE
9-24

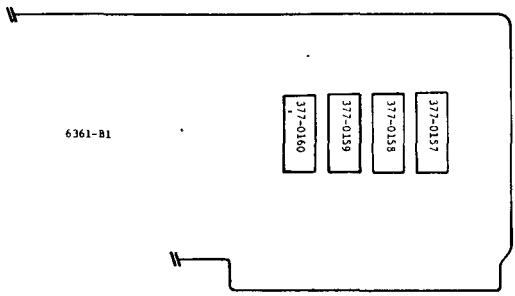


FIGURE
9-25

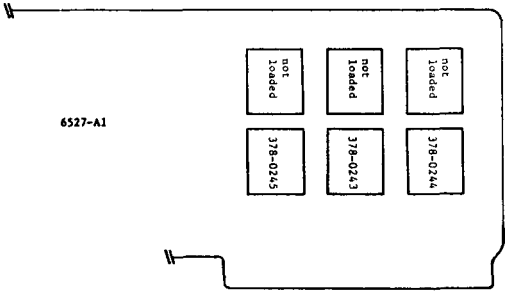


FIGURE 9-26

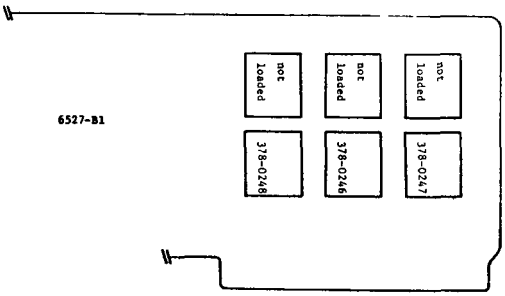


FIGURE 9-27

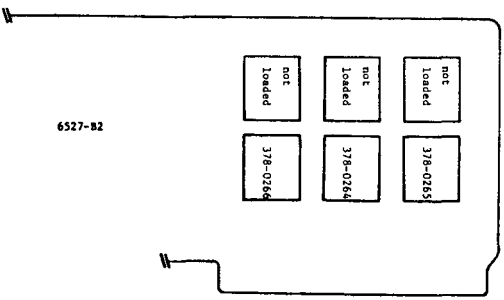


FIGURE 9-28

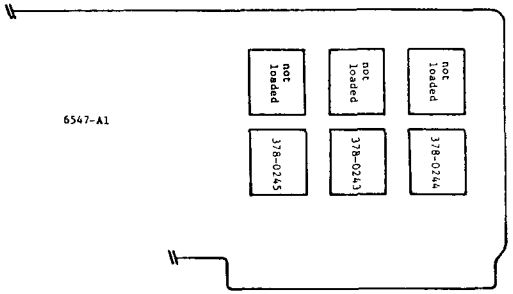


FIGURE 9-29

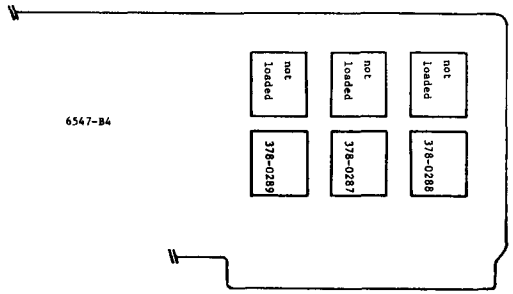


FIGURE 9-30

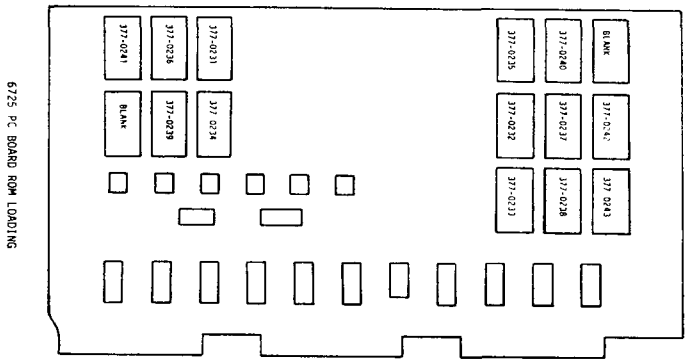
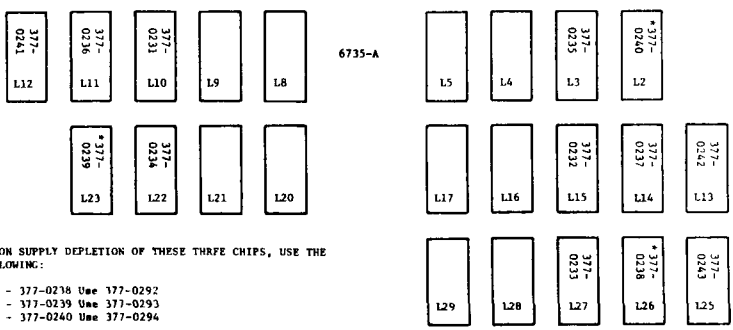


FIGURE 9-31

2200S LOADING CHART



*UPON SUPPLY DEPLETION OF THESE THRFE CHIPS, USE THE FOLLOWING:

L26 - 377-0238 Use 377-0292
L23 - 377-0239 Use 377-0293
L2 - 377-0240 Use 377-0294

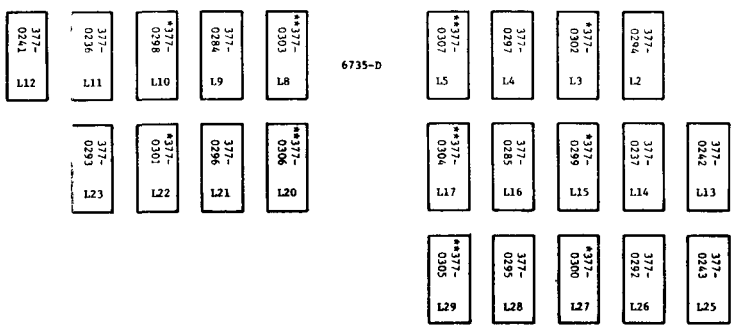
NOTE: THE ABOVE CHIPS ARE A GROUP AND MUST BE REPLACED TOGETHER.

6708 BOARD CONTAINS A 377-0259 OR 0244 (MATRIX)

FIGURE 9-32

FIGURE 9-33

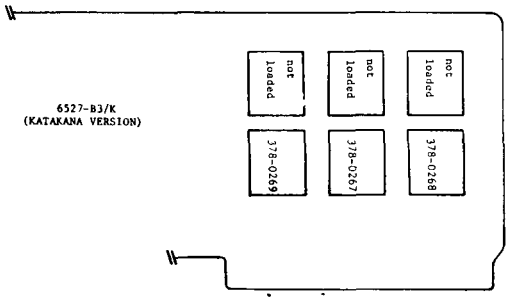
2200T LOADING CHART



6708 MUST CONTAIN A 377-0291

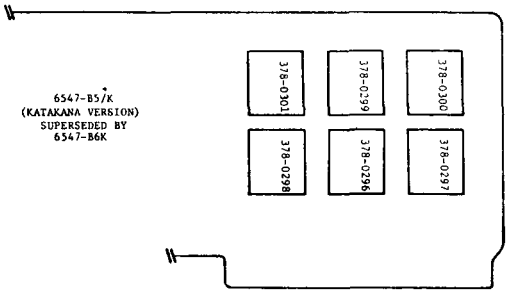
*Chips changed from a 6735-C to 6735-D

**Chips added o form a 6735-D



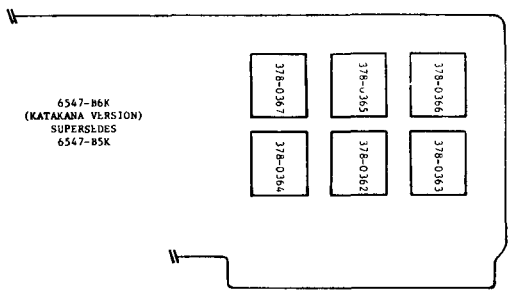
6527-B3/K
(KATAKANA VERSION)

FIGURE 9-34



6547-B5/K
(KATAKANA VERSION)
SUPERSEDED BY
6547-B6K

FIGURE 9-35



6547-B6K
(KATAKANA VERSION)
SUPERSEDES
6547-B5K

FIGURE 9-36

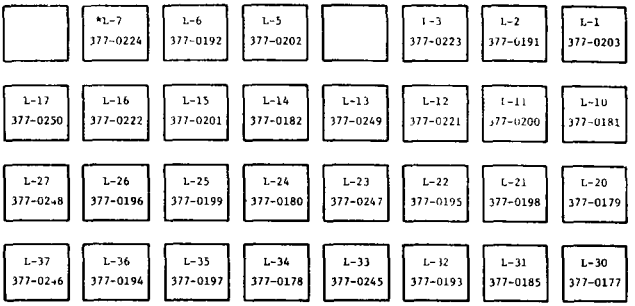


FIGURE 9-37

6325-BX2/M/GIO

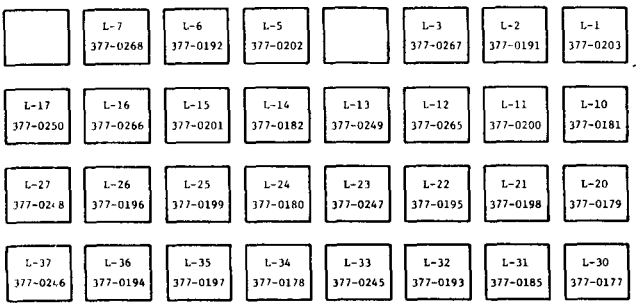


FIGURE 9-38

6325-BX2/GIO/SORT

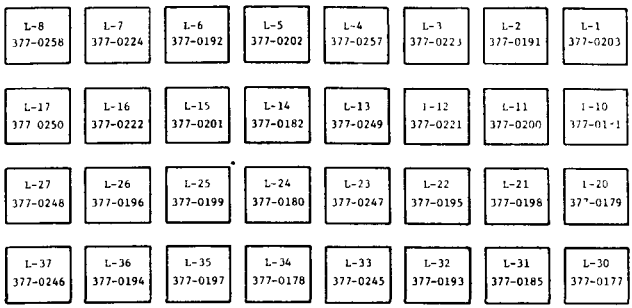


FIGURE 9-39

6325-CX1/H/CIO

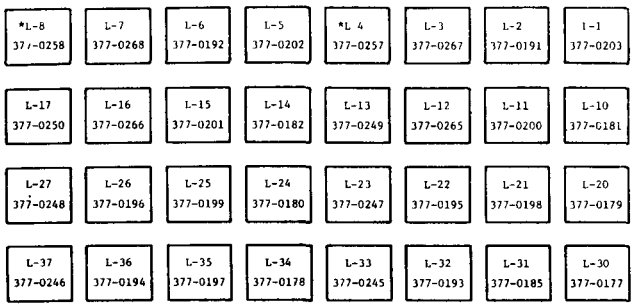


FIGURE 9-40

6325-CX1/GIO/SORT

NOTE *(Asterisk) denotes 2 IC's that differ from the 6325-BX2 PC Board.

9.5 2200 SYSTEM MEMORY OPTIONS

CPU MODEL	WLI #		CPU DESCRIPTION
2200-A1	177 2200	A1	4K
2200-A2		A2	8K
2200-A3		A3	12K
2200-A4		A4	16K
2200-A5		A5	20K
2200-A6		A6	24K
2200-A7		A7	28K
2200-A8		A8	32K
2200-B1		B1	4K
2200-B2		B2	8K
2200-B3		B3	12K
2200-B4		B4	16K
2200-B5		B5	20K
2200-B6		B6	24K
2200-B7		B7	28K
2200-B8		B8	32K
2200-C1		C1	4K
2200-C2		C2	8K
2200-C3		C3	12K
2200-C4		C4	16K
2200-C5		C5	20K
2200-C6		C6	24K
2200-C7		C7	28K
2200-C8		C8	32K
2200-S1		31	4K
2200-S2		32	8K
2200-S3		33	12K
2200-S4		34	16K
2200-S5		35	20K NOT AVAILABLE
2200-S6		36	24K
2200-S7		37	28K NOT AVAILABLE
2200-S8		38	32K
2200-T1		T1	4K
2200-T2		T2	8K
2200-T3		T3	12K
2200-T4		T4	16K
2200-T5		T5	20K NOT AVAILABLE
2200-T6		T6	24K
2200-T7		T7	28K NOT AVAILABLE
2200-T8		T8	32K

9.6 2200 SYSTEM RETROFITS

Wang Labs retrofit conversion numbers are assigned as follows:

CONVERSION DESCRIPTION	WLI STOCK #
2200-A TO 2200-B	200-0200
2200A TO 2200C	200-0200-AC
2200A TO 2200C CONVERSION W/KEYBD	200-0200-AK
2200B TO 2200C CONVERSION	200-0200-BC
2200B TO 2200C CONVERSION W/KEYBD	200-0200-BK
2200B TO C CONVERSION INTERNATIONAL	200-0200-IC
601 TO 2201	200-0201 6
701 TO 2201	200-0201 7
602 TO 2202	200-0202 6
702 TO 2202	200-0202 7
612 TO 2212	200-0212 6
712 TO 2212	200-0212 7
2216 TO 2216C UPDATE	200-0216 C
621 TO 2221	200-0221 6
721 TO 2221	200-0221 7
2224-2 TO 2224-3	200-0224 23
2224-2 TO 2224-4	200-0224 24
2224-3 TO 2224-4	200-0224 34
2230-1 TO 2230-2	200-0230 1
2230-1 TO 2230-3	200-0230 2
2230-2 TO 2230-3	200-0230 3
630-1 TO 2230-1	200-0230 61
630-1 TO 2230-2	200-0230 62
630-1 TO 2230-3	200-0230 63
630-2 TO 2230-2	200-0230 64
630-2 TO 2230-3	200-0230 65
630-3 TO 2230-3	200-0230 66
730 ON 2230 FORMAT	200-0230 7
730-1 TO 2230-1	200-0230 71
730-1 TO 2230-2	200-0230 72
730-1 TO 2230-3	200-0230 73
730-2 TO 2230-2	200-0230 74
730-2 TO 2230-3	200-0230 75
730-3 TO 2230-3	200-0230 76

632A TO 2232A	200-0232 6A
732A TO 2232A	200-0232 7A
2234 TO 2234A	200-0234 A
640 / 740 TO 2240	200-0240
2240-1 TO 2240-2	200-0240 1
640-1 TO 2240-1	200-0240 61
640-1 TO 2240-2	200-0240 62
640-2 TO 2240-2	200-0240 63
640 / 740 ON 2240 FORMAT	200-0240 7
740-1 TO 2240-1	200-0240 71
740-1 TO 2240-2	200-0240 72
740-2 TO 2240-2	200-0240 73
641 TO 2241	200-0241 6
741 TO 2241	200-0241 7
2242 TO 2240-2	200-0242
2244 TO 2244A	200-0244 A

9.7 PERIPHERAL RETROFIT INSTRUCTIONS

9.7.1 *600/700 PERIPHERAL CONVERSIONS TO 2200 PERIPHERALS*

9.7.2 *601/701 to 2201*

No change in 601/701; add 2201 I/O controller card 6318 or 6368.

9.7.3 *602/702 to 2202*

No change in 602/702; add 2202 I/O controller card 6368.

9.7.4 *612/712 to 2212*

No change in 612/712; add 2212 I/O controller card 6368.

9.7.5 *621/721 to 2221*

Remove 6234 board from 621/721 and the cable. Add a new cable (WLI #220-0105) and place the Centronics fingerboard into connector 1. Add a 2221 I/O controller card 6329 or 6379.

9.7.6 *630/730 to 2230*

Turn all switches on the 6295 ON. Change the 6299 using ECN #3876. Add 2230 I/O controller card 6375. Add a 6327 board into the ROM connectors.

Change the I/O cable:

END	WIRE FROM	WIRE TO
Amphenol	Pin 33	Pin 11
Fingerboard	Pin 13	Pin 10

Change the PROMS on the 6298 according to the table included on the 6298 schematic diagram in the *Schematic Manual*.

9.7.7 *632/732 to 2232*

No change in 632/732; add 2232 I/O controller card 6368.

9.7.8 *640/740 to 2240*

1. Change PROMs on 6298 board.

2. Change jumper on 6395 from 5MHz to 10MHz, and turn all switches ON.

3. Change the I/O cable:

END	WIRE FROM	WIRE TO
Amphenol	Pin 33	Pin 11
Fingerboard	Pin 13	Pin 10

9.7.9 *2234 TO 2234A AND 2244 TO 2244A/CONVERSION*

PART A 2234 TO 2234A CONVERSION KIT PART #200-0234A

REMOVE	ADD
2234 CONTROLLER	2234A CONTROLLER PIGGYBACK

PROM/RAM LOADING CHART FOR 2234A

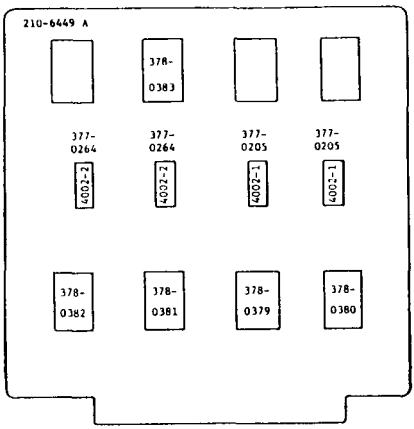


FIGURE 9-41

PART B 2244 TO 2244A CONVERSION KIT PART #200-0244A

REMOVE	ADD
2244 CONTROLLER	2244A CONTROLLER PIGGYBACK

PROM/RAM LOADING CHART FOR 2244A

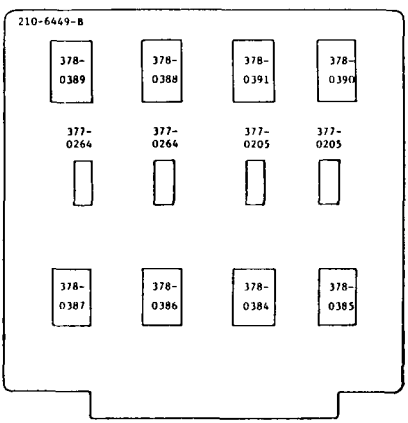


FIGURE 9-42

9.8 MISCELLANEOUS 2200 SYSTEM RETROFITS

9.8.1 *MODEL 2201 ON/OFF SWITCH-CONVERSION PROCEDURE*

This explains the steps necessary to modify a 2201 so that it may be turned off if not in use when connected to an operating 2200 system. The charge for this conversion is $50.00 plus normal service call charges. This conversion can only be done on units that have the belly band attached to the top cover.

PARTS REQUIRED:	WLI PART NUMBER:
1 Modified Band	458-0022
1 Switch	325-0021
2 Fast-on Terminals	654-0048
1 Silicon Diode	380-1001
2 18 inch Sections of 18 Gauge Wire	600-0009

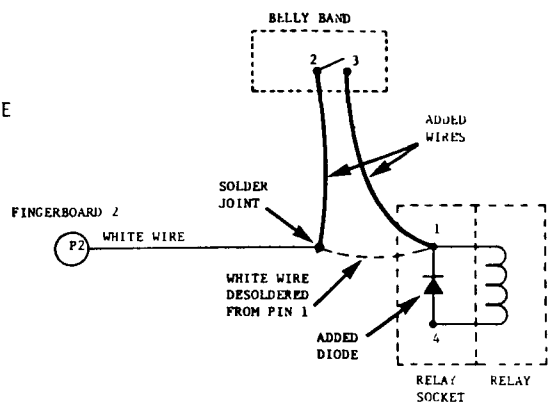
PROCEDURE:

1) Replace old band with modified band using existing hardware from old band.

2) Attach one 18" wire to pin 2 of the switch and the other wire to pin 3.

3) Insert the switch into the band so that the words ON/OFF are readable.

FIGURE 9-43



4) Desolder the white wire from pin 1 of the relay socket.

5) Solder the diode to pins 1 and 4 of the relay socket with the cathode connecting pin 1.

6) Solder one 18" wire to pin 1 of the relay socket and the other 18" wire to the white wire that was removed in step 4; tape the connection.

9.8.2 *CONVERSION FROM 2201 TO 2212 AND 2232 (6368 PC ONLY)*

To change a 6368 I/O board from a 2201 I/O to a 2212 or 2232 I/O board, connect L13-12 to ±0 volts. (The board will work as a 2212 I/O without the jumper but a number 1 will be plotted instead of a letter L.)

9.8.3 *CONVERSION OF 2215 AND 2222 WITH 6367 PC BOARD*

The 6317 is no longer being produced but will continue to be used.

The 6367 can be converted to be used as either a 2215 or a 2222 controller board. See diagram below.

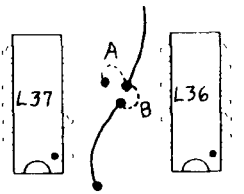


FIGURE 9-44

Jumper A in/B out = 2222

Jumper B in/A out - 2215

SECTION 9

NOTES: